Administrator Guide

Version 11.5

Copyright

2011. Dragon version 11.5.

This material may not include some last-minute technical changes and/or revisions to the software. Changes are periodically made to the information provided here. Future versions of this material will incorporate these changes.

No part of this manual or software may be reproduced in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic or mechanical, such as photocopying or recording, or by any information storage and retrieval systems, without the express written consent of Nuance Communications, Inc. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Copyright © 2002-2010 Nuance Communications, Inc. All rights reserved.

Nuance, ScanSoft, the Nuance logo, the Dragon logo, Dragon, DragonBar, NaturallySpeaking, NaturallyMobile, RealSpeak, Nothing But Speech (NBS), Natural Language Technology, Select-and-Say, MouseGrid, and Vocabulary Editor are registered trademarks or trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc. in the United States or other countries. All other names and trademarks referenced herein are trademarks of Nuance Communications or their respective owners. Designations used by third-party manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products may be claimed as trademarks by those third-parties.

Adobe and Acrobat are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated. AMD is a trademark of Advanced Micro Devices, Inc. America Online is a registered trademark of America Online, Inc., a division of AOL Time Warner. Corel and WordPerfect are registered trademarks of Corel Corporation. iPAQ is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. Lotus and Lotus Notes are registered trademarks of Lotus Development Corporation. Macromedia Flash? is a trademark of Macromedia, Inc. Microsoft, Outlook, Windows, Windows NT, Visual Basic, and PowerPoint are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Mozilla, Mozilla Firefox, and Mozilla Thunderbird are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Mozilla Foundation. Palm OS is a registered trademark of PalmSource, Inc. or its affiliates. Panasonic is a registered trademark of the Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., Ltd. Pentium is a registered trademark of Intel Corporation. Sony and Memory Stick are registered trademarks of the Sony Corporation. Voice It, the Voice It logo, and Voice It Link are trademarks or registered trademarks of VXI Corporation.

Disclaimer

Nuance makes no warranty, express or implied, with respect to the quality, reliability, currentness, accuracy, or freedom from error of this document or the product or products referred to herein and specifically disclaims any implied warranties, including, without limitation, any implied warranty of merchantability, fitness for any particular purpose, or non-infringement.

Nuance disclaims all liability for any direct, indirect, incidental, consequential, special, or exemplary damages resulting from the use of the information in this document. Mention of any product not manufactured by Nuance does not constitute an endorsement by Nuance of that product.

Notice

Nuance Communications, Inc. is strongly committed to creating high quality voice and data management products that, when used in conjunction with your own company's security policies and practices, deliver an efficient and secure means of managing confidential information.

Nuance believes that data security is best maintained by limiting access to various types of information to authorized users only. Although no software product can completely guarantee against security failure, Dragon Medical Enterprise Network Edition software contains configurable password features that, when used properly, provide a high degree of protection.

We strongly urge current owners of Nuance products that include optional system password features to verify that these features are enabled! You can call our support line if you need assistance in setting up passwords correctly or in verifying your existing security settings.

Published by Nuance Communications, Inc., Burlington, Massachusetts, USA

Visit Nuance Communications, Inc. on the Web at www.nuance.com.

Visit Nuance Healthcare on the Web at www.nuance.com/healthcare.

Contents

Chapter 1: Introduction to Dragon 11.5 1

Getting started with Dragon 11.5 2

Dragon version 11.5 - What's New for administrators 4

Configuring how Dragon receives audio from a smartphone 6

How Dragon receives audio from a smartphone 6

Configuring the smartphone server 6

Dictating with a smartphone over a network 11

Using the Dragon Remote Microphone Application in a home network 11

Using the Dragon Remote Microphone Application in Public Wi-Fi Hotspots 11

Using the Dragon Remote Microphone Application in corporate environments with multiple subnets 11

Issues with Firewalls, Antivirus software and Malware detection software 12

iOS 4.3 and HotSpot Tethering 12

Creating Windows shortcuts to User Profiles and Vocabularies 13

To create a shortcut to a User Profile and Vocabulary 13

Types of Paths 14

Using multiple acoustic models with a User Profile 15

Acoustic Optimization for User Profiles with BestMatch IV acoustic models 15

Multiple acoustic models and User Profiles on single and multi-core computers 15

Using Australian, Indian, and Southeast Asian accents in Dragon 11 or greater 17

Upgrading User Profiles older than Version 10.0 Service Pack 1 to Dragon 11 or greater 17

Upgrading User Profiles newer than Version 10.0 Service Pack 1 to Dragon 11 or greater 18

Installing, modifying and upgrading Dragon 21

Chapter 2: Preparing to Install Dragon 23

Preparing for an installation or upgrade 24

Installation restrictions 24

File Structure 24

Installation checklist 25

Installation checklist 25

Upgrade checklist 26

Support Checklist 26

Dragon system requirements 27

Processor 27

Processor cache 27

Operating systems and RAM ... 27
Free hard disk space ... 28
Microphone ... 28
Sound card ... 28
Other requirements ... 28
Storage space required for User Profiles ... 30
Installing on or Upgrading to Windows Vista and Windows 7 ... 32
Upgrade considerations ... 32
Roaming User Profiles in an MSI Installation on Vista or Windows 7 ... 32
Coexistence with other Dragon products ... 33
Coexistence with previous versions of Dragon ... 33
Coexistence with Dragon SDK Client Edition ... 33
Run Dragon SDK Client Edition 11 on a computer with Dragon 11 or greater ... 33
Run Dragon 11 or greater on a computer with Dragon SDK Client Edition 11 ... 33
Chapter 3: Installing Dragon ... 35
Installing Dragon on a single computer ... 36
Installing the Dragon 11.5 service pack ... 40
Sample custom installation of Dragon Medical ... 41
Preparing for the Roaming feature ... 41
Install Dragon ... 41
Setting the Dragon Options ... 42
Setting the Administrative Options: Roaming User Profiles ... 51
Setting the Administrative Options: Miscellaneous options ... 54
Setting the Administrative Options: Scheduled Tasks ... 55
Setting Auto-Formatting Options ... 55
57
Post Installation Tasks ... 58
Cleaning up after uninstalling Dragon ... 58
Dragon file structure ... 59
Turning off Dragon's use of Microsoft Active Accessibility Service ... 63
Choosing a Medical Vocabulary to Support Your Specialty ... 65
Dragon Medical US and UK English Vocabularies and Specialties ... 65
Enhancing the privacy of patient data ... 71
Security Considerations ... 71
Chapter 4: Upgrading Dragon ... 73
Upgrading Dragon ... 74
Installing on or Upgrading to Windows Vista and Windows 7 ... 76
Upgrade considerations ... 76
Roaming User Profiles in an MSI Installation on Vista or Windows 7 ... 76

Upgrading multiple User Profiles ... **77**
Using the User Profile Upgrade Wizard ... 77
User Profile Upgrade Wizard: Select the profile(s) to upgrade ... 77
User Profile Upgrade Wizard: Begin profile upgrading ... 80
Step 3: Upgrade the end-user systems ... 81
Preparing to upgrade Roaming User Profiles ... **83**
Step 1: Install Dragon 11 or greater on the computer where you upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles ... 83
Step 2: On the Dragon 9.x or 10.x end-user systems that use the Roaming feature ... 83
Step 3: On the central network storage location for the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles ... 84
Step 4: Copy the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles to the Dragon 11 or greater client computer ... 84
Step 5: On the administrator system where you plan to upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles ... 84
Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles ... **86**
Step 1: Upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles ... 86
Step 2: Clean up the Dragon 9.x or 10.x locations for master Roaming User Profiles (optional) ... 89
Step 3: Copy the Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles to their network location (Optional) ... 90
Step 4: Upgrade end-user systems to Dragon 11 or greater ... 90
Upgrading end-user systems ... **91**
Step 1: Upgrade Dragon 9.x or 10.x systems that use the Roaming feature ... 91
Upgrading multiple User Profiles ... **93**
Using the User Profile Upgrade Wizard ... 93
User Profile Upgrade Wizard: Select the profile(s) to upgrade ... 93
User Profile Upgrade Wizard: Begin profile upgrading ... 96
Vocabularies Created by a Third Party (other than by Nuance) ... 96
Using a custom vocabulary from Dragon Medical 10.x or earlier with Dragon Medical 11 or greater ... 96
Upgrading User profiles with third party vocabularies ... 96
Step 2: Upgrade a User Profile that uses a custom vocabulary ... 97
Step 3: Import custom words to the upgraded User Profile ... 97
Step 4: Export the customized vocabulary ... 98
Step 5: Use nsadmin or the Data Distribution tool to copy the vocabulary you export ... 98
Chapter 5: Installing Dragon using the Windows installer (MSI) ... **99**
Overview of Installing Dragon using the Windows Installer (MSI) ... **101**
Before You Begin ... 101
Finding the MSI Installer on the DVD ... 101

Windows Vista Notes ... 102
Overview of the Network Installation of Dragon from a Server ... 103
Overview of Pushing Client Installation from a Server ... 103
Support for SMS and Windows 2003 Server with Active Directory ... 103
Overview of Alternative Ways to Carry Out Administrative Installation ... 104
Modifying Roaming User Profile, Miscellaneous, Schedule Settings in the INI File ... 105
Understanding and applying the Roaming User Options ... 105
Editing Miscellaneous and Scheduled Task Settings in nsdefaults.ini File ... 110
Understanding Network and Connection Settings in roamingdef.ini File ... 114
Carrying Out an Administrative Installation with .bat File ... 116
Understanding the script in admininstall.bat ... 116
Modifying admininstall.bat ... 118
Install Dragon on an initial computer and choose the default settings ... 119
Extracting MSI/MST Files from the Dragon setup.exe ... 120
Extracting MSI/MST Files from setup.exe ... 120
Using .MSI/.MST Files for Custom Installations Example ... 123
Step1: Running setup.exe to Extract .MSI and .MST Files ... 123
Step 2: Passing MST File to setup.exe to Install Dragon ... 123
Installation using the Dragon installation process ... 125
Install the Same Configuration on Additional computers ... 127
Creating Custom Installation Using Microsoft Custom Install Wizard ... 129
Installing the Microsoft Custom Installation Wizard ... 129
Modifying setup Properties for Custom Installation ... 129
Installation using the Dragon command line ... 137
Running natspeak.exe to Set Options ... 138
Natspeak.exe command line reference ... 142
Other Actions You Can Take on Command Line ... 143
Modifying Default Installation Directory ... 144
Configuring Installation of Product Updates ... 145
Suppressing Reboot of the computer After Installation ... 146
Setting Dragon to Run in QuickStart Mode ... 147
Installing the same Roaming User Profile Configuration on Additional computer(s) ... 148
Silent Installation with Language Other Than US English ... 149
Revising Day/Time of Scheduled Tasks (Optional) ... 150
Configuring Local or On-Demand Install of Vocabularies/Text-to-Speech (Optional) ... 152
Installing only particular vocabularies locally, others on-demand ... 152
Installing Text-to-Speech feature ... 153
Upgrading Your Dragon Installation from the Command Line ... 154

Upgrading Roaming User Profiles ... 154
Step-by-Step Process for Upgrading Roaming User Profiles ... 156
Major and Minor Upgrades: Silent Upgrade ... 161
Overview of Silent Upgrade ... 161
GUIDs for uninstalling ... 161
Step-by-Step Upgrade Process ... 162
Using setup.exe for Upgrades ... 165
Using setup.exe for Silent Upgrades ... 165
Step-by-Step Command Line Installation with msiexec.exe ... 166
Finding the MSI Installer on the Dragon DVD ... 166
Install Dragon on Initial computer and Establish Configuration ... 166
Install Same Configuration on Additional computer(s) ... 166
Additional Options for Installations with msiexec.exe ... 169
Additional Options for Silent Installations ... 170
Modifying Default Installation Directory ... 170
Configuring Installation of Product Updates ... 170
Suppressing Reboot of computer After Installation ... 171
Suppressing Reboot of computer After Installation ... 171
Setting Dragon to run in QuickStart Mode ... 171
Installing the Same Roaming User Profile Configuration on Additional computer(s) ... 172
Launching Online Registration Form After Installation ... 172
Installing Some Vocabularies Locally and Others On Demand ... 173
Installing Text-to-Speech Feature ... 174
Reinstalling Dragon with Particular Set of Features ... 174
Setting Day/Time for Scheduled Tasks ... 174
Launching Online Registration Form After Installation ... 175
MSI Options Specific to Dragon ... 176
MSI Options for Installing Dragon Features/Advanced Options ... 180
MSI Options for Roaming User Profile, Tuning, and Data Collection Setup ... 183
Feature Variables to Set Through the ADDLOCAL or ADVERTISE Properties ... 186
Installing Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon ... 191
Manually Installing Visual C++ Runtime ... 191
Pushing an installation of the Visual C++ Runtime ... 191
Using an MSI file to install the Visual C++ Runtime from a command line ... 192
Command Line Options for vcruntime.exe ... 192
Chapter 6: Configuring and using the Roaming feature and Roaming User Profiles ... 193
Setting up the Roaming feature ... 195
Overview of the Roaming feature ... 197

The relationship between the Master and the Local Roaming User Profile ... 197
Advantages of the Roaming feature ... 197
Hosting Master Roaming User Profiles ... 198
Why the Master Roaming User Profiles should be in shared directories ... 198
Controlling user access to other user's profiles ... 199
Backing up your Master Roaming User Profiles ... 200
Setting up the Roaming feature ... 202
Creating a network storage location for the Master Roaming User Profiles ... 203
What to consider for the Master Roaming User Profile location ... 203
Using a networked computer or Windows file server ... 203
Using a HTTP or HTTPS web server ... 204
Where to install and configure Dragon ... 207
Installing Dragon where you plan to dictate using the Roaming feature ... 207
Installing Dragon on the same computer as your Master Roaming User Profiles ... 207
For more information on installing or upgrading Dragon ... 207
Storage space required for the Master and Local Roaming User Profiles ... 209
For each Master Roaming User Profile- on the network ... 209
For each computer where Dragon is installed ... 209
For each Local Roaming User Profile- on the client PC ... 209
How Dragon Synchronizes Master and Local Roaming User Profiles ... 211
What happens during synchronization ... 211
What files are synchronized ... 212
Estimating Network traffic caused by synchronization ... 215
Enabling the Roaming feature on each computer where a user will dictate ... 218
Step 1: Start Dragon ... 218
Step 2: If already Dragon is running, select Administrative Settings ... 218
Step 3: Turn on the Roaming feature ... 218
Step 4: Set the location of Master Roaming User Profiles ... 219
Step 5: Set location of Local Roaming User Profiles ... 220
Step 6: Set Roaming feature options ... 221
Notes: ... 221
Administrative Settings: Roaming tab ... 222
Administrative Settings: Roaming User Network Location ... 225
Display Name ... 225
Network Location—Address ... 225
Setting up HTTP Connection: HTTP Settings ... 227
Authentication ... 227
Connection ... 227
Firewall and Proxy Servers ... 228

Timeouts 228
Test Connection 229
Restore Defaults 229
Setting up secure web server connection: SSL Settings 230
Certificate Store 230
Open SSL 231
General 231
Test Connection 231
Restore Defaults 231
Testing and troubleshooting an HTTP connection 232
Troubleshooting test connections 232
Setting and selecting Roaming User Profile options 234
Roaming User Profile options on the Administrative Settings dialog box 234
Creating a Roaming User Profile on the local computer 240
Creating and training a new Roaming User Profile 241
Converting a non-roaming local User Profile into a Roaming User Profile 242
Dictating with a Roaming User Profile 243
Opening a Roaming User Profile 244
Using multiple dictation sources with a single User Profile 245
To add a new dictation source to a user profile 245
Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer for Roaming User Profiles 246
Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on a multi-core computer 246
Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on a User Profile with two acoustic models 246
To run the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer to optimize Roaming User Profiles 247
Controlling user access to other user's profiles 248
Making it easier for users to select their User Profiles 248
Configuring Internet Information Services and WebDAV for HTTP Roaming 251
Configuring Internet Information Services and WebDAV 252
Installing and configuring WebDAV on Internet Information Services 6.0 252
Installing and configuring WebDAV on Internet Information Services 7.0 253
Configuring Dragon internet roaming 255
Upgrading Roaming User Profiles: Overview 256
Step 1: Preparing to upgrade Roaming User Profiles 256
Step 2: Upgrading the User Profiles 257
Step 3: Upgrade the end-user systems 257
Preparing to upgrade Roaming User Profiles 258
Step 1: Install Dragon 11 or greater on the computer where you upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles 258
Step 2: On the Dragon 9.x or 10.x end-user systems that use the Roaming feature 258

Step 3: On the central network storage location for the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles ... 259
Step 4: Copy the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles to the Dragon 11 or greater client computer ... 259
Step 5: On the administrator system where you plan to upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles ... 259
Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles ... 261
Step 1: Upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles ... 261
Step 2: Clean up the Dragon 9.x or 10.x locations for master Roaming User Profiles (optional) ... 264
Step 3: Copy the Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles to their network location (Optional) ... 265
Step 4: Upgrade end-user systems to Dragon 11 or greater ... 265
Upgrading end-user systems ... 266
Step 1: Upgrade Dragon 9.x or 10.x systems that use the Roaming feature ... 266
Chapter 7: Customizing and optimizing Vocabularies ... 269
Customizing Vocabularies with the Vocabulary Tool ... 270
Voctool command line examples ... 283
Definition: The language model ... 285
About language model slots ... 286
Storing language model information ... 286
Chapter 8: Customizing a User Profile ... 287
Adding words, commands, or vocabularies to User Profiles ... 288
Using the Data Distribution Tool ... 288
Creating the Data Distribution Directory ... 289
The Nsadmin utility for new words, vocabularies, and commands ... 296
Using paths with the nsadmin utility ... 304
Chapter 9: Maintaining a Dragon installation ... 305
Maintaining Installations ... 306
Using Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer and Scheduler Tools ... 307
Running Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on Non-Roaming User Profiles ... 307
Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on a multi-core computer ... 307
To run the acoustic and language model optimizers on non-Roaming User Profiles: ... 308
Running Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on Roaming User Profiles ... 308
Removing One or More Optimization Schedules ... 310
Exporting and Importing User Profiles ... 311
Exporting User Profiles ... 311
Importing User Profiles ... 311
Handling Dragon Error Messages ... 312
Working with the Usability Log ... 313

Accessing the Dragon Knowledge Database 314
Hardware Compatibility List 315
Managing user administrative privileges 316
Chapter 10: Working with Custom commands 317
Managing and Securing Custom Commands 318
Using the Convert XML to DAT tool 319
Using the MyCommands Protection Utility 321
Chapter 11: Commands that perform actions based on the application state 323
Using Structured Commands 324
Structured Command Samples 325
Importing Sample Structured Commands 327
Chapter 12: Configuring administrative features in Dragon 329
Summaries of Administrative Settings Dialog Boxes 330
Administrative Settings: Roaming tab 331
Administrative Settings: Roaming User Network Location 334
Display Name 334
Network Location—Address 334
Administrative Settings: Miscellaneous tab 336
Notes 338
Administrative Settings: Scheduled Tasks tab 340
Accuracy Tuning 340
Data Collection 340
Glossary 342
.DRA files (definition) 344
Accuracy Center (definition) 345
Accuracy Tuning (definition) 346
Acoustic Optimizer (definition) 347
Advanced Scripting (definition) 348
Commands-only Vocabulary (definition) 349
Command Browser (definition) 350
Correction menu (definition) 351
Command Mode (definition) 352
Correction-only mode (definition) 353
Data Distribution Tool (definition) 354
Dictation Box (definition) 355
Dictation Mode (definition) 356
Dictation Source (definition) 357
DragonPad (definition) 358

Hidden Mode (definition) **359**
Language Model optimization (definition) **360**
Language Model Optimizer (definition) **361**
Normal Mode (definition) **362**
Numbers mode (definition) **363**
QuickStart (definition) **364**
Recognition Modes (definition) **365**
Roaming User (definition) **366**
Spell Mode (definition) **367**
User Profile (definition) **368**

Chapter 1: Introduction to Dragon 11.5

Dragon version 11.5 contains new features and improvements that enhance your ability to talk to, control, and interact with your computer. This section contains general information on Dragon and information on the exciting new features of Dragon 11.5.

Getting started with Dragon 11.5 2

Dragon version 11.5 - What's New for administrators 4

Configuring how Dragon receives audio from a smartphone 6

Dictating with a smartphone over a network 11

Creating Windows shortcuts to User Profiles and Vocabularies 13

Using multiple acoustic models with a User Profile 15

Using Australian, Indian, and Southeast Asian accents in Dragon 11 or greater 17

Getting started with Dragon 11.5

Dragon version 11.5 - What's New for administrators This section describes the new administrator features of Dragon Version 11.5. For more information about Dragon NaturallySpeaking, see http://www.nuance.com/naturallyspeaking/	Dragon on the Web The Nuance Web site (www.nuance.com) gives you access to many resources, including Frequently Asked Questions, usage tips, customer stories, Customer Service information, Technical Support content, and a detailed comparison between Dragon editions.
Installing, modifying and upgrading Dragon and Installation checklists View information on the different ways to install, modify, and upgrade Dragon.	Setting up the Roaming feature The ***Roaming*** feature lets users dictate with Dragon from different network locations and different computers without having to create and train individual User Profiles at each location.
Adding words,commands, or vocabularies to User Profiles You use the **nsadmin** command line utility and the *Dragon* ***Data Distribution Tool*** when you want to make new words, customized vocabularies or new commands available to all User Profiles on a particular *Dragon* installation.	Using the Convert XML to DAT tool and the MyCommands Protection Utility You can make your custom commands more secure in two ways: ▪ Use the ***Convert XML to DAT tool*** to convert any XML files of commands to DAT format. ▪ With the ***MyCommands Protection Utility***, you can prevent unauthorized Dragon users from editing the commands by locking access to the file.
	Dragon system requirements

Using Structured Commands *Dragon Professional*, *Medical*, and *Legal editions* - include an extension to Text-and-Graphics commands that let you to set the values of variables in text blocks based on voice input.	Dragon 11 is compatible with Windows 7, Windows Vista, Windows XP SP3, Windows Server 2008

Dragon version 11.5 - What's New for administrators

The following table lists details about the new features and changes in Dragon 11.5.

New features
Use a smartphone as a microphone for dictation You can create a User Profile that uses a smartphone as a dictation source. You can also add a smartphone as a dictation source to an existing User Profile. You use the Dragon Remote Microphone application on the smartphone to start dictating into Dragon. As you dictate, the smartphone transfers the audio data through a Wi-Fi connection to the smartphone server. The server processes the audio and sends it to Dragon. See Configuring how Dragon receives audio from a smartphone for more details on the smartphone server. See Dictating with a smartphone over a network for more details about networks that support a smartphone as a dictation device. See the *Dragon Help* for more details on dictating with a smartphone.
Support for Internet Explorer version 9 You can use Dragon 11.5 with Internet Explorer 9 from Microsoft. Dragon 11.5 also supports Internet Explorer version 6 or greater. A complete list of commands you can use with Internet Explorer is available through the Command Browser. You can also view commands in the Dragon Sidebar while you use Dragon. For information on new commands you can use with Internet Explorer 9, see the *Dragon Help*. For more information on applications that Dragon 11.5 supports, see http://www.nuance.com/ucmprod/groups/dragon/@web-enus/documents/collateral/nd_004125.pdf
Save a User Profile locally or to the master location An administrator can set the **Prompt before saving to network location** option in the **Administrative Settings** - **Roaming** tab to let users choose where to save their User Profile. When an administrator enables this option, when a user attempts to close Dragon or turn off or log off the operating system, a dialog box appears that lets the user choose to save their profile locally or to the master network location. A user can save their profile locally if they are on a slow network. A user can save their profile to the master location to ensure any updates to their profile are available at other network locations. See Setting and selecting Roaming User Profile options for more information.
Installing the Dragon 11.5 service pack If a user already has Dragon 11 on their computer, they can download and install the Dragon 11.5 service pack using the Nuance Update Service. See Installing the Dragon 11.5 service pack for more information.

New features

Upgrading from earlier versions of Dragon

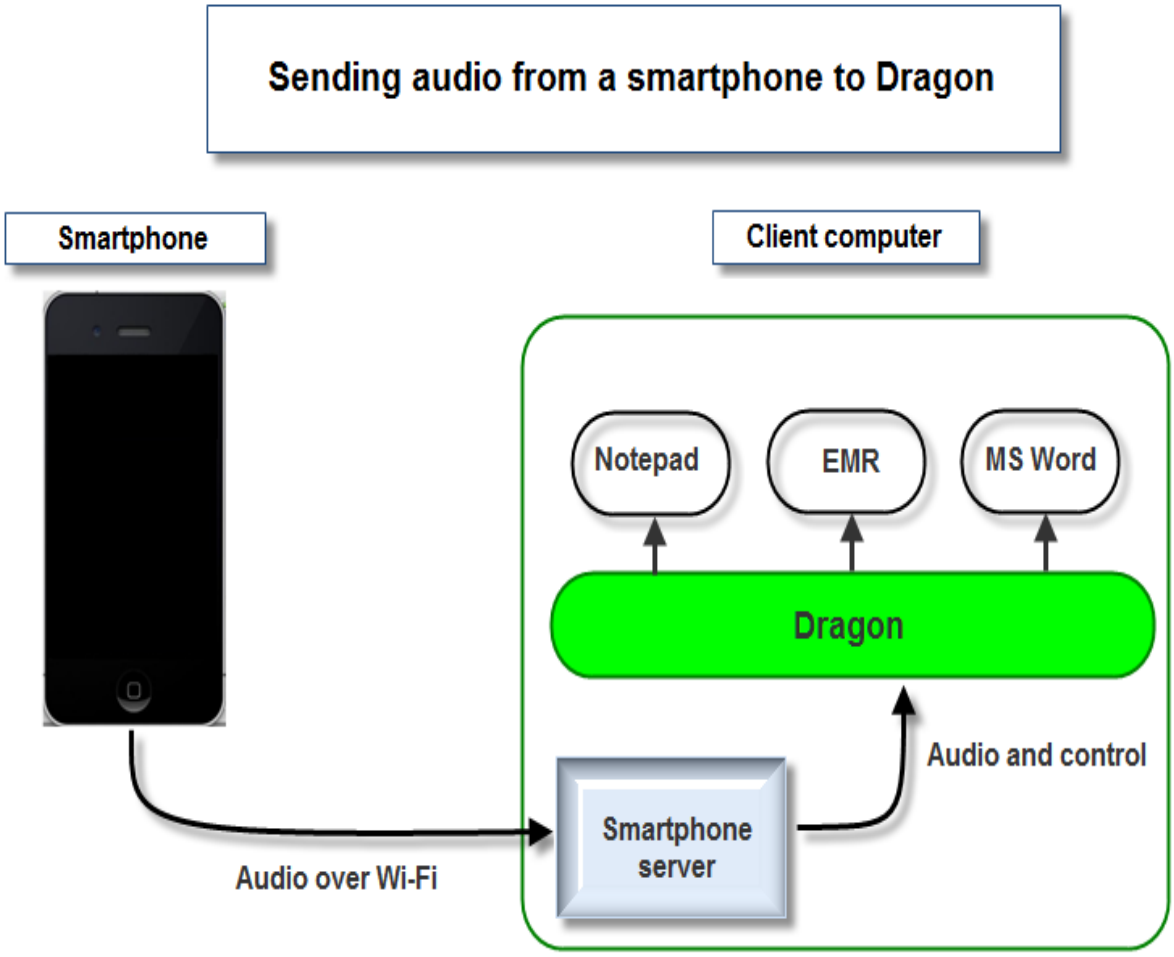
You can upgrade Dragon versions 9.x and 10.x to Dragon 11.5. Upgrades from version 8.x and earlier are not supported.

Configuring how Dragon receives audio from a smartphone

How Dragon receives audio from a smartphone

When a user sets up a smartphone as a dictation source and begins dictating into the phone, the Dragon Remote Microphone application sends the audio to a component called the smartphone server. The smartphone server processes the audio and sends it to Dragon.

The Dragon installation process installs the smartphone server on the same computer where you install Dragon.



See Dictating with a smartphone over a network for more details about networks that support a smartphone as a dictation device.

Configuring the smartphone server

You use the *DNSSPServer.exe.config* file to modify settings for the smartphone server. The*DNSSPServer.exe.config* file is an XML-based configuration file that the Dragon installation

process places in the same folder as the smartphone server .exe file (*dnsspserver.exe*).:

On Windows 7, the **dnsspserver.exe.config** file is in the following directory:

```
C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program
```

Use caution if you modify the configuration settings for the smartphone server since incorrect settings can have unforeseen side effects.

Serious problems may occur if you modify the configuration file incorrectly. Nuance cannot guarantee that these problems can be resolved and you may need to reinstall the software. Modify the configuration file at your own risk.

Set message logging

In the *DNSSPServer.exe.config* file, in the <*switches*> section, set the **value** parameter for the **ServiceDebugLevel** option to one of the following values:

Message type	Value
No tracing	"Off"
Fatal error or application crash	"Critical"
Recoverable error	"Error"
Non-critical problem	"Warning"
Informational message	"Information"
Debugging trace	"Verbose"

For example:

```
<add name="ServiceDebugLevel" value="Information" />
```

Viewing log information

Each time the smartphone server starts, the server creates a tracing / error log file (spserver.log) in the current Windows user's TEMP directory. You can view this file when trouble shooting problems with the smartphone server.

You can also view logging information in real-time by performing the following steps:

1. Stop Dragon (or the dnsspserver.exe process)
2. Run the smartphone server manually in debug mode: In a command prompt, navigate to the directory that stores the dnsspserver.exe file. Type "dnsspserver /debug".
3. Restart Dragon.

Set the logging of network statistics

You can enable the gathering and logging of network statistics data. The data is placed in the SpServer.log and the Dragon.log.

In the DNSSPServer.exe.config file, in the <*appSettings*> section, set the value parameter for the **DNSNetMonitoring** option to one of the following values:

Audio support type	Value
Enable the logging of network statistics	"True"
Disable the logging of network statistics	"False"

For example:

```
<add key="DNSNetMonitoring" value="true"/>
```

Set the time interval of network statistic reports

You can set the time period, in seconds, during which the system gathers network statistics. When the time period expires, the system prints the statistics to the SpServer.log and the Dragon.log. log files.

For example:

```
<add key="DNSNetMonitorStatisticsWindow" value ="60"/>
```

Example log entry:

```
Info: NetStats: [Interval=60s, 44058Bps, Total=43854Bps]
```

Log entry explanation:

Over a 60 second time interval, an average of 44058 bytes per second was received, and an average of 43854 bytes per second is being received for the session to date. (44100Bps is considered nominal for 22050Hz audio).

Set the time interval for logging audio not received

You can set the maximum time that elapses before the system logs no audio received. The system logs the message when the timeout elapses (See Set the time interval for network statistic reports).

For example:

```
<add key="DNSNetMonitorMaxPacketGap" value="5"/>
```

Audio not received log entries

The system logs 3 types of entries that are related to audio not received.

Log type	Example	Explanation
No audio received	Warning: NetStats: No audio data for 15s	Over a 15 second interval, no audio was received.
Audio received after interval of no audio	Warning: NetStats: Audio data gap=90s > max=5s	When the system receives audio, it logs a message that shows the amount of time that elapsed without receiving audio and the maximum value specified by this parameter. In this example, 90 seconds passed without receiving audio data.
Session ends	NetStats: Info: [Session=92s, Total=44128Bps]	When a session ends (the dictation microphone is turned off), the system logs a message about the session length and the

Log type	Example	Explanation
		average transfer rate. In this example, the session length was 92 seconds and the average transfer rate was 44128Bps.

Set the audio sources that Dragon allows

In the DNSSPServer.exe.config file, in the <*appSettings*> section, set the **value** parameter for the **DNSAllowAnyAudioSource** option to one of the following values:

Audio support type	Value
[Default] Allow only smartphone audio sources	"false"
Allow ANY DNS audio source	"true"

For example:

```
<add key="DNSAllowAnyAudioSource" value="false" />
```

Set encryption of audio data sent between the phone and the server

In the DNSSPServer.exe.config file, in the <*appSettings*> section, set the **value** parameter for the **AudioDataEncryption** option to one of the following values:

- "none" = [Default] Do not encrypt audio data

Set the default sample rate for Dragon

In the DNSSPServer.exe.config file, in the <*appSettings*> section, set the **value** parameter for the **SampleRate** option to one of the following values (in Hz):

- "11025"
- "22050"

For example:

```
<add key="SampleRate" value="22050" />
```

Set the domain name for the Bonjour Domain Name Service

In the DNSSPServer.exe.config file, in the <*appSettings*> section, set the **value** parameter for the **BonjourDomainName** option to the domain name for the service. An empty string represents the default domain.

For Example:

```
<add key="BonjourDomainName" value=""/>
```

You can set the BonjourDomainName option to a valid domain name for your network provided your computer has a real IP Address and is not using one of the private 10. 192., or 168. NAT addresses.

Set the timeout interval for the smartphone and server connection

In the DNSSPServer.exe.config file, in the <*appSettings*> section, set the **value** parameter for the **SPServiceSessionTimeout** option to the number of seconds of inactivity that occurs before the connection between the smartphone and the smartphone server is released and made available to other smartphones..

For example:

```
<add key="SPServiceSessionTimeout" value="120"/>
```

Set the address port that the smartphone web listener uses

In the DNSSPServer.exe.config file, in the <*appSettings*> section, set the **value** parameter for the **SPServiceWebListenerPort** option to a port address within the 1025-65535 range.

For example:

```
<add key="SPServiceWebListenerPort" value="51001" />
```

Note: The default value for **SPServiceWebListenerPort** is 51001.

Set the maximum number of bytes per message that the smartphone web listener can receive

In the DNSSPServer.exe.config file, in the <*appSettings*> section, set the **value** parameter for the **SPServiceMaxReceivedMessageSize** option to the maximum number of bytes that a message can contain for it to be accepted by the smartphone web listener.

For example:

```
<add key="SPServiceMaxReceivedMessageSize" value="131072" />
```

Dictating with a smartphone over a network

You can use the Dragon Remote Microphone Application on a smartphone or other supported devices as a wireless microphone to dictate with Dragon.

To use the application as a wireless microphone, your mobile device and the Dragon client computer must be on the same Wi-Fi network.

Note: Your device and Dragon NaturallySpeaking cannot communicate using cellular networks. A Wi-Fi connection is required..

Using the Dragon Remote Microphone Application in a home network

Bonjour works on home networks where all computers are on the same subnet, which is a common configuration. As an alternative to using Bonjour, you can also choose to enter the IP address or computer name that runs Dragon.

If the home network has multiple routers, you need to enter the correct IP address or computer name of the target computer or turn on multi-cast routing. See the Dragon Help for details.

Using the Dragon Remote Microphone Application in Public Wi-Fi Hotspots

There are two general types of public Wi-Fi:

- Pure open Wi-Fi where a user turns on their computer or device, and they are "just on". This is similar to a typical home networking setup with one router as described above. The Dragon Remote Microphone Application should work with this Wi-Fi configuration.
- Locations such as Starbucks and Panera, which use service providers such as AT&T Wi-Fi, where the user must logon or accept the terms of service and where user fees may apply. Nuance does not support this Wi-Fi configuration. The typical security settings in this kind of network prevent the iPhone to communicate with the Dragon client computer.

Using the Dragon Remote Microphone Application in corporate environments with multiple subnets

If the Dragon client computer and the iPhone are on the same wireless network and multi-cast routing is enabled, Bonjour discovery should work. You may find that this multi-cast configuration is not very common. IT departments may disable multi-cast routing to reduce security threats and to reduce Wi-Fi bandwidth consumption.

If multi-cast is disabled, Bonjour discovery does not work. For Bonjour discovery to work on a site has computers on multiple wired or wireless subnets, an administrator needs to enable the multi-cast feature on the routers. This effectively puts all computers on the same subnet.

The site can also use Bonjour with unicast routing with a Domain Name Server. This network configuration requires all computers to have real IP addresses and not the 10., 192. and 168. addresses.

As an alternative to Bonjour, users at this type of site can choose to enter the IP address or computer name of the Dragon client computer.

Issues with Firewalls, Antivirus software and Malware detection software

When you create a user profile for the Dragon Remote Microphone Application. Dragon automatically opens port 51001 in the Windows firewall.

Port 51001 needs to be open for the Dragon Remote Microphone Application to communicate with the computer where Dragon is running. Some non-Windows firewalls, antivirus, and malware detection software may disable port 51001. If that occurs, you need to configure the software to open port 51001.

iOS 4.3 and HotSpot Tethering

iOS 4.3 provides the ability to connect a computer to the iPhone via WiFi and then connect the iPhone to the Internet using 3G. This allows the computer to access the Internet even when a WiFi network is not available.

Note: This configuration is not supported The Dragon Remote Microphone Application does not work when a computer is tethered to the iPhone.

Creating Windows shortcuts to User Profiles and Vocabularies

If Dragon is shared with other people, or if a person has more than one User Profile, you can create Windows Shortcuts on the Desktop to start Dragon and open particular User Profiles. If User Profiles have multiple Vocabularies, you can also specify the Vocabulary to open.

To create a shortcut to a User Profile and Vocabulary

1. Right-click the Dragon shortcut icon on the Windows Desktop and then click Properties to open the icon's Properties dialog box.
2. Click the Shortcut tab of the Properties dialog box.

   In the Start In box, at the end of the path type "*natspeak.exe /user <User Profile name>*". The text in the target box should look similar to the following line:

   `"C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program\Natspeak.exe" /user "David"` for Windows XP

   `"C:\Program Files (x86-)\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program\Natspeak.exe/user "David""` for Windows Vista, 7 or Windows Server 2008.
   David is the name of the User Profile.

   For Roaming User Profiles:

   Or, if Roaming User is enabled, type the path to the Master Roaming User Profile location, then /user, then the sub-folder if applicable, and then the User Profile name on the network. The text in the target box should look similar to the following:

   `"C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program\NatSpeak.exe" /user "\\<server_name>\<subfolder_path>\<user_profile_name>"` for Windows XP.

   "C:\Program Files (x86)\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program\Natspeak.exe/user "\\<server_name>\<subfolder_path>\<user_profile_name>" for (Windows Vista, 7, or Windows Server 2008)

   For Vocabularies

   To specify a Vocabulary, follow the User Profile name with "/Vocabulary" and the name of the Vocabulary. The text in the target box should look similar to the following:

```
"C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program\NatSpeak.exe"
/user "David" /Vocabulary Politics
```

If the User Profile or Vocabulary name contains a space, enclose the name in quotation marks. For example, enter: /user "Mike Workman" /Vocabulary "American History"

If the User Profile name contains a space, enclose the name in quotation marks. For example, type: /user "Mike Workman"

3. Click **OK**.

When finished, double-click the shortcut icon to start Dragon. The User Profile opens along with the Vocabulary specified.

Types of Paths

The path can be a UNC, HTTP, or HTTPs path:

UNC

```
"C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program\Natspeak.exe" /user
"\\<directory>\<directory>\<username>"
```

For example:

```
"C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program\Natspeak.exe" /user
"\\Roaming\Profiles\Roaming1"
```

HTTP or HTTPS

```
"C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program\Natspeak.exe" /user
"http://<url_of_server>\<user_name>"
```

For example:

```
"C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program\Natspeak.exe" /user
"http://test01.roam.test\Roaming1"
```

The path to an HTTP or HTTPS location must only contain forward slashes - the same as the Network Location dialog.

Precede the username with a backslash.

TIP

It is possible to add a shortcut to the top of the Start menu by dragging the shortcut icon onto the Start button.

Using multiple acoustic models with a User Profile

If the computer that a user dictates on meets certain system requirements, Dragon 11 or greater uses two acoustic models with a User Profile. Using two acoustic models instead of one improves recognition and dictation accuracy. Acoustic models that can be added in pairs to a User Profile are called BestMatch IV models.

Any time you add a new dictation source to a User Profile that uses two BestMatch IV models, the dictation source will also be associated with the two models.

A User Profile with two BestMatch IV models uses more computer resources, including RAM memory, than a User Profile with one acoustic model. Dragon 11 or greater uses two BestMatch IV models on a multi-core computer with at least 2 GB RAM. Dragon 11 or greater recognizes when it is installed on a computer that meets these system requirements and selects the Best-Match IV acoustic model as the default.

Acoustic Optimization for User Profiles with BestMatch IV acoustic models

If a User Profile includes BestMatch IV models, you must run the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer (ACO) on a computer with multi-core processors. Dragon 11 or greater uses two Best-Match IV models only on a multi-core computer with at least 2 GB of RAM.

If the ACO processes a User Profile that was created on a computer with multi-core processors, the optimizer always selects the BestMatch IV models to optimize.

If a User Profile is associated with BestMatch III models without accents, and you run the optimizer on a computer that supports BestMatch IV models, if automatic acoustic model selection is enabled, the optimizer will automatically choose a BestMatch IV model to optimize.

Multiple acoustic models and User Profiles on single and multi-core computers

If a user creates a User Profile on a multi-core computer, when the user opens the User Profile on a single-core computer, Dragon uses the first acoustic model for recognition. Dragon does not load the second acoustic model.

If a user creates a User Profile on a single-core computer, when the user opens the User Profile on a multi-core computer, Dragon uses the single acoustic model for recognition.

If a user selects BestMatch IV models for a User Profile and trains the profile on a multi-core computer, when the user opens the User Profile on a single-core computer, Dragon displays the following warning message:

"Your computer has a single core processor. You have opened a User Profile created on a computer with a multi-core processor.

Dragon NaturallySpeaking will work normally on this computer but you may see some change in performance and accuracy".

Using Australian, Indian, and Southeast Asian accents in Dragon 11 or greater

In Dragon 11 or greater , a user selects one of the following languages in the **Region** section of the Profile Creation wizard.

- Australia
- Indian Subcontinent
- Southeast Asia

Language	Region	Accent
English	United States	▪ Standard ▪ Australian accented English ▪ British accented English ▪ Indian accented English ▪ Inland Northern US (Great Lakes area) ▪ Southeast Asian accented English ▪ Southern US ▪ Spanish accented English
English	Canada	▪ Standard ▪ Australian accented English ▪ British accented English ▪ Indian accented English ▪ Inland Northern US (Great Lakes area) ▪ Southeast Asian accented English ▪ Southern US ▪ Spanish accented English
English	United Kingdom	▪ Standard ▪ Australian accented English ▪ Indian accented English ▪ Southeast Asian accented English

Upgrading User Profiles older than Version 10.0 Service Pack 1 to Dragon 11 or greater

When you upgrade Dragon 9.x User Profiles and Dragon 10.0 profiles (prior to Service Pack 1) that contain Australian, Indian, and Southeast Asian acoustic models, Dragon 11 or greater upgrades them directly to the same models in Dragon 11 or greater .

Dragon 9.x Acoustic Model	Dragon 11 or greater Acoustic Model	Dragon 11 or greater Vocabulary
Australian English | Bluetooth 8 kHz	Australian English | Bluetooth 8 kHz	Australian English | Large | General
Australian English | BestMatch	Australian English | Best-Match III/IV	Australian English | Large | General
Indian English | Bluetooth 8 kHz	Indian English | Bluetooth 8 kHz	Indian English | Large | General
Indian English | Best-Match	Indian English | BestMatch III/IV	Indian English | Large | General
SE Asian English | Bluetooth 8 kHz	Southeast Asian English | Bluetooth 8 kHz	Southeast Asian English | Large | General
SE Asian English | Best-Match	Southeast Asian English | BestMatch III/IV	Southeast Asian English | Large | General
UK English | BestMatch	UK English | BestMatch III/IV	UK English | Large | General
UK English | BestMatch III	UK English | BestMatch III/IV	UK English | Large | General
UK English | Bluetooth 8 kHz	UK English | Bluetooth 8 kHz	UK English | Large | General

Upgrading User Profiles newer than Version 10.0 Service Pack 1 to Dragon 11 or greater

When you upgrade Dragon 10.0 SP1 or later User Profiles that contain Australian, Indian, and Southeast Asian acoustic models as "accent models", Dragon 11 or greater upgrades them to specific acoustic models in Dragon 11 or greater .

Dragon 10 Acoustic Model	Dragon 11 or greater Acoustic Model	Dragon 11 or greater Vocabulary
UK English | Bluetooth 8 kHz | Australian accented English	Australian English | Bluetooth 8 kHz	Australian English | Large | General
UK English | BestMatch | Australian accented English	Australian English | Best-Match III/IV	Australian English | Large | General
UK English | Bluetooth 8 kHz | Indian accented English	Indian English | Bluetooth 8 kHz	Indian English | Large | General
UK English | Best-match | Indian accented English	Indian English | Bestmatch III/IV	Indian English | Large | General
UK English | Bluetooth 8 kHz | SE Asian accented English	Southeast Asian English | Bluetooth 8 kHz	Southeast Asian English | Large | General

Dragon 10 Acoustic Model	Dragon 11 or greater Acoustic Model	Dragon 11 or greater Vocabulary
UK English | BestMatch | SE Asian accented English	Southeast Asian English | BestMatch III/IV	Southeast Asian English | Large | General
UK English | BestMatch	UK English | BestMatch III/IV	UK English | Large | General
UK English | BestMatch III	UK English | BestMatch III/IV	UK English | Large | General
UK English | Bluetooth 8 kHz	UK English | Bluetooth 8 kHz	UK English | Large | General

BestMatch IV models are not provided for the following:

- US English Teens (11 kHz and Bluetooth)
- UK and AUS (Bluetooth)
- IND and SEA (11 kHz and Bluetooth)

See Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information on Two-pass models.

Installing, modifying and upgrading Dragon

To install *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* or *Dragon Medical*

1. Be sure your systems meet the system requirements.
2. Prepare for the installation or upgrade by backing up User Profiles before upgrading.
3. Install or upgrade the software by choosing the type of installation. See the table below for installation options.
4. Become familiar with the Dragon file structure and carry out other post installation tasks.

Note: When an administrator installs Dragon 11 or greater , installation instructions appear in the primary language for the product. An administrator cannot install Dragon using a language that is different than the primary language. For example, when an administrator installs Dragon 11 or greater , Professional English, installation instructions appear in English.

Installation topic	Topic link
Installation checklists	Installation checklists
System requirements	System requirements
Preparing for an installation or upgrade	Preparing for an installation or upgrade
Installing Dragon on a single computer This topic describes the basics steps for installing *Dragon* on a single computer. It covers both a ***Typical/Complete*** installation and a ***Custom*** installation, sometimes linking you to further detail in another topic.	Installing on a single computer
Installing using the Windows Installer (MSI) *Dragon* includes a native Windows Installer (MSI) that lets an administrator customize installations as well as install across a network to multiple client computers. In addition, an administrator can use this service to upgrade, modify, repair, or remove an existing *Dragon* installations.	Using the Windows Installer (MSI) to install Dragon
Upgrading from a previous version An administrator can upgrade installations to Dragon 11 or greater from *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* Versions 9.x and 10.x .	Upgrading from a previous version
View the Dragon file structure and carry out post installation tasks	Post Installation Tasks

Chapter 2: Preparing to Install Dragon

This section contains information on the prerequisites for installing Dragon, Dragon system requirements, and information on which Dragon products you can install on the same computer.

Note: You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported.

Preparing for an installation or upgrade 24

Installation checklist 25

Dragon system requirements 27

Storage space required for User Profiles 30

Installing on or Upgrading to Windows Vista and Windows 7 32

Coexistence with other Dragon products 33

Preparing for an installation or upgrade

Before installing, modifying, or upgrading *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* or *Dragon Medical*:

- Close all open applications.
- Turn off or disable any antivirus software; installation can sometimes trigger a false virus report.
- Look at the supplied Installation Checklist.

Installation restrictions

- Be sure your system meets the hardware requirements before attempting to install *Dragon*. See Dragon system requirements
- Administrator rights are not required to create a User Profile or use the software after installation.
- These restrictions also apply to an upgrade installation: On Windows XP Professional, Vista, Windows 7, and Windows Server 2008, if you want to create a *Dragon* User Profile for a Windows limited user (with restricted privileges), you must log on to Windows using that limited user account, then create the *Dragon* User Profile. If you create a *Dragon* user account for a Windows limited user while logged in as a Windows administrator, the limited user will not be able to access that user account.
- *Dragon* is licensed on a "per individual" basis. You are permitted to install the software on more than one computer (for example, on a desktop and a laptop computer, or on a work and a home computer), but you cannot use the software concurrently on more than one computer.

  You are permitted to create multiple User Profiles, so long as each User Profile is for a single individual. If someone else wants to create or use another User Profile, that person must purchase a separate license for *Dragon*.

  Volume license agreements are available.

File Structure

Upgrading from Dragon NaturallySpeaking 9.x or 10.x automatically relocates some Dragon NaturallySpeaking directories and files.

For information, see Dragon File Structure.

Installation checklist

Installation checklist

❒ Do all of your workstations meet the recommended system requirements for Dragon? (

❒ Will you install the Dragon software manually at each computer or will installation be unattended? (If the latter, read Installing, modifying, and upgrading Dragon for information on setup or MSI command-line parameters.)

❒ Which features will you install on each computer?

❒ Which vocabularies do you need to install on each computer?

Note: Installing only selected vocabularies helps conserve disk space consumption and shortens setup time. A full installation with all vocabularies uses about 4800 MB and takes about 20 minutes, while an installation with only one vocabulary uses less than 1800 MB. See Dragon system requirements for more information on disk size requirements.

❒ Will you install the tutorial (recommended)?

❒ Will you install the text-to-speech component?

❒ Will you set up roaming User Profiles? (Read Setting up the Roaming feature)

❒ If so, where will you place the User Profiles?

❒ In a shared network directory?

❒ In multiple shared network directories? (for example, one per department or clinic)

❒ In each user's Windows home directory?

Note: Placing each user's profile in his or her Windows home directory is not recommended, because this makes it more difficult for the administrator to perform operations on multiple User Profiles, such as running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer or upgrading User Profiles to a new version.

❒ On an Internet server running WebDAV (HTTP roaming)?

❒ If not, what location will you designate as the backup directory for each User Profile?

❒ Where will you place the data distribution directory for distributing word lists and command sets?

❒ Will you be collecting data for the acoustic optimizer?

❒ Will you restrict users from modifying commands and vocabularies?

❒ Which default user-specific options will you set at installation time? (See the Dragon Help on the Options dialog.) Which Administrative options will you set?.

Note: Where you store User Profiles will also depend on other factors. Each User Profile requires about 160 MB hard disk space if it is local, 55 MB if it is roaming. With default settings, acoustic optimizer data can take up to an additional space per workstation, to a total of 1000 MB in the master Roaming User Profile (more precisely, 1000 MB per dictation source per master Roaming User Profile). Acoustic optimizer data contains text and audio data that can be read or heard by anyone with access to the User Profiles.

Upgrade checklist

❒ Are there User Profiles that need to be upgraded from a previous version?

❒ If so, will an administrator upgrade them or will each end user upgrade his/her own?

Support Checklist

❒ Who will be responsible for running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer?

❒ Who is responsible for collecting word lists and commands?

❒ Who is responsible for distributing word lists and commands?

❒ Will words and commands be distributed through the data distribution directory or by some other means, such as email?

❒ Who will Dragon users contact if they need help?

Dragon system requirements

During the installation process, the software checks that your system meets the following requirements. If they are not met, Dragon will not be installed. Note that at least 2 GB of RAM is required for installation in Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008. See Operating systems and RAM, below.

NOTE

The Professional and Legal editions of Dragon do not support dictation directly into Electronic Medical Record (EMR) Systems. For EMR support, please use Dragon Medical Edition.

Processor

Minimum

Minimum 1 GHz Intel® Pentium® or equivalent AMD processor.

2.4 GHz Intel Dual Core or equivalent AMD processor. (IMPORTANT: SSE2 instruction set required)

Recommended

Intel Pentium 2.4 GHz (dual 1.8 GHz core processor) or equivalent AMD processor.

Faster processors produce faster performance.

NOTE

Streaming SIMD Extensions (SSE) are not supported.

Processor cache

Recommended: 2 MB

Operating systems and RAM

Operating system	32-bit	64-bit	RAM min	RAM recommended
Windows 7	√	√	2 GB	4 GB
Windows XP Home (SP2 or greater)	√	X	1 GB	2 GB
Windows XP Professional (SP2 or greater)	√	X	1 GB	2 GB
Windows Vista, including SP1 and SP2	√	√	1 GB	2 GB
Windows Server 2003 (SP2 or greater, R2)	√	√	2 GB	4 GB

Operating system	32-bit	64-bit	RAM min	RAM recommended
Windows Server 2008, including SP1 and SP2 and R2	√	√	2 GB	4 GB
Note: Windows 2000, Windows 2000 Server, and Windows XP 64-bit are not supported and installation is blocked on those systems.				

NOTE

* If your computer has less than the recommended amount of RAM, Dragon will install but displays a message recommending that you install additional RAM for optimum performance.

Free hard disk space

- 5 GB minimum for a custom installation where you install only the program files and one User Profile. Installations can range from 800 MB (US English Home Edition) to 5 GB (Dragon Medical Practice Edition).
- 5 GB minimum for non-English versions.

Microphone

- Nuance-approved noise-canceling microphone. For a complete listing of Dragon-compatible audio input devices, visit http://support.nuance.com/compatibility on the Dragon Support Web pages.
  Note: Dragon Medical Edition has built-in support for the Dictaphone PowerMics. For more information, see the following topics in the Dragon Help:
  - **Using the Dictaphone PowerMic** (the beige PowerMic)
    Only newer beige PowerMics work with Dragon Medical Edition on Windows Vista.
  - **Using the Dictaphone PowerMic II** (the black PowerMic)
    PowerMic II packaging should display Vista compliance labeling. If you are unsure about the compatibility, confirm that the firmware version is v. 2.02 or greater. Refer to http://support.nuance.com/compatibility
- For Bluetooth microphones, Tablet PCs, and other hardware, visit http://support.nuance.com/compatibility.

Sound card

Sound card capable of supporting 22 kHz 16-bit audio recording.

Other requirements

- Microsoft® Internet Explorer 7 or higher (free download available at www.microsoft.com). Dragon 11.5 supports Internet Explorer 9.
- Creative ® Labs Sound Blaster ® 16 or equivalent sound card supporting 16-bit recording
- DVD-ROM drive required for installation.

- Nuance-approved headset microphone (included in purchase). See details at support.nuance.com/compatibility/ (includes Bluetooth microphones, recorders, and Tablet PCs).
- Speakers (optional for playback of recorded speech and Text-To-Speech features).
- An Internet connection for product activation. Note that product activation is not required for Enterprise editions.

Storage space required for User Profiles

Adequate storage space must be available for Dragon User Profiles (that store information about each particular person's voice, vocabulary, custom commands (if applicable), and option settings). The space needs to exist on:

- Stand-alone installations where end-users work on dedicated computers.
  AND
- Only for Enterprise Profile Management Central computers (sometimes servers) where Master Roaming User Profiles are stored.

Having Roaming User Profiles lets end-users run Dragon on more than one computer or device by accessing centrally stored provider-specific voice and speech information, rather than requiring that the profile be on each computer.

Roaming User Profiles also let end-users with one computer use Dragon from different locations that have a connection to the network, for example, the office, at home, or different locations with the office or home.

The following information should be treated as guidelines for allocating disk space on your system. The actual amount of disk space will vary from site to site.

For each Master Roaming User Profile (User Profiles stored on the central computer), you should plan to have this much space:

- 55 MB for each Roaming User Profile
- 18 MB for each additional vocabulary you add for this User Profile
- 35 MB for each additional dictation source you add for this User Profile
- 1000 MB for Acoustic Optimizer data associated with each dictation source of each User Profile

To set how much data you have elected to store:

1. On the ***DragonBar***, select ***Tools*** > ***Administrative Settings***.
2. When the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box opens, check the ***Disk space reserved for network archive*** option.

In addition, for the Local Roaming User Profile, you should plan to have the following space on each PC where the end-user dictates:

- 55 MB for each Roaming User Profile
- 18 MB for each additional vocabulary added for this user profile
- 35 MB for each additional dictation source added for this user profile
- 240 MB for acoustic optimizer data associated with each dictation source of each User Profile

The settings in the ***Data*** tab of the ***Options*** dialog box control how much acoustic optimizer data Dragon retains locally:

1. To set the number of minutes of audio to retain locally, click the ***Archive size...*** button and position the slider.
2. To turn off retaining this data locally, check the ***Conserve disk space required by User profile (for portability)*** option.

A non-Roaming User Profile requires approximately three times as much disk space as a local Roaming User Profile. Dragon periodically creates a backup copy of a non-Roaming User Profile and stores the copy on the local computer. On the other hand, a Roaming User Profile is stored in a network storage location and Dragon does not create a backup copy of a Roaming User Profile.

An administrator should create backup copies of all Roaming User Profiles on a regular basis.

Installing on or Upgrading to Windows Vista and Windows 7

Dragon NaturallySpeaking and *Dragon Medical* Versions 9.5 and higher are compatible with all editions of Windows Vista and Windows 7. Dragon runs on 32-bit and 64-bit computers for these operating systems.

Earlier versions of *Dragon* (version 8.x, 9.0, 9.1) will not install or run on Windows Vista or Windows 7.

Note: You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11 or greater . Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11 or greater is not supported.

Upgrade considerations

If you upgrade a computer from a previous version of Windows to Windows Vista or Windows 7, and that computer has Version 8.x, 9.0, or 9.1 of *Dragon* installed, that version of *Dragon* will not work after upgrading to Windows Vista or Windows 7.

All your User Profiles from these previous versions remain intact and can be upgraded when you install Dragon 11 or greater .

See "Upgrading User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater " in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

Roaming User Profiles in an MSI Installation on Vista or Windows 7

For more on carrying out an MSI installation on Windows Vista or Windows 7, see Modifying Roaming User Profile, Miscellaneous, Schedule Settings in the INI File.

Coexistence with other Dragon products

Coexistence with previous versions of Dragon

You can have only one version of *Dragon* installed on your system.

> **Note:** Running Dragon 9.x or 10.x concurrently with Dragon 11 or greater is not supported.

Coexistence with Dragon SDK Client Edition

You can install *Dragon SDK Client* Edition 11 on the same computer where Dragon 11 or greater is installed. In addition, *Dragon* and *Dragon SDK Client* Edition can share User Profiles.

If you install the Dragon 11 SDK Client Edition (DSC 11) and Dragon 11.5 on the same machine, if you uninstall DSC 11, you may not be able to start Dragon 11.5. To fix this issue, run the Repair option from the installation DVD. Enter the installation DVD into the DVD drive of the Dragon workstation and start the installation process. At the prompt, select the Repair option and follow the instructions on the screen.

If you are running Dragon SDK Client Edition, you can not display the DragonBar.

> **Note:** Dragon 11 or greater can coexist with *Dragon SDK Client* Edition 9.x. and 10.x.

Run Dragon SDK Client Edition 11 on a computer with Dragon 11 or greater

You must have administrator privileges to perform the following step. In Windows Vista, make sure to elevate the command prompt.

At a command prompt, type the following command:

```
C:\Program Files\Nuance\Dragon SDK Client Edition11\Program\natspeak.exe /fixguids
```

Run Dragon 11 or greater on a computer with Dragon SDK Client Edition 11

You must have administrator privileges to perform the following step. In Windows Vista, make sure to elevate the command prompt.

At a command prompt, type the following command:

```
C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program\natspeak.exe /fixguids
```

Chapter 3: Installing Dragon

This section provides information on how to install Dragon, post-installation tasks, the Dragon file structure, sample commands, and medical vocabularies (for Dragon Medical Edition).

Note: You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported.

Installing Dragon on a single computer **36**

Installing the Dragon 11.5 service pack **40**

Sample custom installation of Dragon Medical **41**

57

Post Installation Tasks **58**

Cleaning up after uninstalling Dragon **58**

Dragon file structure **59**

Turning off Dragon's use of Microsoft Active Accessibility Service **63**

Choosing a Medical Vocabulary to Support Your Specialty **65**

Enhancing the privacy of patient data **71**

Installing Dragon on a single computer

This topic presents the basic steps for installing *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* or *Dragon Medical* on a single computer.

For a complete step-by-step procedure of installing *Dragon* on a single computer, please see the *Dragon Getting Started Guide*, available in printed form, or the *Dragon User Guide*, available on the DVD in ***\documentation\enx\User Guide.pdf***.

Notes:

- In Dragon 11 or greater , the installation process does not present the QuickStart option. If you wish to enable this option, you can do so after Dragon is installed.
- You must have Windows Administrator rights to install or uninstall *Dragon* or *Dragon Medical* on Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, or Windows Server 2008. For more information about how Administrator rights impact the creation of Dragon User Profiles, refer to Preparing for an installation or upgrade.
- When you install Dragon 11 or greater , Dragon installs using the primary language for the product. You cannot install Dragon using a language that is different than the primary language. For example, when you install Dragon 11 or greater Professional, English version, Dragon installs using the English language.
  If you attempt to use the setup.exe with the `/l` option on the command line to install 5 using a non-primary language, the installation process uses the primary language for that edition of Dragon and ignores the `/l` option.

Installing on Windows Vista and Windows 7

For information about installing the product on Windows Vista and Windows 7, refer to Installing or Upgrading to Windows Vista and Windows 7.

Installing Dragon on a single computer

To install *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* or *Dragon Medical*:

1. Insert the first *Dragon* DVD into your DVD drive.

   If the installation does not start automatically, use the Windows Explorer to find and double-click ***setup.exe*** on the DVD.

   When you start the installation, you might see a message from your Operating System saying ***A program needs your permission to continue***. Click ***Continue*** to start the installation.
2. After the Windows Installer begins, it installs software packages (if they are not already installed):
   Visual C++ 9.0 Runtime for Dragon
3. After the installation Wizard begins, click ***Next*** to proceed to the License Agreement. Read the text of the agreement and select ***I accept...***, then click ***Next*** again.

4. Enter your customer information—***User Name*** and ***Organization***—then the ***Serial Number*** supplied to your *Dragon* installation.
5. Choose your installation directory. If there are no previous versions of *Dragon* on your system, the default directory in Windows XP is:
   `C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11`

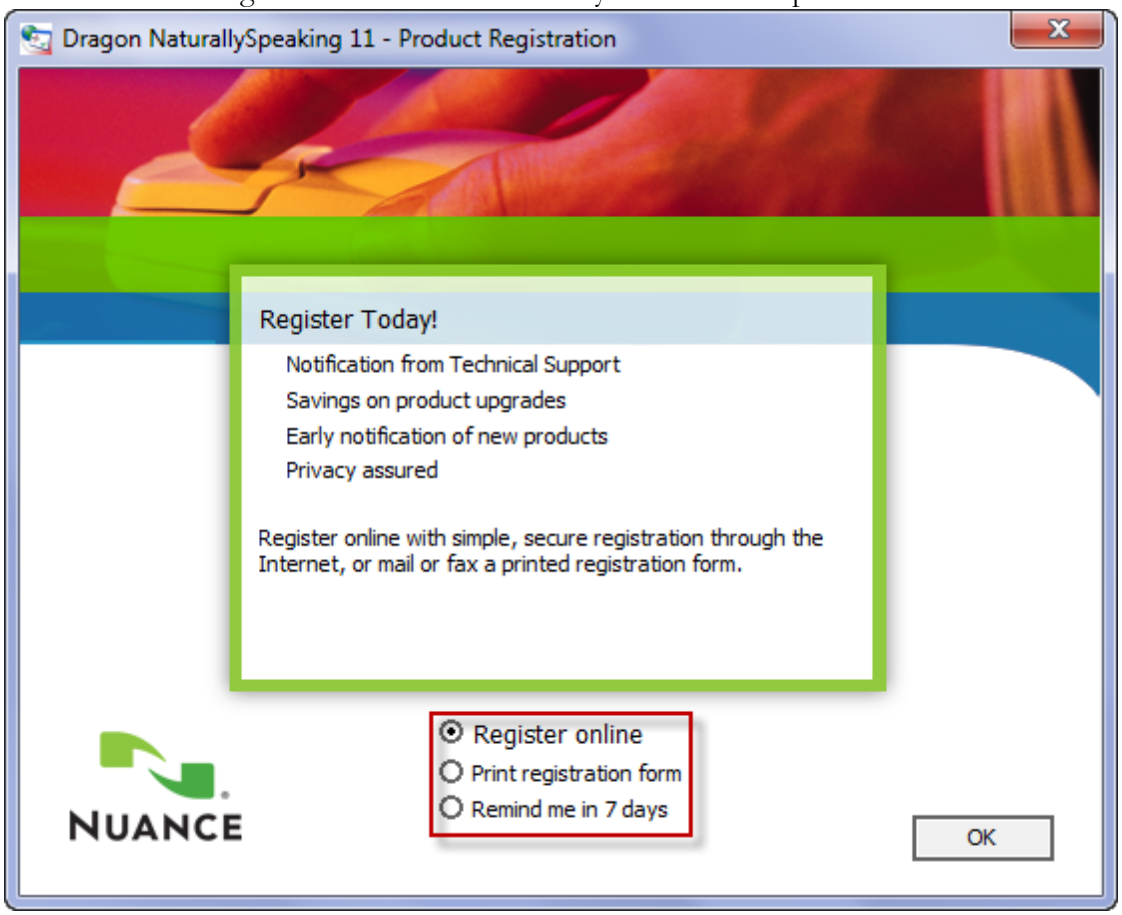
   See *Dragon file structure* on page 59
6. Choose your ***Setup Type***:
   If you decide not to install some *Dragon* components by selecting **Custom** installation, you can install them later by running the **Setup** program again and choosing **Modify**.
   - ***Typical/Complete***: Installs all options and User Profiles and requires the most disk space.
   - ***Custom***: Lets you select options and User Profiles to install. Customizing your installation options can greatly reduce the disk space required.

     In the Professional and Medical editions, you can modify the following settings during a custom installation. These settings are applied to all User Profiles created with this installation of Dragon, including User Profiles created from Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, and Windows Server 2008 limited accounts:
     - ***Modify the application's settings for all users*** displays the **Options** dialog box at the end of the installation. The Options dialog box lets you change the product's standard behavior:
       - Change hot key settings
       - Customize how text is formatted
       - Choose initial microphone settings
       - Set how often your User Profiles are backed up
       - Set where you can dictate commands, such as in web pages or other windows
     - ***Modify the administrative settings*** displays the **Administrative settings** dialog box at the end of the installation. The Administrative settings dialog box lets you:
       - Set up the Roaming feature
       - Set the backup location of your User Profiles
       - Restrict users from modifying commands and vocabularies
       - Schedule the Acoustic Optimizer and Data Collection tasks
     - ***Modify the Auto-Formatting options for all users*** displays the ***Auto-Formatting*** dialog box at the end of the installation. In this dialog box, you can choose ways that text should be automatically formatted (such as postal codes in US or UK format) and the number of spaces after a period. In the Medical editions of Dragon, you can also change the medical formatting options in this dialog box.
7. Click ***Next*** and on **the *Ready to Install the Program*** page you can choose to take two optional actions:
   Enable QuickStart option for the current user—Launches the product on system startup and places the *QuickStart* icon in the Windows task bar.

Upgrade existing speech files to work with the installation—Immediately after you reboot, the User Profile upgrade process begins. You can make this choice to upgrade User Profiles from Dragon 9.x or 10.x.

8. Continue following the on-screen instructions. The setup program will install the files for *Dragon* on your computer.
9. If you are upgrading and chose to upgrade User Profiles, when the message about upgrading your User Profiles pops up, click **OK**.
10. If you did a ***Custom*** installation one or more of the following windows opens immediately:
    - If you checked ***Modify the application's settings for all users***, the ***Options*** dialog box opens. For more information on the ***Options*** dialog box, see the main *Dragon* Help file.
    - If you checked ***Modify the administrative settings***, the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box opens. For more information on setting administrative settings under the **Roaming**, **Miscellaneous**, and **Scheduled Tasks** tabs:
        - See Administrative Settings: Roaming tab
        - See Administrative Settings: Miscellaneous
        - See Administrative Settings: Scheduled Tasks
    - If you checked ***Modify the Auto-formatting options for all users*** on the ***Custom Setup*** page, the ***Auto-Formatting*** dialog box opens. For more information on the ***Auto-Formatting*** dialog box, see the main *Dragon* Help file.
11. After you click ***Finish***, the installation process displays a screen that allows you to register your copy of Dragon. There are many benefits to registering Dragon including receiving updates from Nuance, special deals on product upgrades, and notifications about upcoming product releases. You can choose to register online, through a printed form, or opt to register at a later time. Select a registration option and Click **OK**. If you choose one of the first two options, you are

shown an online registration site or a form that you fill out and print.



12. After you select **OK**, if you are prompted to restart your computer, restart it now. Otherwise, skip to the next step.
13. Start the product:
    Select ***Start*** > ***All Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5***.
14. If you have User Profiles from Dragon 9.x or 10.x and you chose the ***Upgrade existing speech files to work with the installation*** check box earlier, the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard*** opens automatically. Otherwise, if you do not have any User Profiles to upgrade, the ***New User Profiles wizard*** opens automatically so that you can create the first User Profile.

Activating Dragon

The first time you start *Dragon*, you will be prompted to activate your copy of *Dragon*. If you do not activate the software, *Dragon* will stop working after you start the product fives times.

For more information on activation, please see the *Dragon User Guide*.

Installing the Dragon 11.5 service pack

You can download the service pack for Dragon 11.5 through the Nuance Update Service. The Nuance Update Service is an automatic update service you connect to from Dragon NaturallySpeaking. To open the Nuance Update Service, do the following:

1. Close all applications on the computer. Do not reopen the applications until after Dragon 11.5 installs on the computer.
2. Start Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.
3. Click on **Help** > **Check for Updates**.
4. When the Update Service starts, select the **Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5** update.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Use the **Download** button to save the service pack to the computer.
7. Once the service pack downloads to the computer, double-click the service pack.
8. Follow the instructions in the installation wizard to install Dragon 11.5.

Sample custom installation of Dragon Medical

Note: This is an example only and is provided to give administrators an overview of a typical installation and the kind of decisions you have to make. Though the example provides recommendations it is not meant as a substitute for your own planning.

For more information, see:

- Installation checklists
- Installing Dragon on a single computer
- Step-by-Step Command Line Installation
- Overview of Pushing Client Installation from Server

Preparing for the Roaming feature

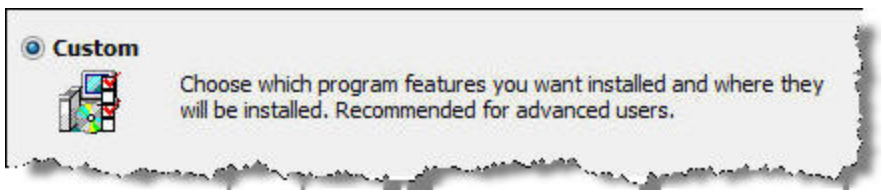
1. Create network storage location for Master Roaming User Profiles. For example, you can create a shared drive that all Dragon users will have read/write access to. In this example, we'll name this shared folder ***Dragon***.
2. In the shared ***Dragon*** folder, you can create 2 sub-folders; ***Dragon Profiles*** and ***Data Directory***.
    - **Dragon Profiles** is the location for the master copies of the User Profiles. (For planning purposes allow for 1100 MB per User Profile.)
    - **Data Directory** is the location for custom commands and word lists that automatically update the User Profiles by use of the Data Distribution Tool.

For more information, see Setting up the Roaming feature.

Install Dragon

To install *Dragon*:

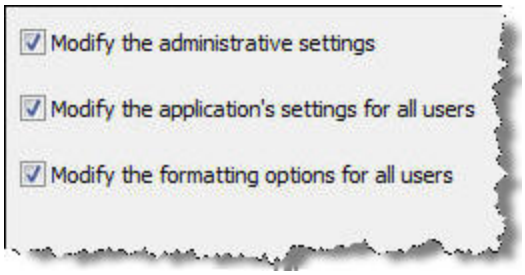
1. Insert the first *Dragon* DVD into your DVD drive or if installing from network drive, click on **setup.exe**.
2. When you have the option, choose ***Custom*** installation. For example:



Custom lets you select options and User Profiles to install. Customizing your installation options can greatly reduce the disk space required.

Click **Next** to continue.

3. On the Additional options screen, select all three options. For example:



Click ***Next*** to continue.

Setting the Dragon Options

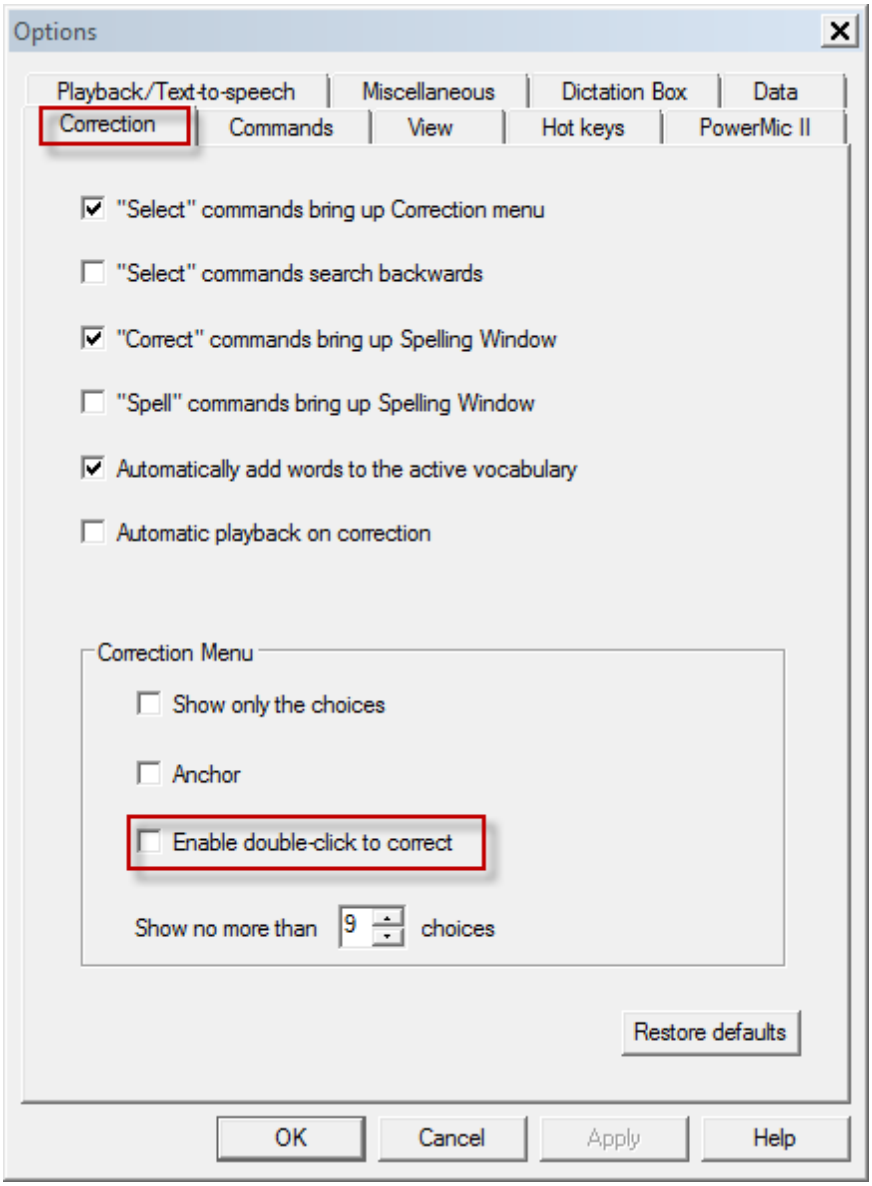
When the installation is complete, the three customization dialog boxes will open. The first to open is the ***Options*** dialog box.

Corrections tab:

You use this tab to control how the correction feature and spelling features work.

In this example:

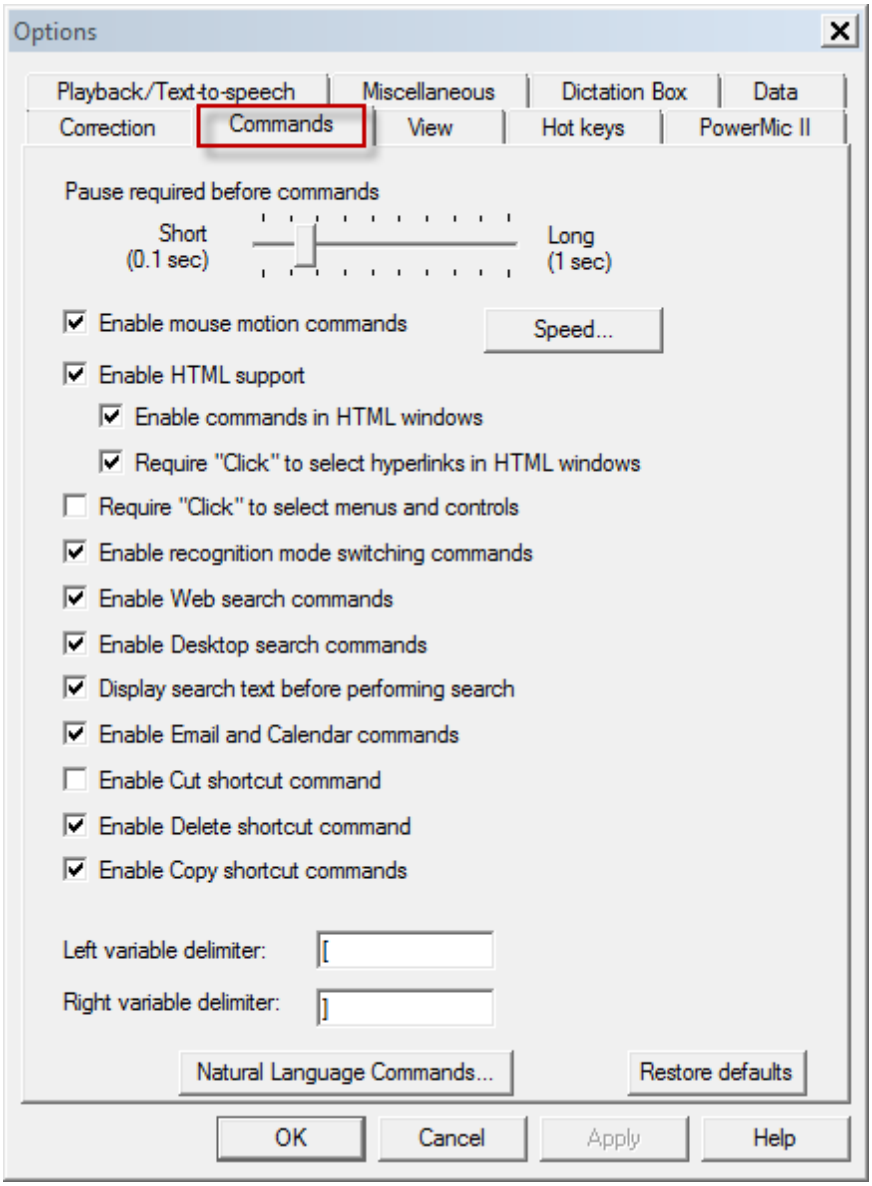
- Check ***Enable double-click to correct***. Selecting this checkbox gives the user a way to correct with the mouse.



The Commands tab:

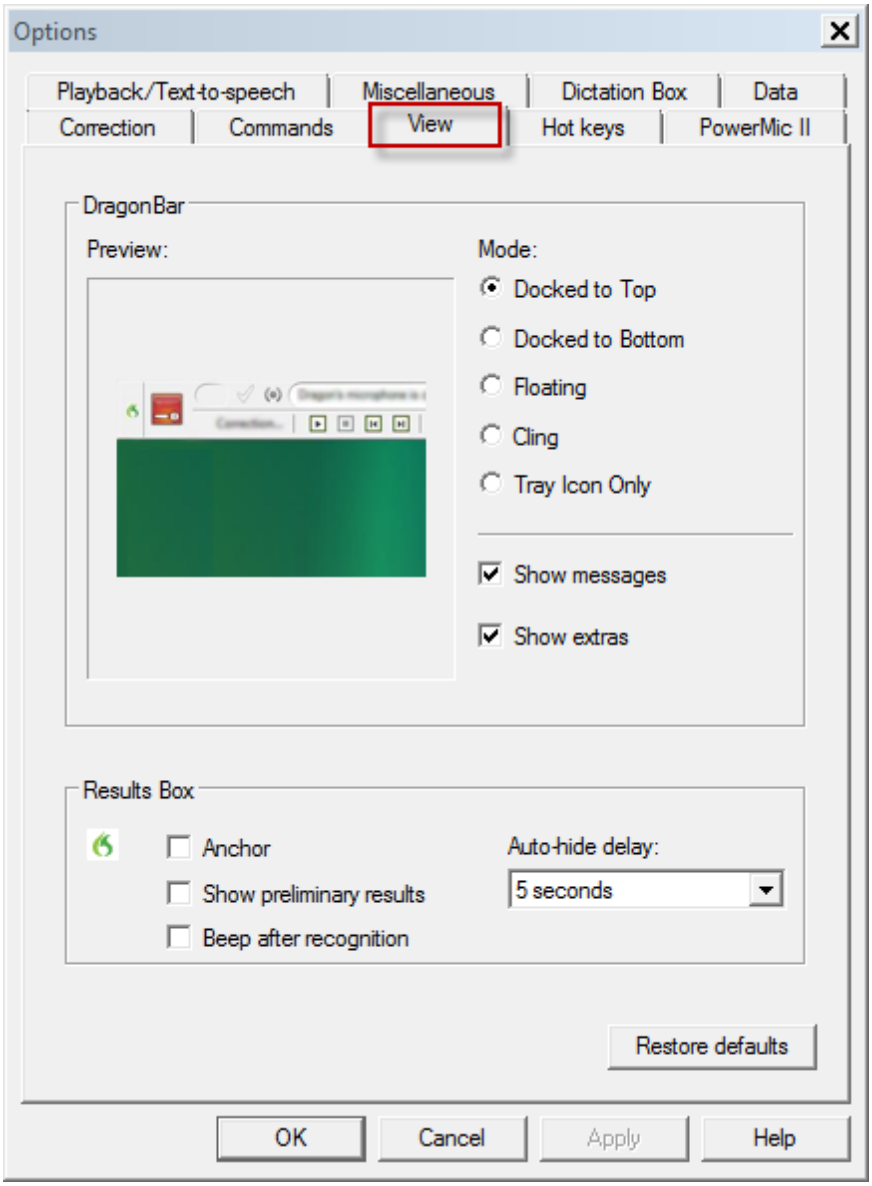
You use this tab to set options that control how Dragon interprets commands. Unless otherwise indicated, changing these options only affects the current user; any other users keep their existing settings.

The following example shows the default settings:



The View tab:

You use the ***View*** tab to control the behavior and appearance of the DragonBar and the ***Results Box***.



The Hot keys tab:

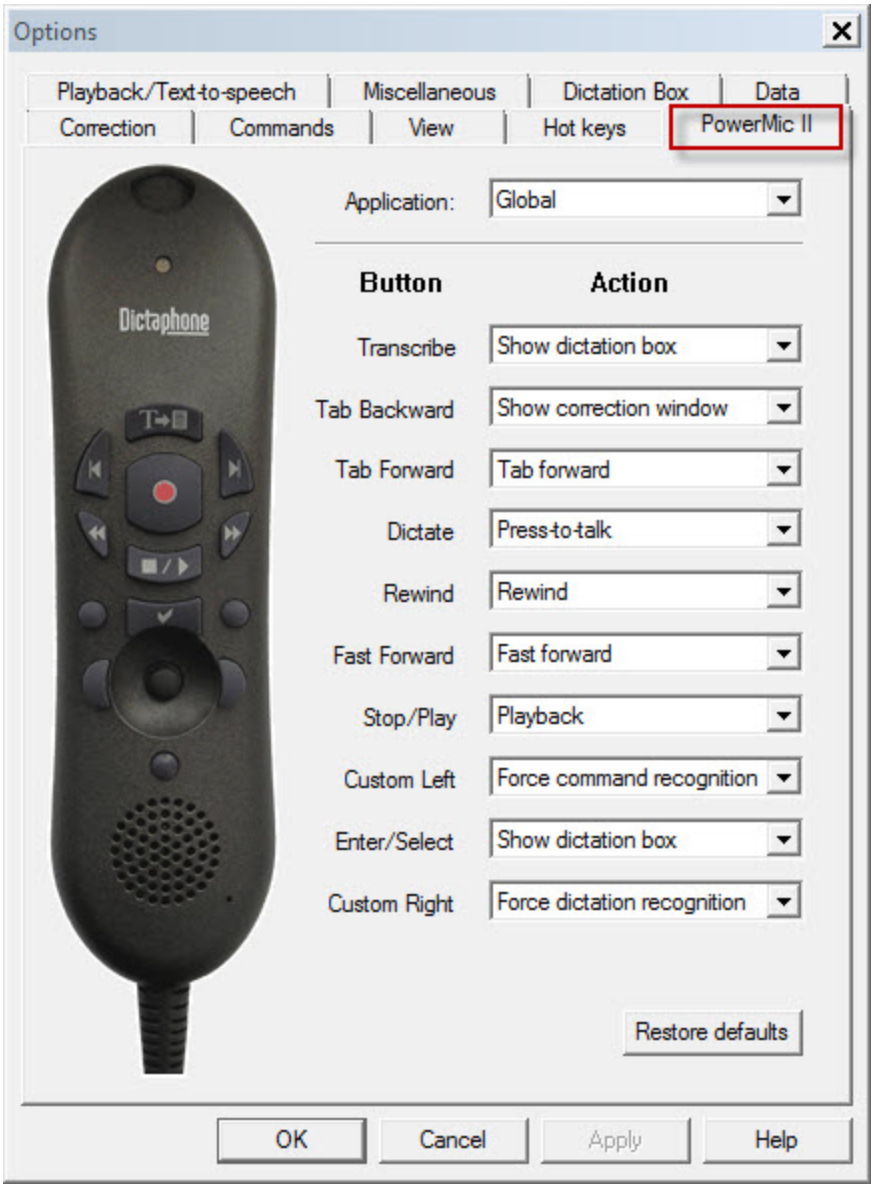
You use the Hot keys tab to specify hot key assignments.

If your users will be using Dragon on a Notebook, then click ***Microphone on/off*** and hit the ***F10*** key to change the hotkey.

The PowerMic I and II tabs:

If you are using Dragon and you are using a Dictaphone PowerMic for dictation, the Options dialog box displays the PowerMic I and II tabs. Dragon has built-in support for PowerMic or PowerMic II microphones. You can use the PowerMic II microphone buttons to perform predefined actions (described in the table below) or program the buttons to take custom actions.

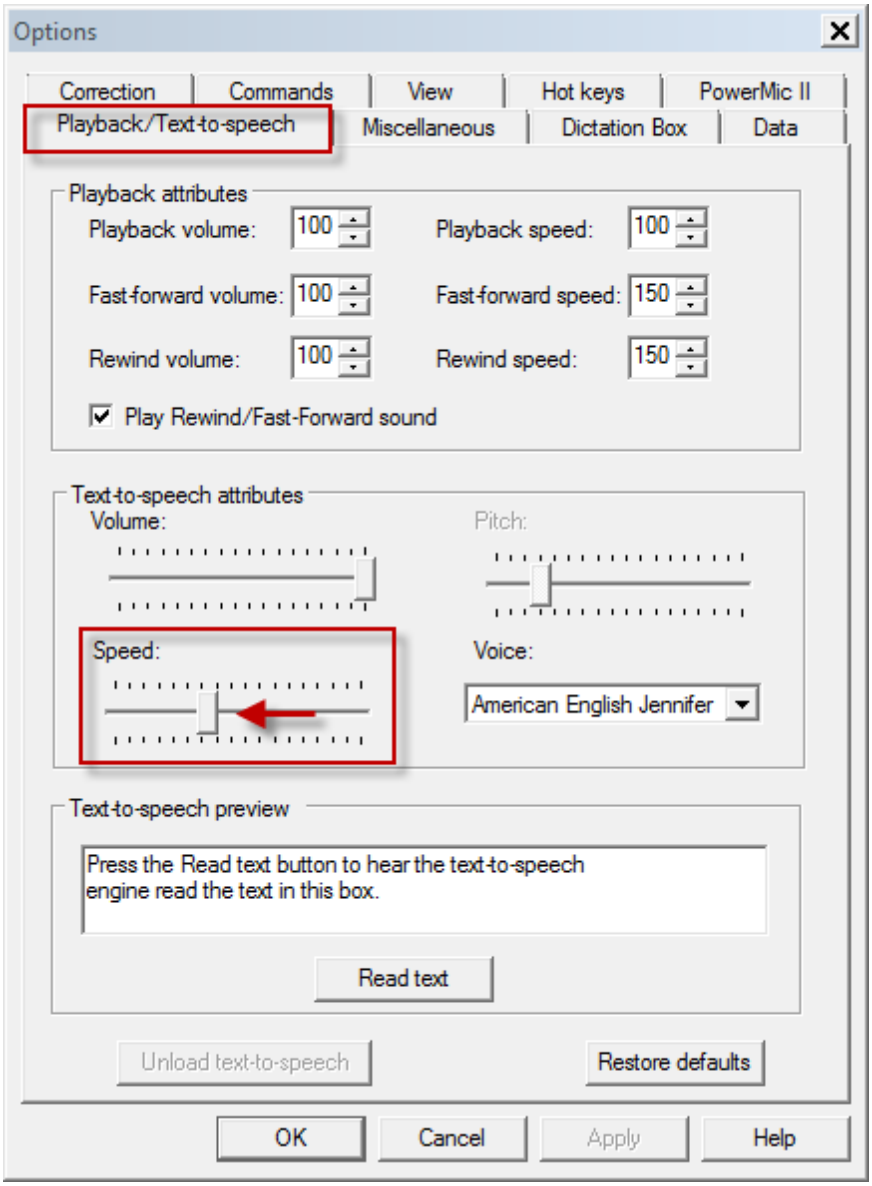
The following example shows the default settings for the PowerMic II:



The Playback/Text-to-Speech tab:

You use the Playback/Text-to-speech tab to adjust the attributes of text-to-speech and playback.

In this example, increase the ***Speed*** slider slightly. The default value is a little too slow. For example:



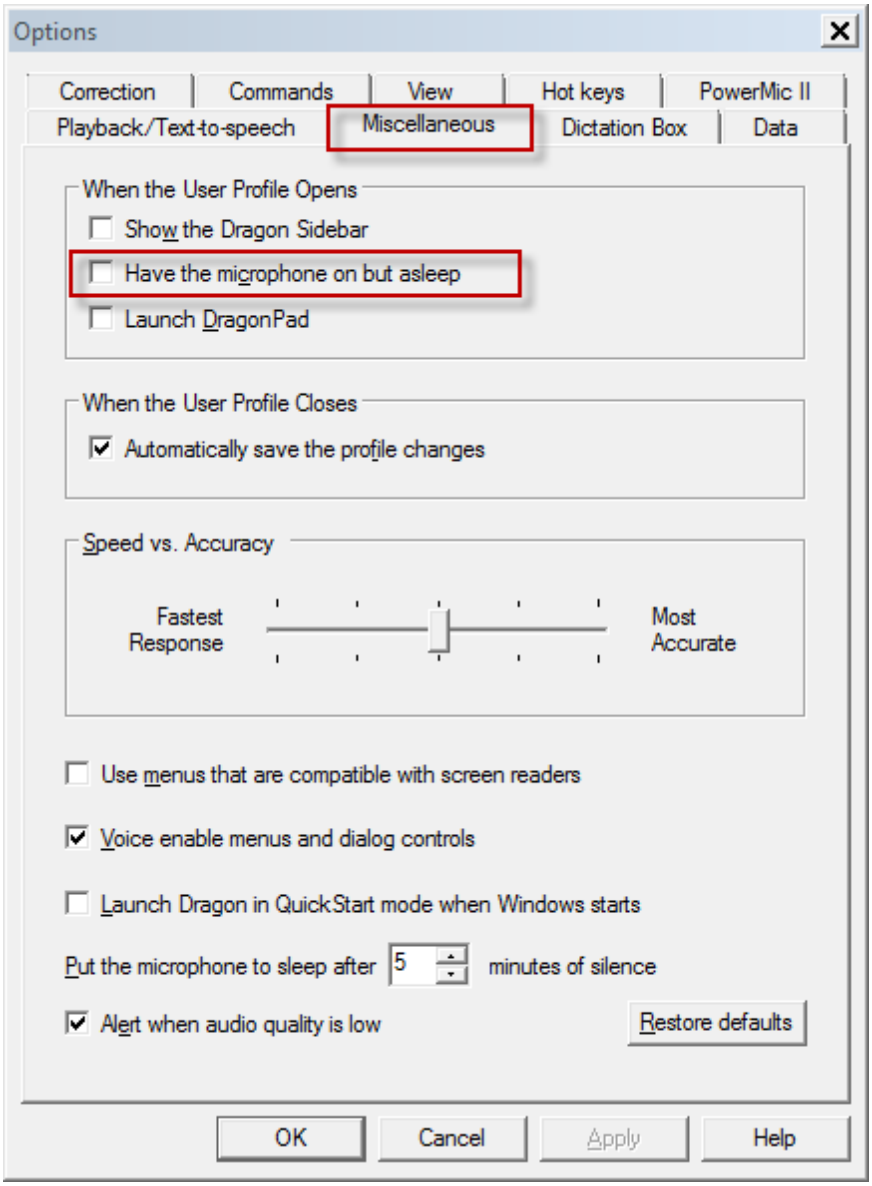
The Miscellaneous tab:

You use this tab to set miscellaneous options.

In this example

- Leave the ***Have the microphone on but asleep*** option unchecked unless the user cannot or does not want to use their hands to turn the microphone on and off.

For example:



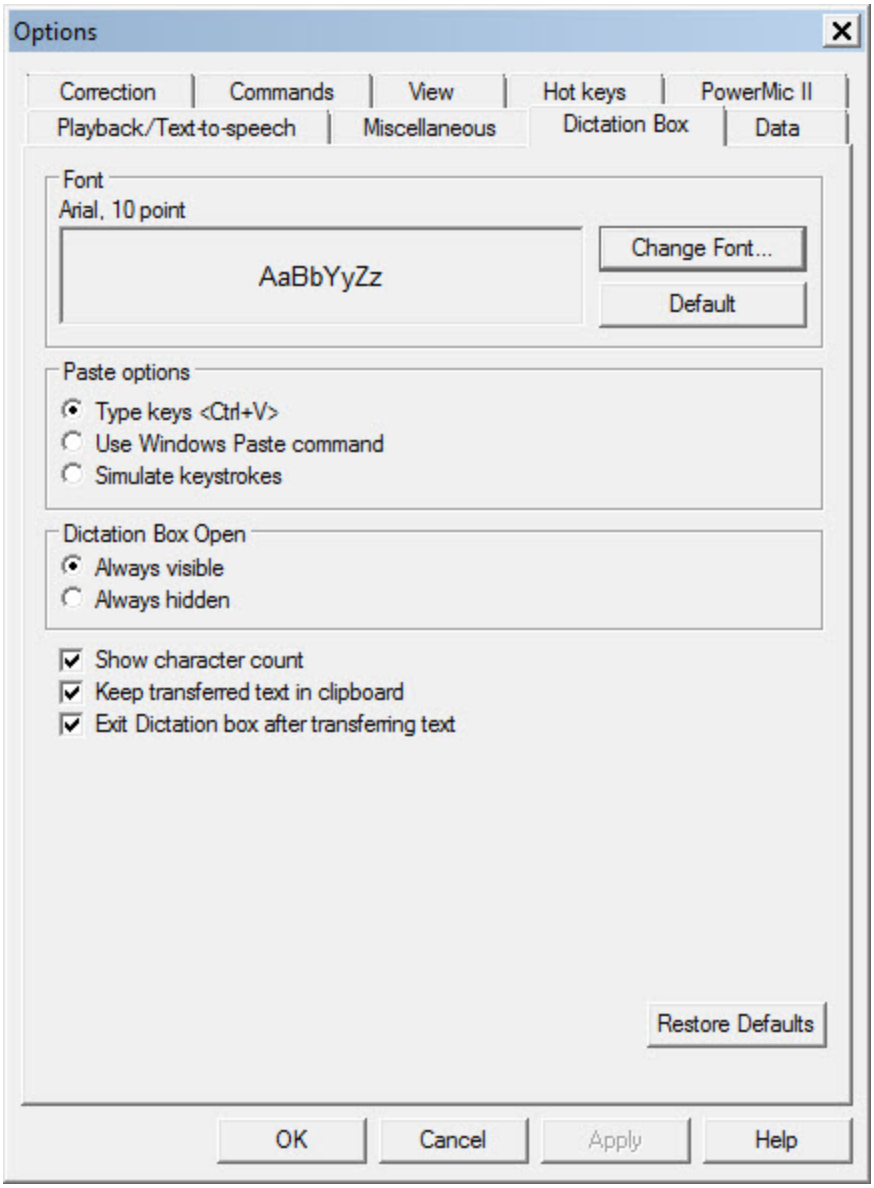
The Dictation Box tab:

On the Dictation tab, you can define how the ***Dictation Box*** operates.

You access the Dictation tab by selecting **Tools** > **Dictation Box** from the Dragon menu.

For more information on the ***Dictation Box***, see the ***Using the Dictation Box*** topic in Dragon help file.

The following example shows the default settings for the ***Dictation Box***:



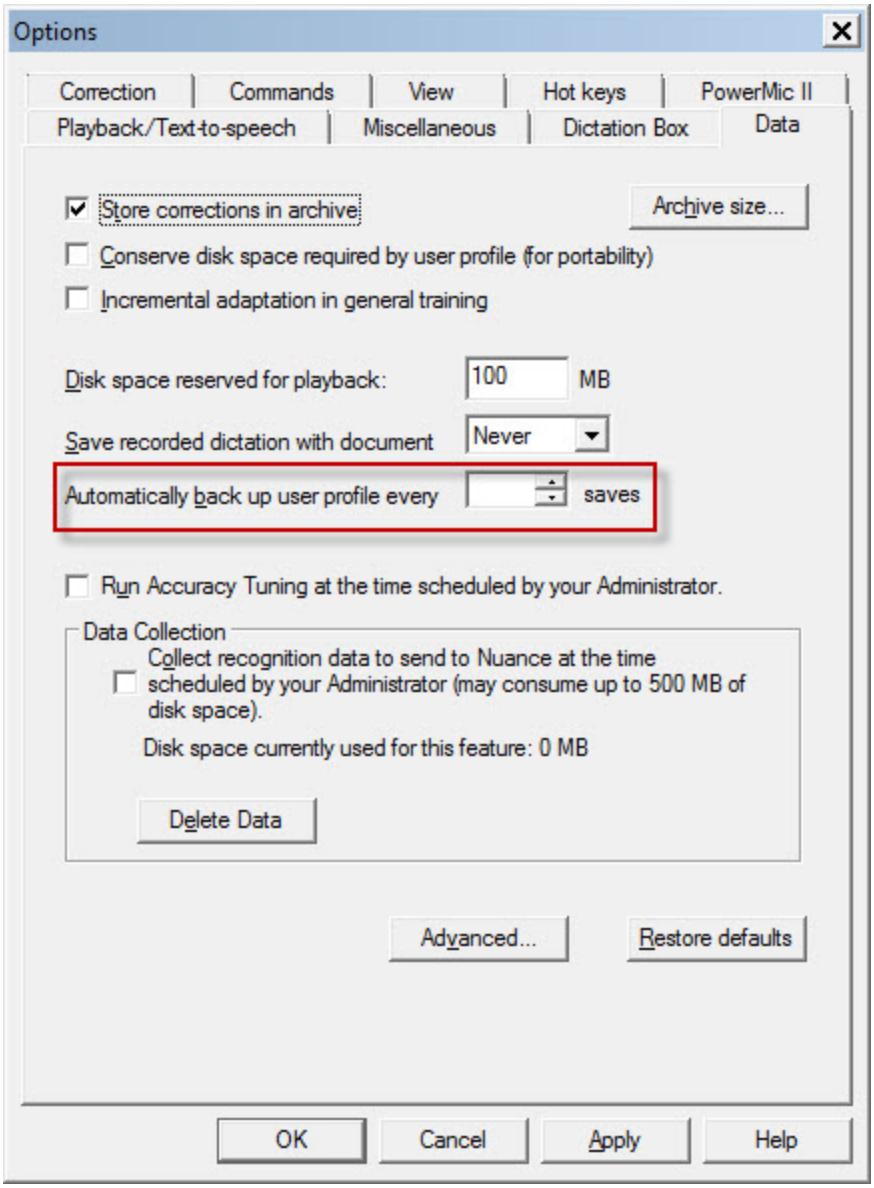
The Data tab:

You use the Data tab to instruct Dragon to store corrections in an archive, conserve disk space for better portability of User Profiles, and control how Dragon adapts training, saves recorded dictation, and backs up User Profiles.

In this example:

- Set the ***Automatically back up user profile every "n" saves*** to nothing if your users are using the Roaming feature. When you have a Roaming User Profile, the Master Roaming User Profile most likely resides on a server that should be backed up every night.

For example:



Setting the Administrative Options: Roaming User Profiles

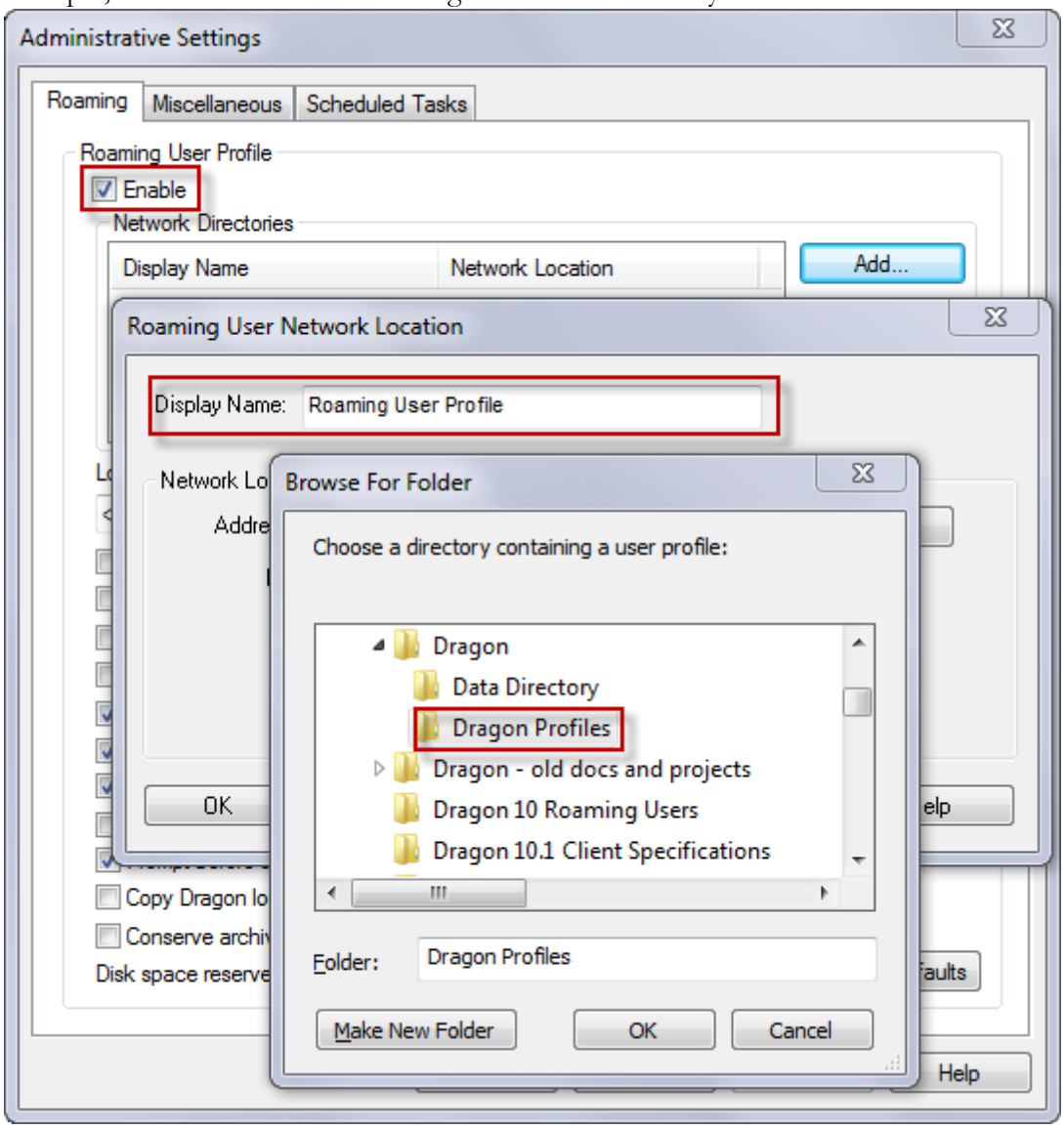
The second dialog to open at the end of the installation is the Administrative Settings dialog box. This section describes the ***Roaming*** tab of the Administrative options dialog box

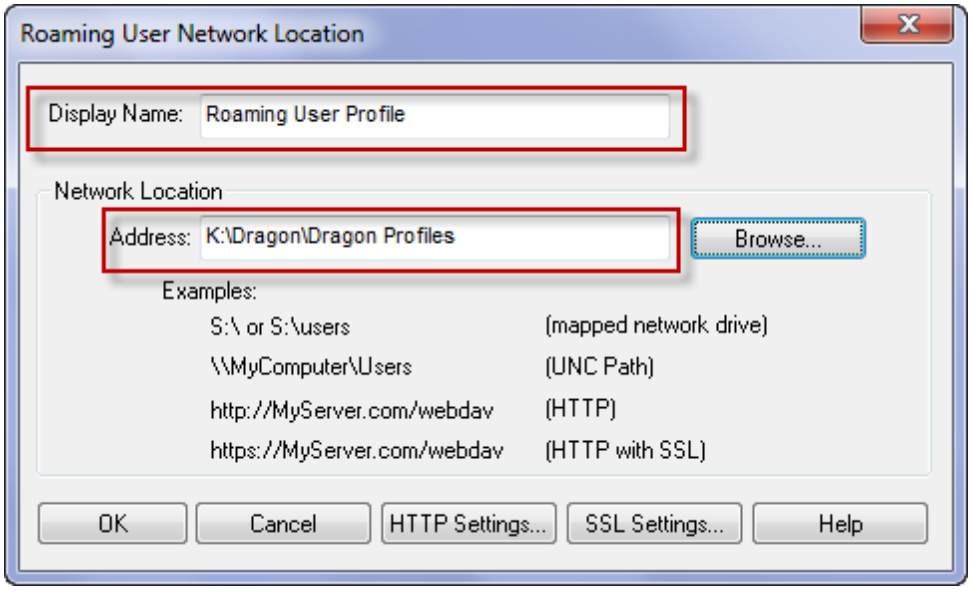
You use the ***Roaming*** tab of the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box to set up the Roaming feature. You must set up the Roaming feature on each computer where you want users to dictate with a Roaming User Profile. For more information, see Administrative Settings: Roaming tab.

In this example:

1. Select ***Enable*** to activate the Roaming feature and the Roaming User Profile options.
2. Click the ***Add*** button. You use the ***Roaming User Network Location*** dialog box to define the network location of the master Roaming User Profiles. The location you pick must be accessible to all computers on the network that you want available for dictation with *Dragon*. In this

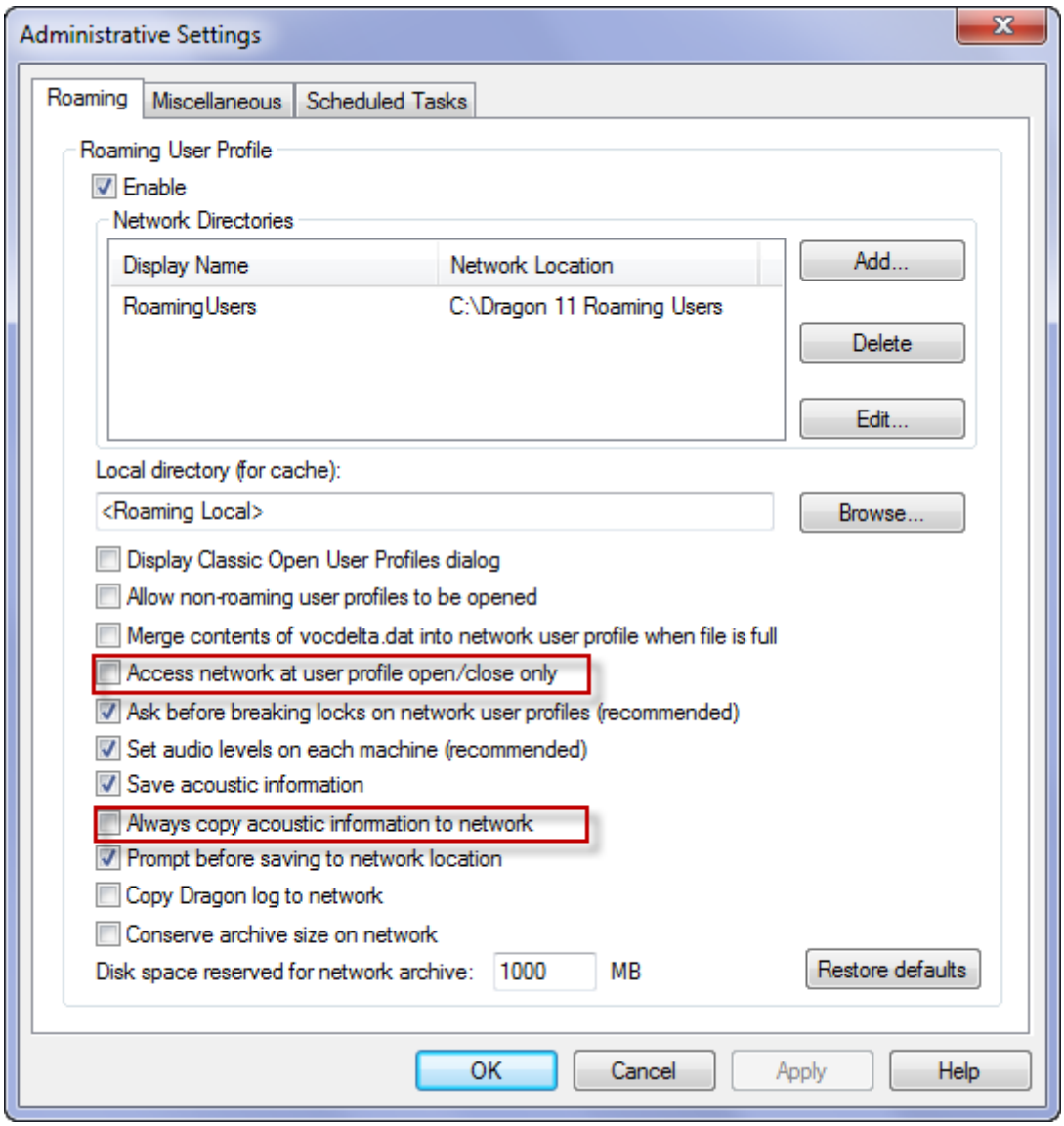
example, we'll use the network storage location we initially created.





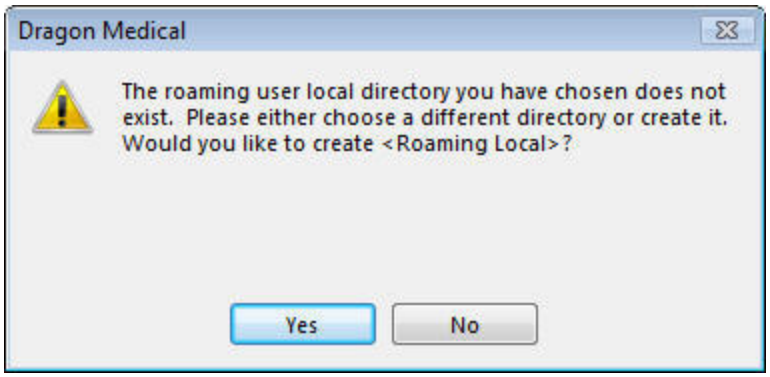
3. The ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box also contains several options that you can choose from to indicate how you want a Roaming User Profile to function at each Roaming User Profile location.

   In addition to the default settings, also enable the ***Access network at user profile open/close only*** and ***Always copy acoustic information to network*** options. For example:

   - 

   Click ***OK*** to continue.

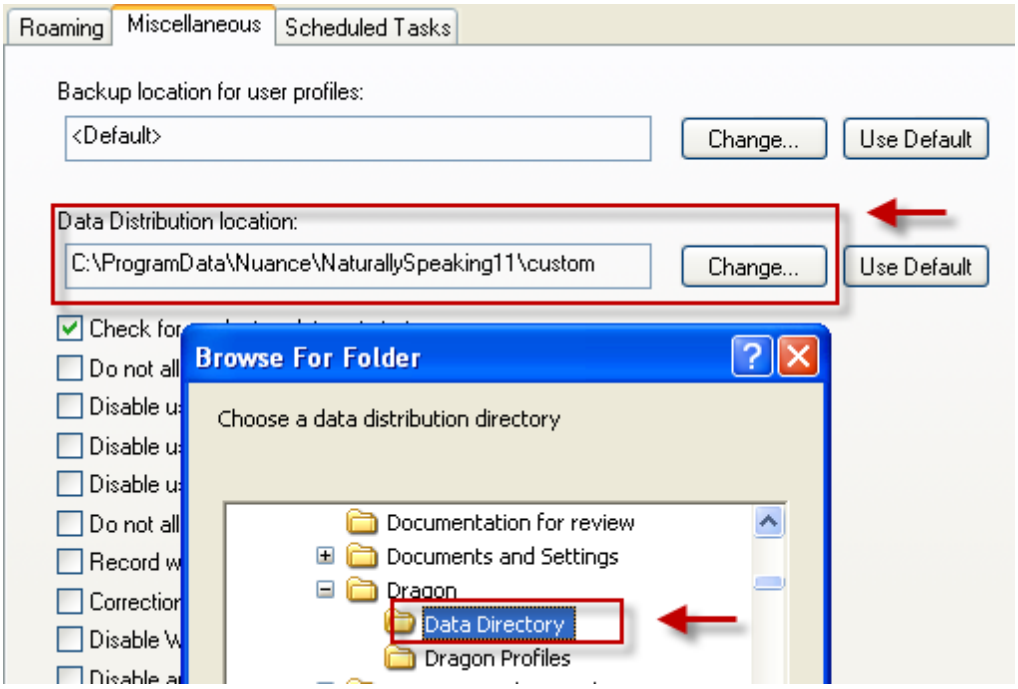
5. You will be prompted to create the default directory if it does not already exist, when you see the following message, always click **Yes**:



Setting the Administrative Options: Miscellaneous options

When the installation is complete, the three customization dialog boxes will open. The second to open is the Administrative Settings dialog box. This section describes the Administrative options dialog box

In this example, click ***Change...*** to set the location of the ***Data Distribution Location*** to the network directory that you created at the beginning.

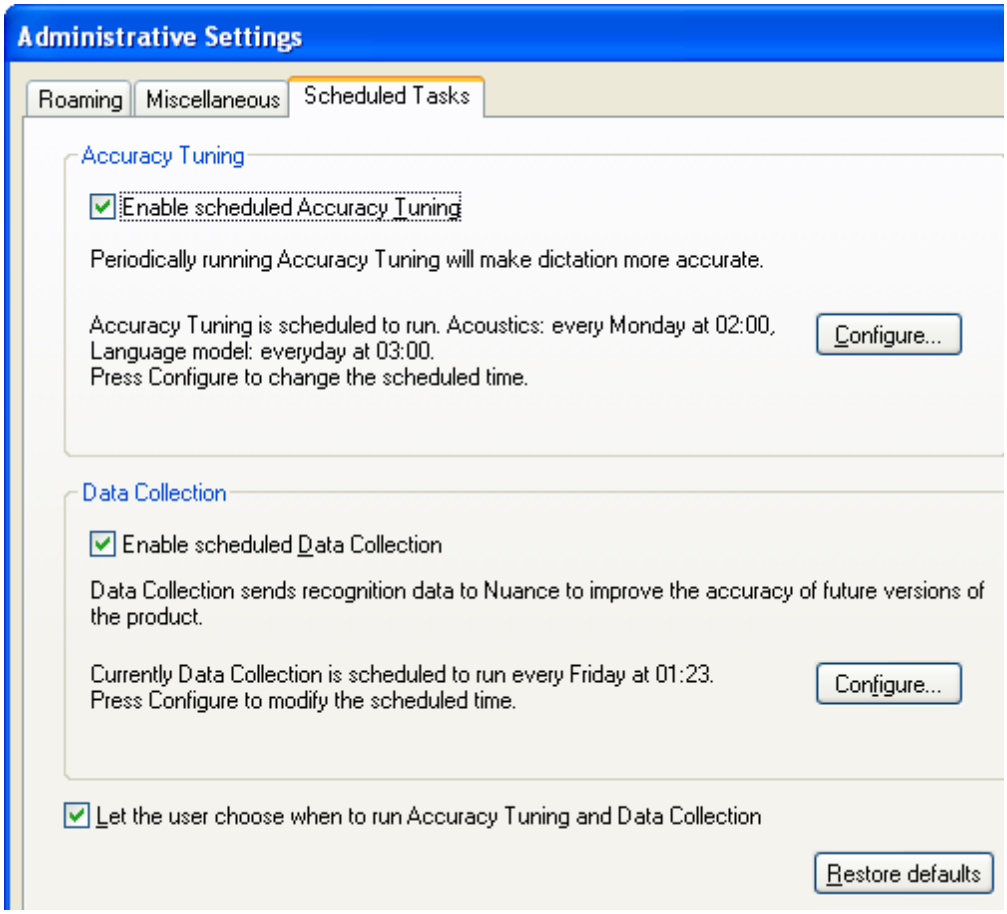


Also make sure to deselect the ***Check for product updates at startup*** option to disable Dragon from automatically checking the Nuance web site for product updates if you want to control which updates your users can get.

Setting the Administrative Options: Scheduled Tasks

When the installation is complete, the three customization dialog boxes will open. The second to open is the Administrative Settings dialog box. This section describes the ***Scheduled Tasks*** tab of the Administrative options dialog box

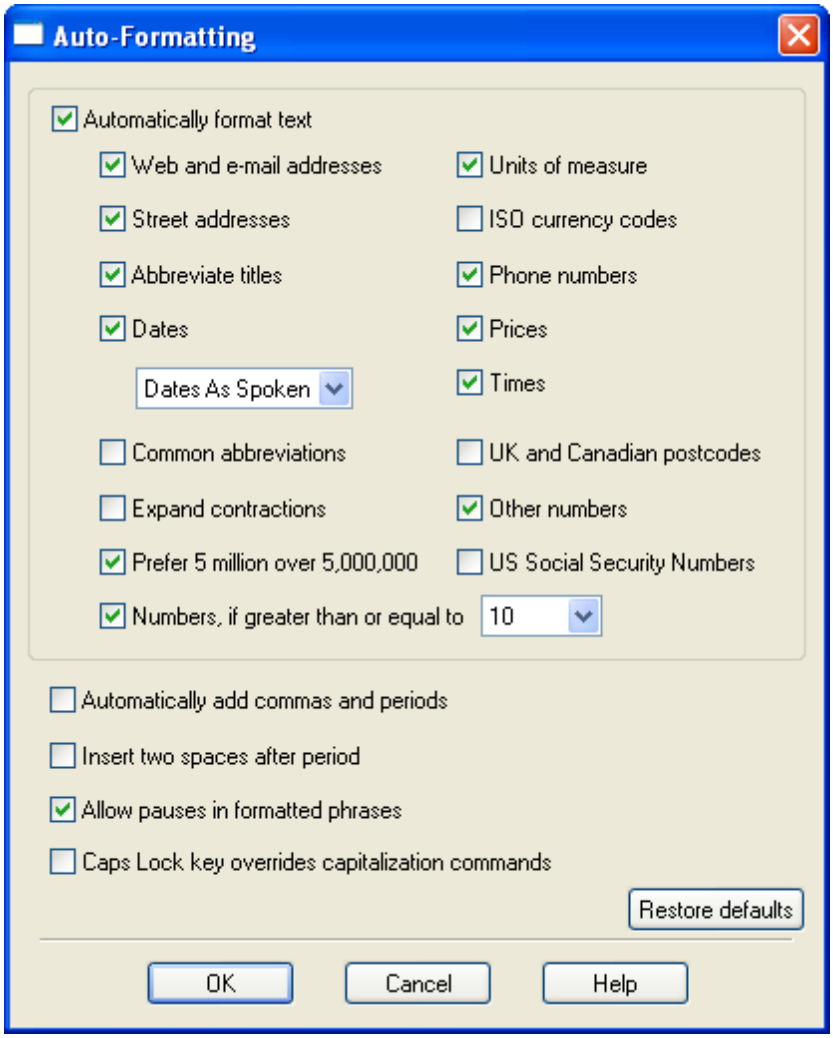
The following example shows the default settings for the ***Scheduled Tasks*** tab:



For more information, see the Dragon Help file.

Setting Auto-Formatting Options

The third dialog to open at the end of the installation is the ***Auto-Formatting*** dialog box. For example, this version of the Auto-Formatting dialog box displays when you are installing a non-medical edition of Dragon:



To set Auto-Formatting Options

1. Set the Auto-Formatting options.
2. Click ***Apply*** to save your changes and leave the ***Auto-Formatting*** dialog box open.
3. Click ***OK*** to save your changes in the current tab, close the ***Auto-Formatting*** dialog box, and have the changes take effect. Your changes do not take effect until after you close the dialog box.

Nuance recommends that you review these tabs to make appropriate choices for your site.

Post Installation Tasks

Once you have installed or upgraded *Dragon*, you might want to carry out some of these tasks before you proceed:

- Cleaning up after uninstalling Dragon
- Dragon File Structure
- Turning off Dragon's use of Microsoft Active Accessibility Service
- Choosing Medical Vocabulary to Support Your Specialty (Dragon Medical only)

Cleaning up after uninstalling Dragon

The following files will remain on your computer after you uninstall *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* or *Dragon Medical*:

C:\Windows\Speech

- VText.dll
- Vdict.dll
- WrapSAPI.dll
- XTel.dll
- Xcommand.dll
- Xlisten.dll
- Xvoice.dll
- spchtel.dll
- speech.cnt
- speech.dll
- speech.hlp
- vcauto.tlb
- vcmd.exe
- vcmshl.dll
- vtxtauto.tlb

Dragon installed these files for Microsoft SAPI4 support. If you do not have other speech applications that require SAPI4, you can safely remove these files manually. If have installed other speech applications that require SAPI4 support, you may need to re-install those applications if you remove the files.

Dragon file structure

Upgrading from *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* 9.x or 10.x to Dragon 11 or greater will automatically relocate some *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* directories and files.

You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11 or greater . Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported.

The following directory structures and file locations assume an installation to a default location.

V9.0/V9.1 Windows 2000/XP Pro/XP Home/Windows Server 2003 directory structure

The V9.0/V9.1 directory structure before upgrading to Dragon 11 or greater :

C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking9
\Help
\Program
\Tutorial (optional)
C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\N-uance\NaturallySpeaking9\
\Custom
\Data
\Data\Training
\Users
C:\Documents and Settings\<username>\Application Data\N-uance\NaturallySpeaking9\
\Results

V9.5 Windows 2000/XP Pro/XP Home/Windows Server 2003 directory structure

The V9.5 directory structure on Windows 2000/XP Pro/XP Home/Windows 2000 Advanced Server/Windows Server 2003 before upgrading to Dragon 11 or greater :

C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking9
\Ereg
\Help
\Program
\Tutorial (optional)
C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\N-uance\NaturallySpeaking9\
\Custom
\Data
\Data\Training
\Users

C:\Documents and Settings\<username>\Application Data\N-uance\NaturallySpeaking9\
\Results

V9.5 Windows Vista directory structure

The V9.5 directory structure on Windows Vista before upgrading to Dragon 11 or greater :

C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking9
\Ereg
\Help
\Program
\Tutorial (optional)
C:\ProgramData\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking9\
\Custom
\Data
\Data\Training
\Users
C:\Users\<username>\AppData\Roaming\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking9\
\Results

V10 Windows 2000/XP Pro/XP Home/Windows Server 2003 directory structure

The V10 directory structure on Windows 2000/XP Pro/XP Home/Windows 2000 Advanced Server/Windows Server 2003 before upgrading to Dragon 11 or greater :

C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking10
\Ereg
\Help
\Program
\Tutorial (optional)
C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\N-uance\NaturallySpeaking10\
\Custom
\Data
\Data\Training
\Users
C:\Documents and Settings\<username>\Application Data\N-uance\NaturallySpeaking10\
\Results

V10 Windows Vista and Windows 7 directory structure

The V10 directory structure on Windows Vista before upgrading to Dragon 11 or greater :

C:\Program Files(x86)\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking10
 \Ereg
 \Help
 \Program
 \Tutorial (optional)
C:\ProgramData\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking10\
 \Custom
 \Data
 \Data\Training
 \Users
C:\Users\<-
username>\AppData\Roaming\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking10\
 \Results

Dragon 11 or greater Windows XP Pro/XP Home/Windows Server 2003 directory structure

The Dragon 11 or greater directory structure on Windows XP Pro/XP Home/Windows Server 2003:

C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11
 \Ereg
 \Help
 \Program
 \Tutorial (optional)
C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\N-
uance\NaturallySpeaking11\
 \Custom
 \Data
 \Data\Training
 \Users
 \RoamingUsers
C:\Documents and Settings\<username>\Application Data\N-
uance\NaturallySpeaking11\
 \results

Dragon 11 or greater Windows Vista, Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 directory structure

The Dragon 11 or greater directory structure on Windows Vista and Windows 7:

C:\Program Files(x86)\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11
 \Ereg
 \Help

\Program
\Tutorial (optional)
C:\ProgramData\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\
\Custom
\Data
\Data\Training
\Users
C:\Users\<-
username>\AppData\Roaming\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\
\results

Turning off Dragon's use of Microsoft Active Accessibility Service

Dragon NaturallySpeaking and *Dragon Medical use* Microsoft Active Accessibility Service to let you control certain menus and dialog boxes by voice. Without Microsoft Active Accessibility Service, you would be unable to use *Dragon* to select menu commands and dialog box controls with your voice.

If you don't need to control the menus and dialog boxes by voice, you can speed up *Dragon* performance by turning off Microsoft Active Accessibility Services.

To turn off Active Accessibility Services in Dragon for all applications

1. Open the ***Options*** dialog box by selecting ***Tools*** > ***Options*** on the ***DragonBar***.
2. Click the ***Miscellaneous*** tab.
3. Clear the ***Voice enable menus and dialog controls*** box if it is selected.
4. Click ***OK***. You will need to exit and re-start *Dragon* for this change to take effect.

To turn off Active Accessibility in Dragon for specific applications

1. Exit *Dragon*.
2. Open ***nssystem.ini*** in a text editor. In Windows XP, by default, ***nssystem.ini*** is located in:

   ```
   C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11
   ```

   See Dragon file structure for information on Dragon paths in other Windows operating systems.
3. Under **[MSAA Modules Disabled]**, add a line similar to the following for each application where you want to disable the use of Active Accessibility Services:

   <*executable_name*>=1
4. Save and close **nssystem.ini**.
5. Re-start *Dragon*.

For example, to disable *Dragon* use of Active Accessibility Services in Microsoft Word and Microsoft Excel, you would add the following lines to ***nssystem.ini***:

[MSAA Modules Disabled]
winword.exe=1
excel.exe=1

Note: If you do not know the name of an application's executable file, you can start the application from the Windows ***Start*** menu and then use the Windows Task Manager to view the list of current Windows applications. The executable names are listed under Image Name on the Processes tab. You can also right-click the application's icon and select the shortcut tab—the ***Target*** field will provide the name of the executable.

Choosing a Medical Vocabulary to Support Your Specialty

If you are using Dragon Medical, you should know which medical vocabulary supports your specialty, so that you can readily select the correct vocabulary from the list provided.

Dragon Medical US and UK English Vocabularies and Specialties

Notes:

- Specialties and Medical Vocabularies marked with a ([1]) are not available in the Dragon Medical Small Practice Edition.
- The Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation and the Speech and Language Pathology vocabularies not available in UK English are marked with a ([2]).

Specialty	Medical Vocabulary to Choose
Addiction Psychiatry	Addiction Psychiatry
Adolescent Medicine	Family Medicine, Internal Medicine, or Pediatrics
Allergy and Immunology	Allergy and Immunology
Anesthesiology	Anesthesiology
Bariatric Surgery	Surgery
Behavioral Health	Psychiatry
Blood Banking/Transfusion Medicine	Pathology [1]
Breast Surgery	Surgery
Cardiac Surgery	Cardiac Surgery
Cardiology	Cardiology
Cardiothoracic Surgery	Surgery
Cardiovascular Disease	Internal Medicine
Chemical Pathology	Pathology [1]
Child and Adolescent Psychiatry	Psychiatry

Specialty	Medical Vocabulary to Choose
Child Abuse Pediatrics	Pediatrics
Clinical Cardiac Electrophysiology	Cardiology
Critical Care Medicine	Anesthesiology or Internal Medicine
Dentistry	Dentistry
Dermatology	Dermatology
Dermatopathology	Pathology [1]
Developmental-Behavioral Pediatrics	Pediatrics
Diagnostic Radiology	Radiology [1]
ENT	ENT
Ear, Nose, and Throat	ENT
EEG	Psychiatry
Emergency Medicine	Emergency Medicine
EMG Examinations	Neurology
Endocrinology	Endocrinology Diabetes and Metabolism
Epidemiology	Epidemiology
Family Medicine	Family Medicine
Fetal Medicine	Fetal Medicine
Forensic Pathology	Pathology [1]
Forensic Psychiatry	Psychiatry
Gastroenterology	Gastroenterology
General Medicine	General Medicine
Geriatric Medicine	Geriatric Medicine or Family Medicine
Geriatric Psychiatry	Psychiatry
Hand Surgery	Hand Surgery or Plastic Surgery
Hematology	Hematology
Hospice and Palliative Medicine	Pain Medicine, Emergency Medicine, Family Medicine,

Specialty	Medical Vocabulary to Choose
	Internal Medicine, Pediatrics, or Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation [2]
Infectious Disease	Infectious Disease
Internal Medicine	Internal Medicine
Interventional Cardiology	Internal Medicine
Medical Education and Writing	Medical Education and Writing
Medical Microbiology	Pathology [1]
Medical Oncology	Internal Medicine
Medical Toxicology	Emergency Medicine, Pediatrics
Mental Health	Addiction Psychiatry, Endocrinology Diabetes and Metabolism, Psychiatry, or Psychology
Midwifery	Midwifery
Neonatal and Perinatal Medicine	Neonatal and Perinatal Medicine
Nephrology	Nephrology
Neurodevelopmental Disabilities	Pediatrics
Neurology	Neurology
Neuromuscular Medicine	Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation [2]
Neuropathology	Pathology [1]
Neuropsychology	Psychiatry, Neurology
Neurosurgery	Neurosurgery
Neurotology	ENT
Nuclear Medicine	Nuclear Medicine
Nuclear Radiology	Radiology [1]
Nursing	Nursing
Obstetrics and Gynecology	Obstetrics and Gynecology

Specialty	Medical Vocabulary to Choose
Oncology	Oncology
Ophthalmology	Ophthalmology
Oral and Facial Surgery	Oral and Facial Surgery
Orthopaedic Surgery	Orthopaedic Surgery
Osteopathy	Osteopathy
Otolaryngology	ENT
Pain Medicine	Pain Medicine
Pathology	Pathology [1]
Pediatric Cardiology	Pediatric Cardiology
Pediatric Critical Care Medicine	Pediatrics
Pediatric Dentistry	Pediatric Dentistry
Pediatric Dermatology	Dermatology
Pediatric Emergency Medicine	Emergency Medicine or Pediatrics
Pediatric Endocrinology	Pediatrics
Pediatric ENT	Pediatrics
Pediatric Gastroenterology	Pediatric Gastroenterology
Pediatric Hematology-Oncology	Pediatrics
Pediatric Infectious Diseases	Pediatrics
Pediatric Nephrology	Pediatrics
Pediatric Otolaryngology	ENT
Pediatric Pathology	Pathology [1]
Pediatric Pulmonology	Pediatrics
Pediatric Rehabilitation Medicine	Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation [2]

Specialty	Medical Vocabulary to Choose
Pediatric Rheumatology	Pediatrics
Pediatric Surgery	Surgery
Pediatric Transplant Hepatology	Pediatrics
Pediatric Urology	Urology
Pediatrics	Pediatrics
Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation	Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation [2]
Plastic Surgery	Plastic Surgery
Plastic Surgery within Head and Neck	ENT
Podiatry	Podiatry
Proctology	Colon and Rectal Surgery
Psychiatry	Psychiatry or Addiction Psychiatry
Psychology	Psychology
Pulmonary Disease	Pulmonary Disease
Radiation Oncology	Radiology [1]
Radiation Therapy	Radiation Therapy
Radiologic Physics	Radiology [1]
Radiology	Radiology 1 or Nuclear Medicine
Rheumatology	Rheumatology
Sleep Lab	Sleep Lab
Sleep Medicine	Family Medicine or ENT
Speech and Language Pathology	Speech and Language Pathology [12]
Spinal Cord Injury Medicine	Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation [2]
Sports Medicine	Emergency Medicine, Family Medicine, or Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation
Surgery	Surgery

Specialty	Medical Vocabulary to Choose
Thoracic Surgery	Thoracic Surgery
Transplant Hep-atology	Internal Medicine
Trauma Surgery	Surgery
Undersea and Hyper-baric Medicine	Emergency Medicine
Urology	Urology
Vascular Surgery	Vascular Surgery
Vascular and Inter-ventional Radiology	Vascular and Interventional Radiology [1]

Enhancing the privacy of patient data

When a user dictates using Dragon Medical, Dragon automatically saves all audio and transcribed text in Dragon Recorded Audio (**.DRA**) files. If the user corrects any of the dictated text, Dragon automatically stores these corrections in **.enwv** files. Both these files are saved in the background.

These automatically created **.DRA** and **.enwv** files are used by Dragon to optimize the User Profile. For example, Dragon uses these files when a user runs the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer.

Dragon encrypts these automatically created **.DRA** and **.enwv** files before storing them in the local or Roaming User Profile directories to ensure they do not become a back door into patient data and violate the patient's privacy. These files are also encrypted when a user dictates into a supported application like Microsoft Word or an Electronic Medical Record (EMR) application.

Due to the restrictions mandated by the HIPAA regulations, these encrypted **.DRA** and **.enwv** files can only be opened by Dragon Medical for its internal use. For example, they cannot be accessed by the non-Medical versions of Dragon, the Dragon NaturallySpeaking SDK Client Edition (DSC), or the Dragon NaturallySpeaking SDK Server Edition (DSS). In addition, any encrypted **.DRA** and **.enwv** files automatically created by Dragon, cannot be opened in DragonPad.

Notes:

- Dragon Medical does not encrypt .DRA files explicitly saved by a user. For example, if a user saves recorded dictation when saving a document (for example, in Word, WordPerfect, or DragonPad), these saved **.DRA** files are unencrypted. The user who created these files has the responsibility of saving these files in a secure location.
- Nuance does not guarantee that the file encryption provided in Dragon will ensure total HIPAA compliance. Other security measures are required for full compliance.

Security Considerations

As long as other adequate security protections are in place to protect patient data, you can avoid saving excess patient data by choosing to:

1. Turn off encryption of patient data (not recommended)
2. Turn off creation of **.DRA** files and set options to conserve disk space, resulting in fewer saved files
3. Turn off creation of unencrypted **.nwv** files

Turning on/off encryption of patient data

It is possible to turn off the encryption of these background speech recognition files by un-checking the *Encrypt Patient Health Information* check box in the Miscellaneous tab of the Administrative Settings Dialogue.

Nuance can not guarantee HIPAA compliance when this feature is turned off.

For more information, see the Miscellaneous tab of the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box.

Turning on/off creation of .dra patient data files

You can choose to turn off creation of the **.DRA** files containing patient data to further protect the patient's privacy when other security measure are in place, by:

- Turning off data collection, which sends data to Nuance for future product improvements. The check box to enable/disable data collection is on the ***Scheduled Tasks*** tab of the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box. For more information, see:
  - About Data Collection and Other Scheduled Tasks

and

- Checking settings to conserve disk space, which automatically stops creating files that require large amounts of storage space:
  i. On the DragonBar, select ***Tools*** > ***Options*** and click the ***Data*** tab.
  ii. Check the *Conserve disk space required by user profiles (for portability)* option. For more information on the ***Data*** tab of the ***Options*** dialog box, refer to the main Dragon Help file's topic on the ***Data*** tab in the ***Options*** dialog box.

Turning on/off creation of unencrypted text correction .nwv archive files

To further ensure privacy, any user can turn of creation of archive files that might contain patient data:

1. On the DragonBar, select ***Tools*** > ***Options*** and click the ***Data*** tab.
2. Uncheck the *Store correction in archive* option. For more information on the ***Data*** tab of the ***Options*** dialog box, refer to the main Dragon Help file's topic on the ***Data*** tab in the ***Options*** dialog box.

Chapter 4: Upgrading Dragon

This section contains information on how to upgrade Dragon and Roaming User Profiles, as well as how to upgrade third-party Vocabularies. You can update Dragon 9.x and 10.x User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater .

Note: You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported.

Upgrading Dragon **74**

Installing on or Upgrading to Windows Vista and Windows 7 ..... **76**

Upgrading multiple User Profiles **77**

Preparing to upgrade Roaming User Profiles **83**

Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles **86**

Upgrading end-user systems **91**

Upgrading multiple User Profiles **93**

Upgrading Dragon

An administrator performs the following steps to upgrade a User Profile from Dragon 9.x or 10.x to Dragon 11 or greater :

- Prepare to upgrade:
  - Based on the version of Dragon being upgraded from, determine how to proceed (see What you should know before upgrading from a previous version)
  - If upgrading to Windows Vista, see Installing on or Upgrading to Windows Vista
- Carry out one of these procedures:
  - Upgrade multiple User Profiles (see Upgrading multiple User Profiles)
  - Upgrade Roaming User Profiles (see Upgrading Roaming User Profiles)
  - Upgrade User Profiles with custom or customized vocabularies (see Upgrading User profiles with Custom and Customized Vocabularies)

Administrators can work with the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard*** (see Upgrading multiple User Profiles)

See "Upgrading User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater " in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

Note: You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported.

Note: If upgrading from Dragon version 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11 or greater , version 8.x or earlier custom words and commands can be re-used in Dragon 11 or greater :

1. In Dragon 8.x or earlier, export the custom words and commands
2. In Dragon 11 or greater , create a new User Profile
3. In Dragon 11 or greater , import the custom words and commands

See the Dragon Help for information on exporting and importing custom words and commands.

What you should know before upgrading from a previous version

An administrator can upgrade to Dragon 11 or greater from *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* or *Dragon Medical* Versions 9.x or 10.x. An administrator upgrades to Dragon 11 or greater by following the installation instructions for Dragon 11 or greater , but should first be sure to:

- Uninstall the previous version, when it is required for the version the administrator is upgrading from.
- Retain existing User Profiles, to be updated after the installation completes.
- Check that it is possible to upgrade from the existing edition to the edition the administrator is installing.

Note: You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported.

See "Upgrading User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater " in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

Upgrading from Dragon 9.x

The Dragon 11 or greater installation installs in the Dragon 9.x directories and overwrites the files in those directories.

Upgrading from Dragon 10.x

Uninstall Dragon version 10.x before installing Dragon 11 or greater .

Upgrading from Dragon 11.0

To install Dragon 11.5, you must first have Dragon 11.0 installed on the computer.

Edition considerations

An administrator must upgrade to the same edition or greater and to the same language.

For example, if upgrading from Version 9.1 German/English to Dragon 11 or greater English only, the Dragon 9.1 German User Profiles are not upgraded. Upgrading to Dragon German/English upgrades both German and English User Profiles. After upgrading, an administrator can install other Dragon languages.

Notes:

- If a user is using Dragon version 8.x or earlier, they can re-use custom words and commands in Dragon 11 or greater :

  1. In Dragon 8.x or earlier, export the custom words and commands
  2. In Dragon 11 or greater , create a new User Profile
  3. In Dragon 11 or greater , import the custom words and commands

  See the Dragon Help for information on exporting and importing custom words and commands.

- When an administrator installs Dragon 11 or greater , Dragon installs using the primary language for the product. An administrator cannot install Dragon using a language that is different than the primary language. For example, if an administrator installs Dragon 11 or greater Professional, English version, Dragon installs using the English language. If the administrator attempts to use the `/l` option with setup.exe to install Dragon 11 or greater using a non-primary language, the installation process uses the primary language for that edition of Dragon and ignores the `/l` option.

Installing on or Upgrading to Windows Vista and Windows 7

Dragon NaturallySpeaking and *Dragon Medical* Versions 9.5 and higher are compatible with all editions of Windows Vista and Windows 7. Dragon runs on 32-bit and 64-bit computers for these operating systems.

Earlier versions of *Dragon* (version 8.x, 9.0, 9.1) will not install or run on Windows Vista or Windows 7.

Note: You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11 or greater . Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11 or greater is not supported.

Upgrade considerations

If you upgrade a computer from a previous version of Windows to Windows Vista or Windows 7, and that computer has Version 8.x, 9.0, or 9.1 of *Dragon* installed, that version of *Dragon* will not work after upgrading to Windows Vista or Windows 7.

All your User Profiles from these previous versions remain intact and can be upgraded when you install Dragon 11 or greater .

See "Upgrading User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater " in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

Roaming User Profiles in an MSI Installation on Vista or Windows 7

For more on carrying out an MSI installation on Windows Vista or Windows 7, see Modifying Roaming User Profile, Miscellaneous, Schedule Settings in the INI File.

Upgrading multiple User Profiles

You use the User Profile Upgrade Wizard to upgrade a Dragon 9.x or 10.x User Profile to Dragon 11 or greater . You do not need to upgrade Dragon 11 User Profiles to Dragon 11.5. There are two ways you can start the User Profile Upgrade Wizard:

- In the Open User profile dialog box, select a User Profile to upgrade. Dragon displays a dialog that gives you the option of upgrading the User Profile now (by pressing **OK**) or upgrading the User Profile later (by pressing **Cancel**). If the user selects **OK**. Dragon displays the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard***.
- In the Start menu, select ***Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking Tools*** > ***Upgrade User Profiles***. Dragon displays the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard***.

Using the User Profile Upgrade Wizard

The User Profile Upgrade Wizard guides you through the process of upgrading User Profiles from *Dragon* 9.x and 10.x.

The wizard cannot upgrade User Profiles created by versions of *Dragon* prior to Dragon 9.

User Profile Upgrade Wizard: Select the profile(s) to upgrade

On the **Select the profile(s) to upgrade** page, you see these elements:

User profiles to upgrade

This screen displays the location and name of all the User Profiles that the wizard will upgrade. Modify the list of User Profiles to include all User Profiles that you want to upgrade. The wizard starts by including all the User Profiles in the current folder as candidates to upgrade. You add User Profiles to the list by clicking the ***Browse to add a profile*** button and browsing for additional User Profiles in other locations. You remove User Profiles from the list by selecting them and clicking the ***Remove from list*** button. Once the list of User Profiles contains the profiles you want to upgrade, click ***Next***.

> **Note:** If you have roaming users in your network, see Upgrading Roaming User Profiles: Overview

Current Location

The location of the User Profiles to upgrade.

User Profile

Displays the names of all the User Profiles to upgrade.

Total profiles to be upgraded

Displays the total number of User Profiles to upgrade.

Browse to add a profile

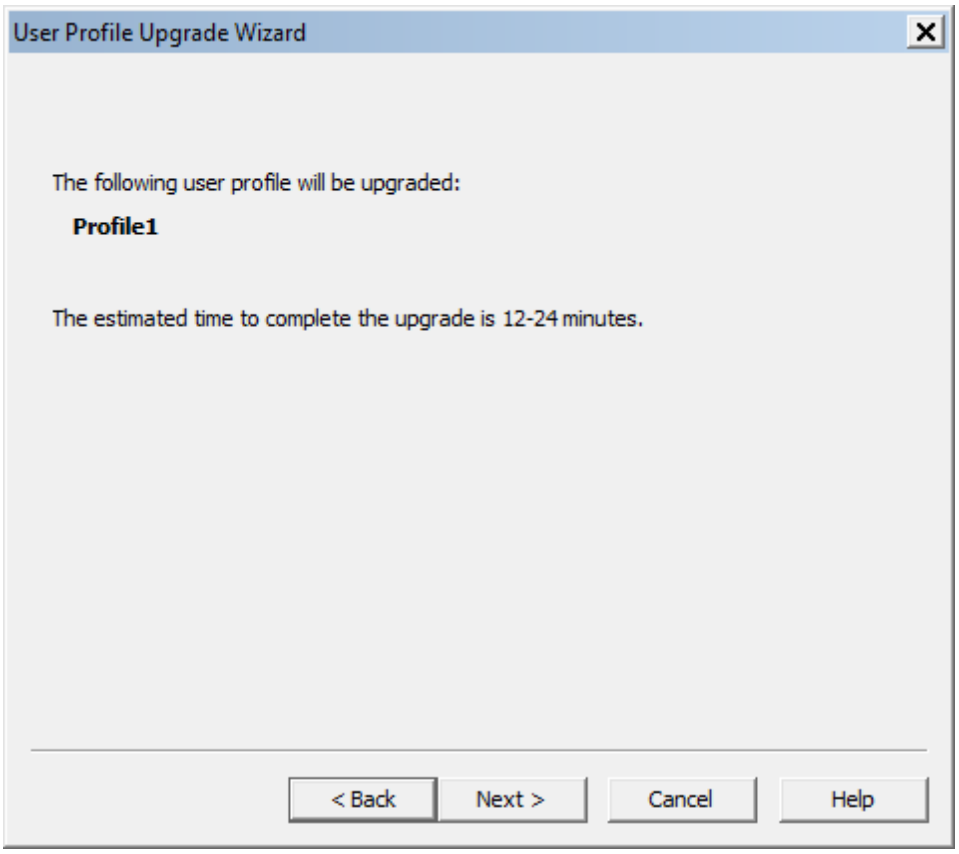
Opens a ***Browse for Folder*** window that you use to locate additional User Profiles for the wizard to upgrade.

Remove from list

Deletes the User Profile you select from the User Profile Upgrade Wizard.

Once you have made a selection, click ***Next***.

If you choose to upgrade only one User Profile, the wizard displays the number of minutes the upgrade requires to complete.



If you upgrade a UK User Profile, the wizard displays a page that lets you select a region for the profile.

User Profile Upgrade Wizard: Choose where to store the upgraded profile(s)

As the User Profile Upgrade Wizard updates a User Profile to Dragon 11 or greater , the wizard can move a copy of the upgraded User Profile to another location without modifying the old profile. This allows you to use the original profile if you need to and makes the profile compatible with operating systems like Windows XP that store all user data in the Documents and Settings folder.

Location for upgraded profile(s)

Click the ***Browse*** button or select a new destination from the list if you want to choose a destination other than the suggested destination.

Advanced

Click the ***Advanced*** button to open the **Advanced Options** dialog box where you can change how the wizard upgrades the User Profile.

User Profile Upgrade Wizard: Advanced Options

The ***Advanced Options*** dialog box lets you make finer adjustments to how the wizard upgrades User Profiles.

User profiles to

The ***User profiles to*** list box provides information about the location, vocabulary, and the acoustic model for each profile you plan to update.

Attribute	Name	Old Value	New Value
Location	The name of the User Profile.	The current location of the User Profile.	The location where Dragon will place the updated User Profile.
Vocabulary	The name of the current vocabulary for the User Profile.	The name of the base vocabulary for the current vocabulary.	The name of the new base vocabulary for the current vocabulary.
Acoustic model	The name of the audio input device for the User Profile.	The name of the current language/voice model for the User Profile.	The name of the new language/voice model for the User Profile.

Setting a location for an upgraded User Profile

When you click on the ***Location*** line in the ***User profiles to*** list box, Dragon enables the ***New Location*** text box. The text box displays the location that the wizard recommends or that you chose on the ***Choose where to store the upgraded profile(s)*** page. You can click **Browse** and choose a new location.

Setting a new base vocabulary for a User Profile

When you click on the ***Vocabulary*** line in the ***User profiles to*** list box, Dragon enables the ***New Base Vocabulary*** text box. The text box displays the current vocabulary of the User Profile or the one that the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard*** assigns to the upgraded User Profile if Dragon does not support the old vocabulary. If Dragon supports the current vocabulary, the message *<Unable to upgrade>* appears.

You can select a new base vocabulary from the drop-down list.

Setting a new acoustic model for a User Profile

When you click on an ***Acoustic model*** line in the ***User profiles to*** list box, Dragon displays the New Acoustic Model text box. The text box displays the current language (such as US English), language model, and accent of the User Profile. You can choose a new acoustic model from the drop-down list.

After you modify the information for each User Profile in the list box, click ***OK*** to return to the wizard, and click ***Next*** to proceed.

User Profile Upgrade Wizard: Begin profile upgrading

On the ***Begin profile upgrading*** page, click ***Begin upgrading*** to start the upgrade process. The wizard requires approximately 12 to 24 minutes to upgrade each User Profile.When the process is complete, click ***Finish***.

If the ***User Profile Upgrade*** wizard starts automatically after you upgrade and start Dragon, the ***Open User Profile*** window opens and displays a list of the User Profiles you can choose from to begin dictation.

Upgrading Roaming User Profiles: Overview

This section describes how to upgrade Roaming User Profiles from *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* or *Dragon Medical* 9.x or 10.x to Dragon 11 or greater .

When you use the Roaming feature, each *Dragon* User Profile has a master Roaming User Profile that can be opened from multiple networked computers where *Dragon* is installed. These master Roaming User Profiles are stored on a network location made accessible to your *Dragon* users.

When a master Roaming User Profile is opened from that central network location, *Dragon* transfers a copy of that profile to the Local Roaming User Profile on the local computer.

Since the Local Roaming User Profile is a copy of the User Profile data taken from the master Roaming User Profile, you cannot directly upgrade the Local Roaming User Profile when you upgrade the local *Dragon* installation from Dragon 9.x or 10.x to Dragon 11 or greater .

Notes:

- You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported.
- If upgrading from Dragon version 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11 or greater , version 8.x or earlier custom words and commands can be re-used in Dragon 11 or greater . See the Dragon Help for information on exporting and importing custom words and commands.
  i. In Dragon 8.x or earlier, export the custom words and commands
  ii. In Dragon 11 or greater , create a new User Profile
  iii. In Dragon 11 or greater , import the custom words and commands
- Upgrading a set of Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater leaves the Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles unchanged and intact. This allows

the users in your network to run Dragon 9.x or 10.x while you plan your upgrade.

- Plan to upgrade the master Roaming User Profiles at a time when they are not being opened by end users, for example during the night or on a weekend.
- Even though the Dragon 11 or greater *User Profile Upgrade Wizard* supports both mapped drives and UNC paths, Nuance strongly recommends that you upgrade your Master Roaming User Profiles on a drive on a computer where Dragon 11 or greater is locally installed. Nuance does not recommend that you upgrade your Master Roaming User Profiles across a network to either a mapped drive or UNC path; upgrading over a network will take an undetermined length of time. In addition, the *User Profile Upgrade Wizard* does not support upgrading User Profiles over an HTTP connection.

Step 1: Preparing to upgrade Roaming User Profiles

To upgrade your Master Roaming User Profiles from a previous version of Dragon, Nuance recommends that you install Dragon 11 or greater directly on the network computer where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located and upgrade those Master Roaming User Profiles directly to Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles.

If you are unable to install Dragon where your Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located, Nuance recommends that you:

1. Install Dragon 11 or greater on a separate computer where you will perform the upgrades.
2. Copy the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles from their network location to the computer where Dragon 11 or greater is installed.
3. Upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles on the computer where Dragon 11 or greater is installed.
4. Copy the upgraded Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles to a network accessible directory on the original network location.

For more information, see Preparing to upgrade Roaming User Profiles.

Step 2: Upgrading the User Profiles

As administrator you must separately upgrade the master Roaming User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater using the Dragon 11 or greater ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard***.

After you upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles, you can then proceed to upgrade end-user systems that deploy the Roaming feature.

For more information, see Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles

Step 3: Upgrade the end-user systems

After you have upgraded the master Roaming User Profiles, you can then proceed to upgrade end-user systems that deploy the Roaming feature.

Note: You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported.

For more information:

See Upgrading end-user systems.

See "Upgrading User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater " in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

Preparing to upgrade Roaming User Profiles

Step 1: Install Dragon 11 or greater on the computer where you upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles

Nuance recommends that administrators install Dragon 11 or greater on the computer where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located. If that is not possible, Nuance recommends that administrators install Dragon 11 or greater on a separate computer where they will perform the upgrades.

For more information on installing, see Installing Dragon on a single computer.

Notes:

- If during the installation or upgrade, you see the ***Upgrade existing speech files to work with this installation*** prompt, be sure to leave this option unchecked. You can manually running the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard*** in a later step.
- If you are unable to install Dragon where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located, Nuance recommends that you install Dragon 11 or greater on a separate computer where you perform the upgrades. For more information, see Upgrading Roaming User Profiles: Overview.
- You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported
- If upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11 or greater , version 8.x or earlier custom words and commands can be re-used in Dragon 11 or greater . See the Dragon Help for information on exporting and importing custom words and commands:
  i. In Dragon 8.x or earlier, export the custom words and commands
  ii. In Dragon 11 or greater , create a new User Profile.
  iii. In Dragon 11 or greater , import the custom words and commands

Step 2: On the Dragon 9.x or 10.x end-user systems that use the Roaming feature

On the end-user systems where the users dictate using the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Roaming feature, save and close any open User Profiles on each *Dragon* 9.x or 10.x system that uses the Roaming feature.

Note: If there is no time when all the Roaming User Profiles are not in use (for example, in a hospital where some physicians use Dragon during a night shift), administrators can upgrade different groups of Roaming User Profiles at different times.

Step 3: On the central network storage location for the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles

1. (Optional) Back up the master Roaming User Profiles to a separate location, either by using any system backup utility that is implemented at your facility or by using the Dragon The ***Manage User Profiles*** *dialog.*

Note: You do not need to back up the Roaming User Profiles because the upgrade retains the Dragon 9.x or 10.x User Profiles in a directory that is separate from the Dragon 11 or greater User Profiles.

2. Create a new directory on the shared network drive to store the upgraded Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles. Although you can store the upgraded User Profiles in the same location as the current User Profiles — this would make two versions of each User Profile visible to the end user and lead to confusion — Nuance recommend creating a location that is different from the location that stores the current (Dragon 9.x or 10.x) User Profiles.

Step 4: Copy the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles to the Dragon 11 or greater client computer

If you install Dragon 11 or greater on the computer where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located, then proceed to Step 5 below.

If Dragon 11 or greater is not installed on the computer where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located, perform the following steps on the Dragon 11 or greater client computer:

1. Create a directory to store all the Master Roaming User Profiles you plan to upgrade.
2. Copy the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles from the network location to the directory.

Step 5: On the administrator system where you plan to upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles

1. Start *Dragon* and make sure the Roaming feature is off.

   To turn off the Roaming feature:

   i. Close any open User Profiles.

   ii. Click ***Administrative Settings*** on the ***DragonBar Tools*** menu. This action displays the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box.

   iii. On the ***Roaming*** tab, make sure ***Enable*** is not selected.

2. Close Dragon.
3. Follow the instructions in the next section, Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles.

See "Upgrading User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater " in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles

You must use the User Profile Upgrade Wizard to upgrade Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater .

Before you proceed with the tasks in this topic, complete the procedure in Preparing to upgrade Roaming User Profiles.

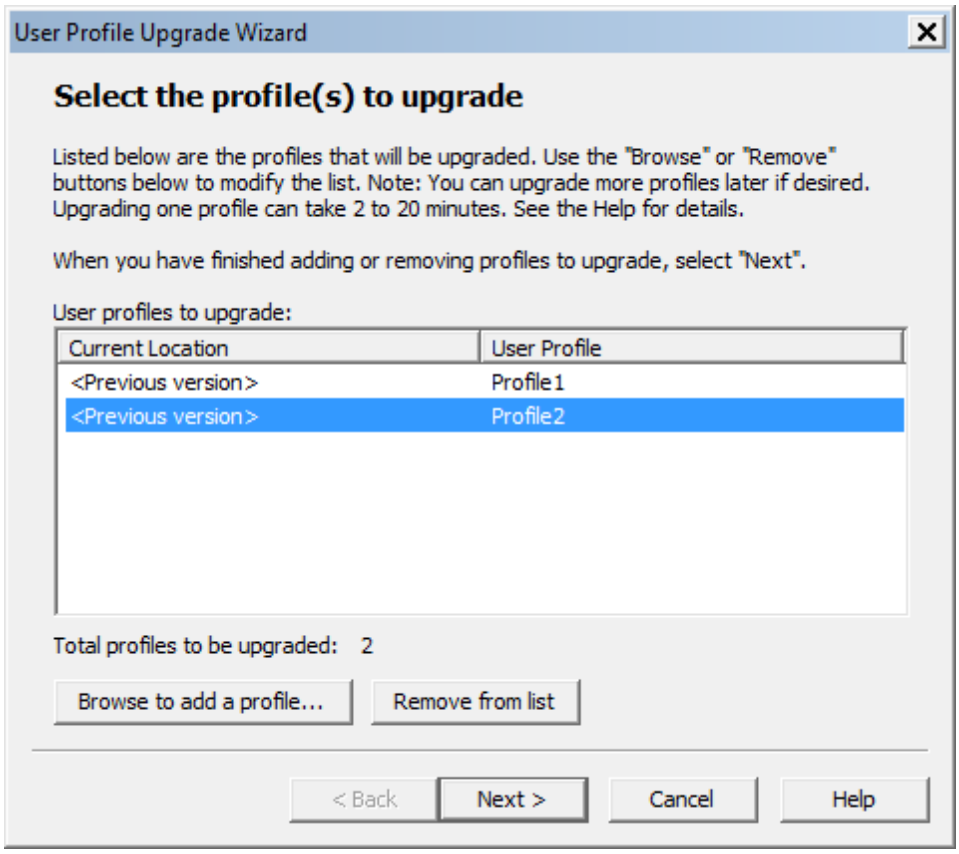
After you upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles and optionally copy them back to their network location, you can proceed to upgrade your end-user systems that use the Roaming feature. For more information, see Upgrading end-user systems.

You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported

Step 1: Upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles

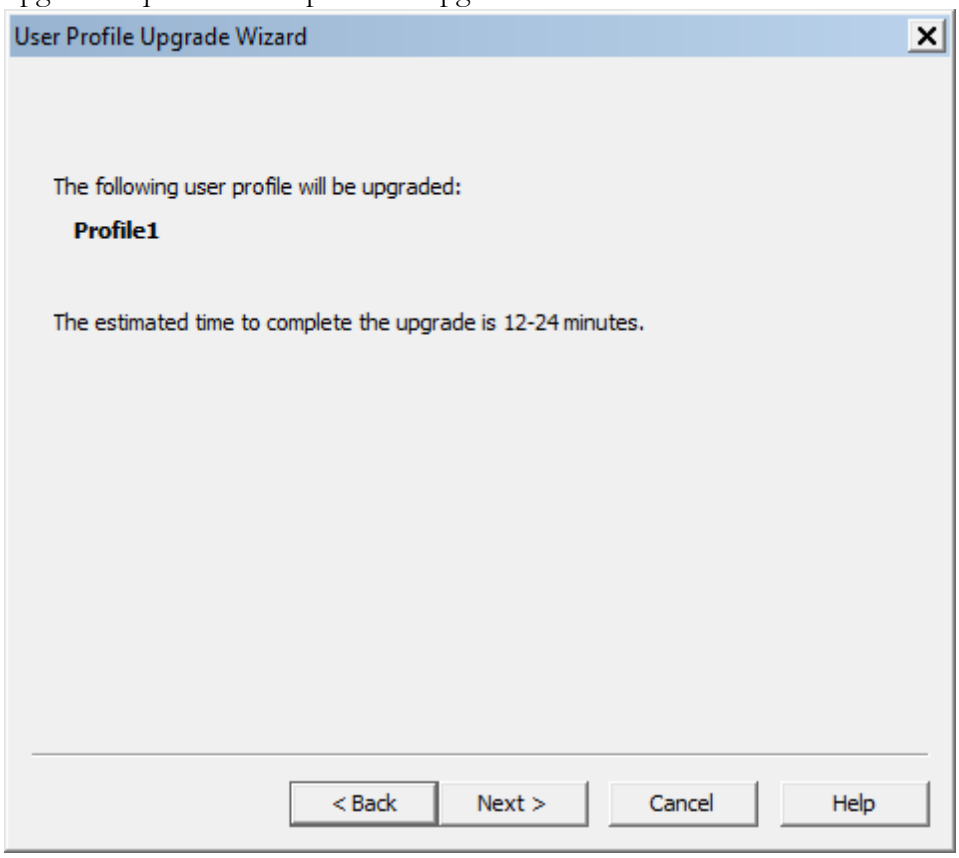
On the computer with the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming files and where Dragon 11 or greater is installed:

1. Select ***Start*** > ***Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking Tools*** > ***Upgrade User Profiles***.
2. On the **Select the profile(s) to upgrade** page, click **Browse to add a profile**... to select the location of the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles. The **Select the profile(s) to upgrade** page now displays a list of User Profiles in the selected directory:



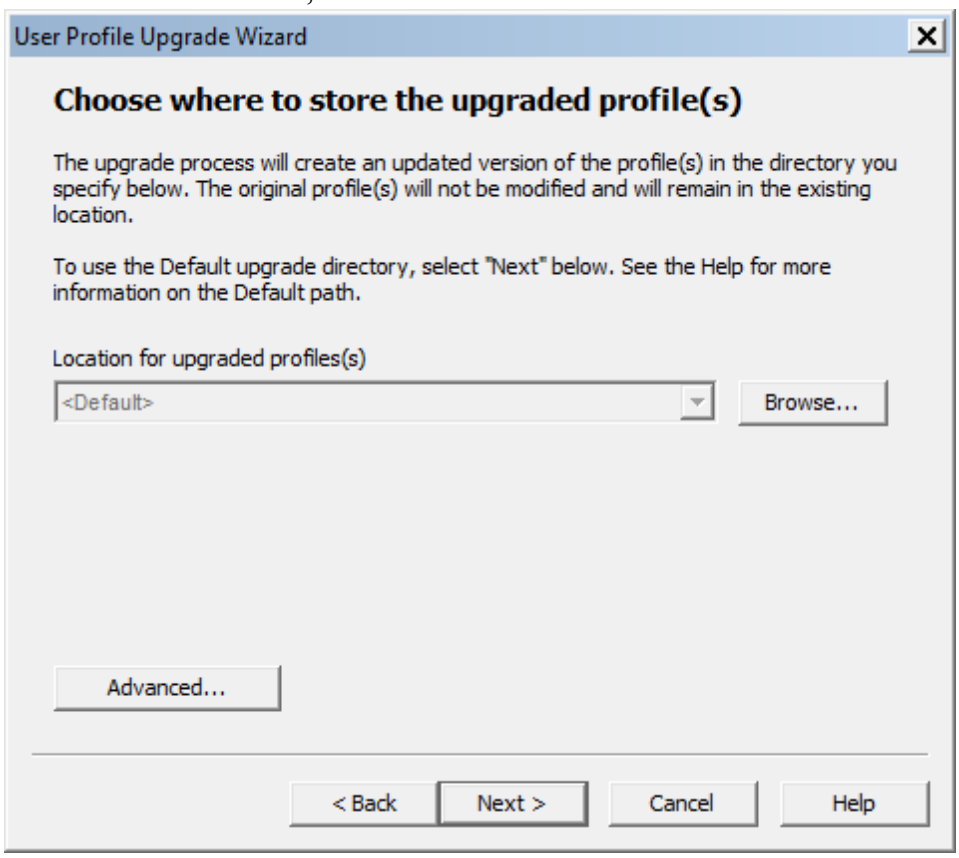
Continue to add User Profiles from other local locations or use the **Remove from list** button to remove specific User Profiles. Click **Next** to continue.

3. If you choose to upgrade only one User Profile, the wizard displays the number of minutes the upgrade requires to complete the upgrade.



4. If you upgrade a UK User Profile, the wizard displays a page that lets you select a region for the profile.
5. On the **Choose where to store the upgraded profile(s)** page, in the **Location for upgraded profile(s)** text box, choose the local location you previously created to contain the upgraded Dragon 11 or greater master Roaming User Profiles. If a location is not visible, click **Browse**,

find the correct location, and click **Next**.



6. The **Begin profile upgrading** page displays the number of User Profiles that the wizard is prepared to upgrade.
   Click **Begin upgrading** to start the upgrade process. The upgrade process can take 2-3 minutes or more per User Profile, depending on the speed of the computer system and the speed of the network. Click **Stop** at any time to interrupt this process. The upgrade process creates new master Roaming User Profiles in the destination you selected.
7. Click ***Finish*** to complete the upgrading process and exit the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard***.

The **User Profile Upgrade Wizard** names each Dragon 11 or greater master Roaming User Profile as follows: `<name> (v11)`. For example, Dragon copies and upgrades a Dragon 10.x Master Roaming User Profile with a filename of *roaminguser1* to *roaminguser1 (v11)*. Dragon does not change the name of the Dragon 10.x Master Roaming User Profile.

Do no store the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Roaming User Profiles in the same directory as the upgraded Dragon 11 or greater Roaming User Profiles. The ***Open User Profile*** dialog box displays all the Dragon 9.x and 10.x and 11.x profiles. A Dragon user may not be sure of the profile they should select for dictation.

Step 2: Clean up the Dragon 9.x or 10.x locations for master Roaming User Profiles (optional)

When the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard*** modifies the Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles, it create a copy of the upgraded User Profile and does not change the original profiles. This ensures the original profiles are available in case someone requires them.

An administrator can optionally rename or remove the Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles through the ***Manage User Profiles*** dialog box.

Step 3: Copy the Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles to their network location (Optional)

If you were unable to install Dragon 11 or greater where you store the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles, and you instead copy them to a different computer with Dragon 11 or greater installed, you must now copy the Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles back to the new network directory. This is the directory you created on their original network location.

You can skip this step if you installed Dragon 11 or greater on the computer where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located and you upgraded those Master Roaming User Profiles directly to Dragon 11 or greater .

Step 4: Upgrade end-user systems to Dragon 11 or greater

After you upgrade the master Roaming User Profiles, you can upgrade the end-user systems that use the Roaming feature.

You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported.

For more information, see Upgrading end-user systems.

Upgrading end-user systems

After you upgrade the master Roaming User Profiles, you can upgrade the end-user systems that use the Roaming feature.

Before proceeding with this section, make sure you perform the procedure in Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles.

Note: You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported.

Step 1: Upgrade Dragon 9.x or 10.x systems that use the Roaming feature

Since the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard*** does not change or move the Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles, your Dragon 9.x or 10.x systems can continue to use the Roaming feature until you upgrade to Dragon 11 or greater .

To upgrade a Dragon 9.x or 10.x system to Dragon 11 or greater , follow the installation instructions under Installing Dragon on a single computer .

Notes:

- When prompted, choose to remove the Dragon 9.x or 10.x *Dragon* installation. If you choose not to remove the previous installation, you cannot continue to upgrade. You do not need to uninstall Dragon 11 to upgrade to Dragon 11.5.

Step 2: Enable the Roaming feature on the Dragon systems

When you upgrade to Dragon 11 or greater , the Roaming feature is off by default.

To turn on the Roaming feature, perform the following steps on each Dragon 11 or greater client computer.:

1. Start *Dragon*.
2. Close all User Profiles.
3. Click ***Administrative Settings*** on the ***DragonBar Tools*** menu. This displays the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box.
4. On the ***Roaming*** tab, select ***Enable***.
5. The ***Network Directories*** list displays the network location of the Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles.

   If you created a new network directory for the Dragon 11 or greater master Roaming User Profiles, you can either click the ***Add*** button to add the new network location or select a listed directory and then click ***Edit*** to change the path to the new location. When you have finished, click ***OK*** to close the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box. You should also remove any Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profile directories that are not in use.

6. Select ***Profile*** > ***Open User Profile*** on the ***DragonBar***. This action displays the ***Open User Profile*** dialog box. If you allow users to select both non-roaming local and Roaming User Profiles, make sure they select the correct location (the Dragon 11 or greater Roaming User Profile location) from the ***Location of user profile*** field.
7. Select a User Profile and click ***Open***.

Note: If you did not upgrade the Roaming User Profiles and store them in the new master Roaming User Profile directory, when you click ***Open***, the ***User profile needs to be upgraded*** dialog box appears. Since you cannot upgrade Roaming User Profiles locally, you should click ***Cancel*** and return to Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles. If you click **OK** instead of **Cancel**, you receive a message stating **You cannot upgrade a roaming user** because you cannot upgrade Roaming User Profiles on a workstation where the Roaming feature is on.

Upgrading multiple User Profiles

You use the User Profile Upgrade Wizard to upgrade a Dragon 9.x or 10.x User Profile to Dragon 11 or greater . You do not need to upgrade Dragon 11 User Profiles to Dragon 11.5. There are two ways you can start the User Profile Upgrade Wizard:

- In the Open User profile dialog box, select a User Profile to upgrade. Dragon displays a dialog that gives you the option of upgrading the User Profile now (by pressing **OK**) or upgrading the User Profile later (by pressing **Cancel**). If the user selects **OK**. Dragon displays the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard***.
- In the Start menu, select ***Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking Tools*** > ***Upgrade User Profiles***. Dragon displays the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard***.

Using the User Profile Upgrade Wizard

The User Profile Upgrade Wizard guides you through the process of upgrading User Profiles from *Dragon* 9.x and 10.x.

The wizard cannot upgrade User Profiles created by versions of *Dragon* prior to Dragon 9.

User Profile Upgrade Wizard: Select the profile(s) to upgrade

On the **Select the profile(s) to upgrade** page, you see these elements:

User profiles to upgrade

This screen displays the location and name of all the User Profiles that the wizard will upgrade. Modify the list of User Profiles to include all User Profiles that you want to upgrade. The wizard starts by including all the User Profiles in the current folder as candidates to upgrade. You add User Profiles to the list by clicking the ***Browse to add a profile*** button and browsing for additional User Profiles in other locations. You remove User Profiles from the list by selecting them and clicking the ***Remove from list*** button. Once the list of User Profiles contains the profiles you want to upgrade, click ***Next***.

> **Note:** If you have roaming users in your network, see Upgrading Roaming User Profiles: Overview

Current Location

The location of the User Profiles to upgrade.

User Profile

Displays the names of all the User Profiles to upgrade.

Total profiles to be upgraded

Displays the total number of User Profiles to upgrade.

Browse to add a profile

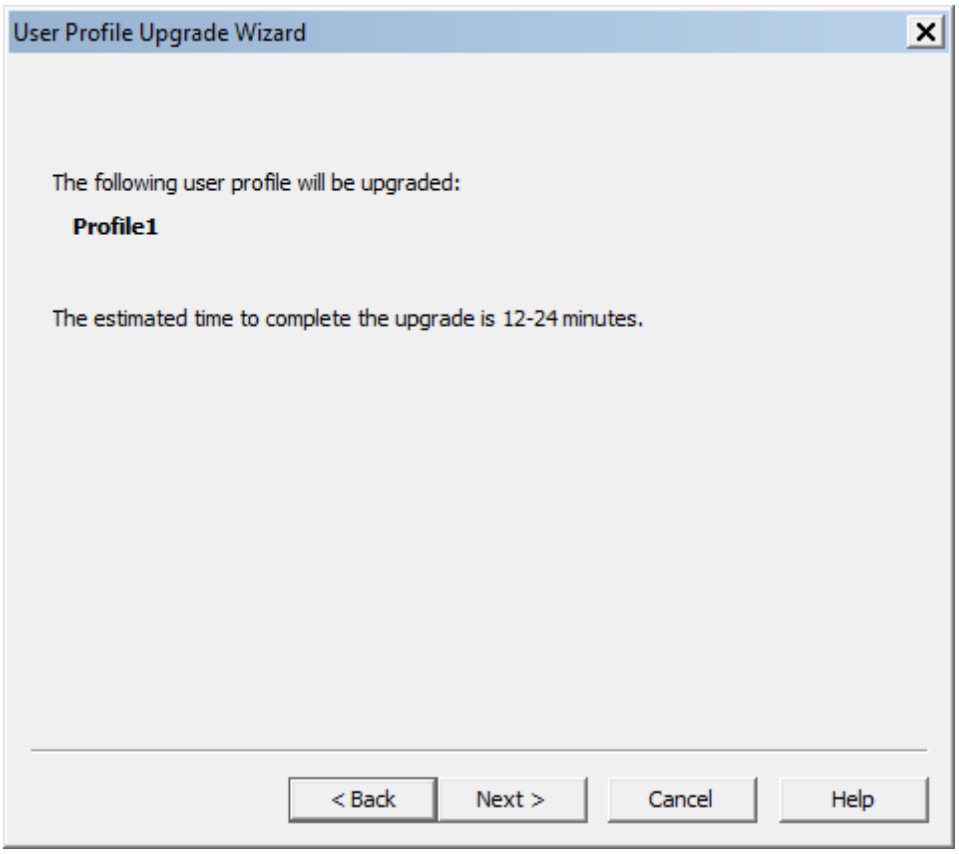
Opens a ***Browse for Folder*** window that you use to locate additional User Profiles for the wizard to upgrade.

Remove from list

Deletes the User Profile you select from the User Profile Upgrade Wizard.

Once you have made a selection, click ***Next***.

If you choose to upgrade only one User Profile, the wizard displays the number of minutes the upgrade requires to complete.



If you upgrade a UK User Profile, the wizard displays a page that lets you select a region for the profile.

User Profile Upgrade Wizard: Choose where to store the upgraded profile(s)

As the User Profile Upgrade Wizard updates a User Profile to Dragon 11 or greater , the wizard can move a copy of the upgraded User Profile to another location without modifying the old profile. This allows you to use the original profile if you need to and makes the profile compatible with operating systems like Windows XP that store all user data in the Documents and Settings folder.

Location for upgraded profile(s)

Click the ***Browse*** button or select a new destination from the list if you want to choose a destination other than the suggested destination.

Advanced

Click the ***Advanced*** button to open the **Advanced Options** dialog box where you can change how the wizard upgrades the User Profile.

User Profile Upgrade Wizard: Advanced Options

The ***Advanced Options*** dialog box lets you make finer adjustments to how the wizard upgrades User Profiles.

User profiles to

The ***User profiles to*** list box provides information about the location, vocabulary, and the acoustic model for each profile you plan to update.

Attribute	Name	Old Value	New Value
Location	The name of the User Profile.	The current location of the User Profile.	The location where Dragon will place the updated User Profile.
Vocabulary	The name of the current vocabulary for the User Profile.	The name of the base vocabulary for the current vocabulary.	The name of the new base vocabulary for the current vocabulary.
Acoustic model	The name of the audio input device for the User Profile.	The name of the current language/voice model for the User Profile.	The name of the new language/voice model for the User Profile.

Setting a location for an upgraded User Profile

When you click on the ***Location*** line in the ***User profiles to*** list box, Dragon enables the ***New Location*** text box. The text box displays the location that the wizard recommends or that you chose on the ***Choose where to store the upgraded profile(s)*** page. You can click **Browse** and choose a new location.

Setting a new base vocabulary for a User Profile

When you click on the ***Vocabulary*** line in the ***User profiles to*** list box, Dragon enables the ***New Base Vocabulary*** text box. The text box displays the current vocabulary of the User Profile or the one that the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard*** assigns to the upgraded User Profile if Dragon does not support the old vocabulary. If Dragon supports the current vocabulary, the message *<Unable to upgrade>* appears.

You can select a new base vocabulary from the drop-down list.

Setting a new acoustic model for a User Profile

When you click on an ***Acoustic model*** line in the ***User profiles to*** list box, Dragon displays the New Acoustic Model text box. The text box displays the current language (such as US English), language model, and accent of the User Profile. You can choose a new acoustic model from the drop-down list.

After you modify the information for each User Profile in the list box, click ***OK*** to return to the wizard, and click ***Next*** to proceed.

User Profile Upgrade Wizard: Begin profile upgrading

On the ***Begin profile upgrading*** page, click ***Begin upgrading*** to start the upgrade process. The wizard requires approximately 12 to 24 minutes to upgrade each User Profile.When the process is complete, click ***Finish***.

If the ***User Profile Upgrade*** wizard starts automatically after you upgrade and start Dragon, the ***Open User Profile*** window opens and displays a list of the User Profiles you can choose from to begin dictation.

Upgrading User Profiles with Vocabularies Created by Third Parties

Vocabularies Created by a Third Party (other than by Nuance)

> **Note:** Any installation can use vocabularies that are not provided by Nuance, but created by a third party specifically for a particular installation.

Using a custom vocabulary from Dragon Medical 10.x or earlier with Dragon Medical 11 or greater

You cannot use a custom vocabulary created in Dragon Medical 10.x or earlier with Dragon Medical 11 or greater . You must recreate the custom vocabulary in Dragon Medical 11 or greater . If you have a custom vocabulary from a Nuance VAR, you should contact the VAR to obtain a new version of the vocabulary.

Upgrading User profiles with third party vocabularies

When you upgrade a User Profile whose base vocabulary was created by a third party, all custom words and other changes to that vocabulary will be maintained but the vocabulary's base type will be changed. For example, Dragon 9.x or 10.x User Profiles that use the ***US English | Large | Nuance*** vocabulary with a topic ID of ***9005*** are upgraded to use the ***General—Large*** vocabulary; that upgraded user profile's vocabulary also contains all customizations in the Dragon 9.x or 10.x vocabulary.

See "Upgrading User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater " in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

Once the User Profile is upgraded, you can continue to modify the vocabulary using the Voctool.

To further modify and re-distribute customizations to vocabularies created by third parties, you can follow the steps outlined below on your Dragon 11 or greater User Profiles.

Step 1: Export custom words added to the custom vocabulary

If you added any additional custom words to the vocabulary created by a third party, you must first export those words. To export custom words:

- On the ***DragonBar*** menu, select ***Vocabulary*** > ***Export custom word and phrase list***. This action displays the ***Export Custom Words*** dialog box.
- Enter the path and name of the file containing the custom words to add to the vocabulary that you want to create, or use ***Save*** in list to find a location for the file you want to create.

Step 2: Upgrade a User Profile that uses a custom vocabulary

To upgrade Dragon 9.x or 10.x User Profiles with a third party vocabulary:

1. Run the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard***. To run the wizard, select ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking Tools*** > ***Upgrade User Profiles***.
2. In the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard***, select a Dragon 9.x or 10.x User Profile that uses a vocabulary from a third party.
3. Click ***Next*** and follow the on-screen prompts.

The ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard*** displays the original vocabulary deployed to create the User Profile and lets you choose a Dragon 11 or greater base vocabulary that the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard*** should assign to the upgraded User Profile.

Step 3: Import custom words to the upgraded User Profile

If you exported words in Step 1, you now must import those words. To import a word list:

1. On the ***DragonBar***, click ***Vocabulary*** > ***Import list of words or phrases***. This displays the ***Add Words*** from ***Word Lists*** wizard.
2. Click ***Next*** to add the file you created in Step 1.

Step 4: Export the customized vocabulary

You can share vocabularies among different User Profiles by first exporting a vocabulary from one User Profile and then importing it to a new User Profile. Use the following procedure to export a vocabulary. To export a vocabulary:

1. Create a folder in which to save the exported vocabulary files.
2. Open the upgraded Dragon 9.x or 10.x User Profile that uses the custom vocabulary.
3. On the ***DragonBar***, select ***Vocabulary*** > ***Manage Vocabularies*** or say **"Manage Vocabularies."**
4. In the ***Manage Vocabularies*** dialog box, select the vocabulary you want to export and then export it.
5. Locate and open the target folder, enter a name for the exported vocabulary in the ***File Name*** box, and then save it.
6. In the ***Manage Vocabularies*** dialog box, click or say ***"Close"*** to save and close it.

Note: Exporting a vocabulary creates a copy of the four files that make up the vocabulary in the new location. You can access these files via the ***Data Distribution Tool*** or the ***nsadmin*** tool to create new custom base vocabularies.

Step 5: Use nsadmin or the Data Distribution tool to copy the vocabulary you export

Using the ***nsadmin*** command line or the ***Data Distribution Tool***, you can import the vocabulary you created in Step 2 as a base vocabulary on any *Dragon* installation.

Once you add a base vocabulary to a *Dragon* installation, you can then use the new vocabulary to create new User Profiles or add a new vocabulary to an existing User Profile.

When you run ***nsadmin*** or the ***Data Distribution Tool*** to import the exported vocabulary to your *Dragon* installation, be sure to give the new vocabulary the same name and topic ID that the Dragon 9.x or 10.x customized vocabulary had.

For example, if your Dragon 9.x or 10.x custom vocabulary was named ***US English | Large | Nuance*** topic ID ***9005***, you would use ***nsadmin*** or the ***Data Distribution Tool*** to create a new base vocabulary with that same name and topic ID number.

Chapter 5: Installing Dragon using the Windows installer (MSI)

This section provides information on using MSI files to install Dragon over a network, modifying Roaming User and other options, using .ini file to install Dragon with a specific configuration, creating and using MST files to install Dragon, installing Dragon from a command-line using natspeak.exe or msiexec.exe, upgrading Dragon and Roaming User Profiles from the command-line, and other related topics.

Note: You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported.

Overview of Installing Dragon using the Windows Installer (MSI) 101

Overview of the Network Installation of Dragon from a Server 103

Modifying Roaming User Profile, Miscellaneous, Schedule Settings in the INI File 105

Understanding and applying the Roaming User Options 105

Editing Miscellaneous and Scheduled Task Settings in nsdefaults.ini File 110

Understanding Network and Connection Settings in roamingdef.ini File 114

Carrying Out an Administrative Installation with .bat File 116

Install Dragon on an initial computer and choose the default settings 119

Extracting MSI/MST Files from the Dragon setup.exe 120

Using .MSI/.MST Files for Custom Installations Example 123

Installation using the Dragon installation process 125

Install the Same Configuration on Additional computers 127

Creating Custom Installation Using Microsoft Custom Install Wizard 129

Installation using the Dragon command line 137

Natspeak.exe command line reference 142

Other Actions You Can Take on Command Line ... 143
Modifying Default Installation Directory ... 144
Configuring Installation of Product Updates ... 145
Suppressing Reboot of the computer After Installation ... 146
Setting Dragon to Run in QuickStart Mode ... 147
Installing the same Roaming User Profile Configuration on Additional computer(s) ... 148
Silent Installation with Language Other Than US English ... 149
Revising Day/Time of Scheduled Tasks (Optional) ... 150
Configuring Local or On-Demand Install of Vocabularies/Text-to-Speech (Optional) ... 152
Upgrading Your Dragon Installation from the Command Line ... 154
Step-by-Step Process for Upgrading Roaming User Profiles ... 156
Major and Minor Upgrades: Silent Upgrade ... 161
Using setup.exe for Upgrades ... 165
Step-by-Step Command Line Installation with msiexec.exe ... 166
Additional Options for Installations with msiexec.exe ... 169
Additional Options for Silent Installations ... 170
MSI Options Specific to Dragon ... 176
MSI Options for Installing Dragon Features/Advanced Options ... 180
MSI Options for Roaming User Profile, Tuning, and Data Collection Setup ... 183
Feature Variables to Set Through the ADDLOCAL or ADVERTISE Properties ... 186
Installing Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon ... 191

Overview of Installing Dragon using the Windows Installer (MSI)

Dragon NaturallySpeaking and *Dragon Medical* include a native Windows Installer (MSI) that lets you customize your installations as well as install across a network to multiple client computers. In addition, you use this service to modify, repair, or remove any existing installations.

Although you have several choices when deciding how you want to install Dragon NaturallySpeaking or Dragon Medical on the command line, Nuance recommends that you follow the approach presented initially in this document.

Note: Administrative installations are not supported for Dragon Medical Small Practice Edition.

You can use this procedure to install the software on one computer at a time or combine it with Systems Management Server (SMS) or Windows Active Directory Service to install the software across a network to multiple client computers. Also, if you have already installed the product, you use this process to upgrade, modify, repair, or remove any existing installations.

Before You Begin

To ensure a smooth installation, before you proceed, you should gather the following information regarding your network and Dragon settings.

- Preferred settings for Dragon options, including any PowerMic or PowerMic II button actions to be programmed. You set these settings in the Options dialog box of Dragon.
- Preferred settings for Dragon Windows Auto-Formatting options to be applied to the recognized text. You set these settings in the Auto-Formatting dialog box of Dragon.
- Path to and/or mapped drive of the location where Roaming User Profiles are stored or are going to be stored, are normally set in the ***Network Settings*** sub-dialog of the ***Roaming*** tab in the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box.
- Information about your http or https connection to the Roaming User Profiles storage location, if applicable, normally viewed in the **Roaming User Network Location** sub-dialog of the **Administrative Settings** dialog box, accessible when clicking on "Add" for a Network Directory.
- Preferred settings for collecting dictation data to be sent back to Nuance Communications for improving the future accuracy of *Dragon*, are normally set under the ***Scheduled Tasks*** tab of the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog.
- Install a third-party indexing/search software before you install Dragon; if no third-party indexing/search is installed, when you try to set Dragon options, the **Enable Desktop Search commands** check box will not be available for selection. Dragon supports Google Desktop and Microsoft Windows Search.

Finding the MSI Installer on the DVD

The compiled ***MSI*** file is located on your installation DVD. The files for each edition are named:

- *Dragon NaturallySpeaking (all editions)* or *Dragon Medical*: Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi

You can double click on one of these ***.msi*** files to start the InstallShield Wizard; however, to instead take advantage of available command line options, you can pass the file name as the application to install to the ***msiexec.exe*** command using the **/i** option:

```
msiexec.exe /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking11.msi"
```

Entering Command Lines

Unless otherwise noted:

- All command line options are case-insensitive (unless otherwise noted) and can be combined.
- No options require special values based on the values of other options.
- In the examples, user-supplied information is displayed between angle brackets. Do not use angle brackets (<,>) as part of the command line.
- Do not use quotation marks unless you are explicitly instructed to.
- If a path name contain spaces, place a backslash followed by a quotation mark (\"), before each space in the path.
- Whenever you set an option to an .ini file, you must give the full path to that .ini file.
- All msiexec.exe command-line options you pass with /v must be prefaced with a forward slash (/) only.

Windows Vista Notes

Dragon setup is designed so that ***msiexec.exe*** can be run from an elevated command prompt in Windows Vista.

To launch an elevated command prompt in Windows Vista:

1. Click the Windows ***Start*** key
2. Type ***cmd*** in the search field
3. Press Ctrl+Shift+Enter. This action displays ***a User Account Control*** dialog box stating that ***Windows needs your permission to continue***.
4. Click ***Continue*** or hit ***Alt+C*** to confirm the elevation prompt. This displays an elevated command prompt.

Alternatively, to run the command window as an administrator, you can select ***Start*** > ***All Programs*** > ***Accessories*** > ***Command Prompt*** (without releasing the mouse), then right click ***Command Prompt*** and select ***Run As***. Choose an ***Administrator*** user and enter the authentication information requested.

Overview of the Network Installation of Dragon from a Server

Overview of Pushing Client Installation from a Server

You can install the Dragon runtime in a network environment, in other words, push the software application out to client computers without having to install it separately on each client system.

Dragon includes a native Windows Installer (MSI) that lets you both install across a network to multiple client computers and customize your installations. Several servers support this type of network installation:

- Windows Server 2003
- Windows Server 2008
- System Management Server (SMS)
- Active Directory Services

The administrator carrying out the installation creates an image of the installation program on the server and then configures the server to automatically push the application onto the client systems. You can also configure network installations to modify, repair, or remove an existing installation.

Support for SMS and Windows 2003 Server with Active Directory

Systems Management Server (SMS) provides a mechanism for pushing application installations out from the server to client systems. SMS supports using the Windows Installer (MSI) to push client installations on clients using all versions of Windows, from Windows XP to Windows 7. SMS requires that a client application be installed on all client computers.

For information about Windows Installer technology, see the Microsoft document Scenarios and Procedures for SMS 2003: Planning and Deployment available at http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyId=E0644BB4-2336-4254-8A18-9BC180713F7E&displaylang=en.

Active Directory Services is a feature of Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008. The Group Policy component of Active Directory Services includes a Software Installation snap-in that lets an administrator create a network installation. Administrators can use this feature to install software to Windows XP, Windows Vista, and Windows 7 clients.

Dragon supports the Active Directory Services Assign to Computers installation option. This option successfully installs the software when the computer is rebooted. You (as administrator) can delay installation on Windows XP or Vista clients by enabling logon optimization for group policy; for this type of installation, an entry for the installation can be viewed in the event log after the first reboot. The installation is then performed on the second reboot. The installation takes place silently, and the software is installed for all users on the computer. When you perform a

silent installation of Dragon, the installation process does not display any messages. To view installation messages, administrators should view the setup log.

Overview of Alternative Ways to Carry Out Administrative Installation

Dragon NaturallySpeaking and Dragon Medical include a native Windows Installer (MSI) that lets you install across a network to multiple client computers and customize your installation in the process. In addition, you can use this service to modify, repair, or remove any existing installations. You can use any of the following command line approaches to installing Dragon over a network:

Note: MSI installations are not supported for Dragon Medical Small Practice Edition.

- Carrying Out an Administrative Installation with .bat File
- Configuring Installation of Product Updates
- Creating Custom Installation Using Microsoft Custom Install Wizard

Once you have installed the server image, you can configure your installation, then use SMS or a similar product to install Dragon. If the product you use to push the installation out to a server requires it, you can install Dragon with msiexec (see Step-by-Step Command Line Installation with msiexec.exe) instead of setup.exe.

Modifying Roaming User Profile, Miscellaneous, Schedule Settings in the INI File

Suppose you have a large installation that involves several departments. Three departments require one group of configure settings and two others require modifications. After you complete the installation on the three departments requiring the same configuration, you might want to edit your configuration files before using them on the additional two departments.

To edit the settings, you can use the natspeak command again. You can either return to the computer where you carried out the initial installation to use natspeak or install the configuration from the first three departments on the first computer in the two departments with different settings. Modify the settings using:

- natspeak /setdefaultoptions
- natspeak /setdefaultformattingoptions "US English | Large | General Medical"
- natspeak /setdefaultadministrativeoptions

Then copy the new nsdefaults.ini file and roamingdef.ini files to a location accessible from all the client computers to have the alternative configuration. For example, if you want these files to be accessible to the MSI installer from a mapped network drive. copy the files to that location before installing to the client PCs.

Or, if the Roaming User Profile network settings are not changing, you can edit any of the other Roaming User Profile, Miscellaneous, and Scheduled Tasks settings of your configuration by rerunning Dragon with any command listed above. (You cannot make changes to the roamingdef.ini file, where the network settings reside.) Lists of the options in the nsdefaults.ini and roamingdef.ini files are provided in the tables that follow:

Caution: Be sure to use the full path to the file if you set an option to an .ini file name.

Understanding and applying the Roaming User Options

You can set Roaming User options during an MSI installation of Dragon. In the command line:

- Set the */SETDEFAULTS* option to **1** display the Options dialog box at the end of the installation. The **Options** dialog box lets you change *Dragon*'s standard behavior, including specifying hot keys, customizing how text is formatted, changing initial microphone settings, and setting the how often your User Profiles are backed up.
- Set the */SETADMINS* option to **1** to display the Administrative settings dialog box at the end of the installation. The Administrative settings dialog box lets you set up the Roaming feature.

In the **Roaming**, **Miscellaneous**, and **Schedule** tabs of the Administrative Settings dialog box, you set default values for the Roaming User options in the table below. The default values are then written to the *nsdefaults.ini* file, the *roamingdef.ini* file, and the *roaminguser.ini* file.

After the MSI installation is finished, you can use the *nsdefaults.ini* file, the *roamingdef.ini* file, and the *roaming.ini* file to install Dragon on other computers using the same settings that are in the .ini files.

See Overview of Installing Dragon using the Windows installer (MSI) and its subtopics for more information on installing Dragon using an MSI installation.

See MSI Options Specific to Dragon for more information on options that can be set during an MSI installation of Dragon.

Do not attempt to manually modify the *.ini* files. Manually modifying the *.ini* files may cause unpredictable or undesirable results.

Option	Description and UI equivalent
RoamingUserOn=0 (or 1)	Turns on the Roaming feature. Default **0** = **Off** Same as the **Roaming Tab** - **Enable** option.
Roaming User Local Cache Directory ="<existing directory>"	Sets the location of the local copy of the Roaming User Profile. The default location is: `Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\N-uance\Dragon NaturallySpeaking11\RoamingUsers\` Same as the **Roaming Tab** - **Local directory (for cache)** option.
Open User Large Collection =0 (or 1)	Same as the **Roaming Tab** - **Display Classic Open User Profiles dialog**. option. See Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.
Roaming User Restrict Local User Access=1 (or 0)	Permits non-Roaming User Profiles to be opened when the Roaming feature is active. Default of **1** restricts access to Roaming User Profiles only, preventing non-roaming (**local**) users from dictating by accident. Same as the **Roaming Tab - Allow non-roaming user profiles to be opened** option.
Roaming User Incorporate Voc Delta=0 (or 1)	When the vocdelta.dat file reaches 90% of its maximum size (1000 KB, or 1 GB), incorporates the contents of the local vocdelta.dat file into the master Roaming User Profiles (acoustic model for the User Profile), without running the **Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer**. After it incorporates the contents of the file into the master Roaming User Profile, it clears that data from the local User Profile, where new data is culled from subsequent dictation. If the data is being incorporated when you open a roaming User Profile, the process can be time consuming.

Option	Description and UI equivalent
	Default **0** = **On** Same as the **Roaming Tab - Merge contents of vocdelta.dat into network user profile when file is full** option.
Roaming User Limited Network Traffic=0 (or 1)	Transfers local Roaming User Profile changes to the master Roaming User Profile to synchronize the local and the master Roaming User Profile only when you open or close the User Profile. This includes the changes a user makes locally from the Options dialog box. For more information, see the Dragon Administrator Guide Help file topic on Synchronizing Master and Local Roaming User Profiles. Excessive network slowdowns can be alleviated by checking this option because it limits multiple interim synchronization of local and master Roaming User Profiles. Default **0** = **Off** Same as the **Roaming Tab - Access network at user profile open/close only** option.
Roaming User Always Break Lock=0 (or 1)	Ask before breaking locks on network user profiles (recommended). A network lock prevents opening a Roaming User Profile that is already open. Network problems can cause a lock to become "stuck" and not release even after opening the User Profile is complete. Default of **0** produces a prompt that states the User Profile is locked and asks you to override the lock. A setting of **1** does not produce the prompt, but breaks the lock automatically. Same as the **Roaming Tab - Ask before breaking locks on network user profiles (recommended for UNC and mapped drives)**option.
ASW Override=0 (or 1)	(ASW is short for Audio Setup Wizard.) Runs a **Volume** and **Quality Check** on the microphone each time you open a Roaming User Profile. This setting affects all users. Turn this option on if your users experience reduced accuracy because of differences in the microphone, sound card, and ambient sound levels at different locations. Default **0** = **Off**. Nuance recommends you set this option to **1**. Same as the **Roaming Tab - Set audio levels on each machine** option.
Roaming ASW Override =0 (or 1)	Runs a **Volume** and **Quality Check** on the microphone each time you open a Roaming User Profile. Set to **1** if the Roaming feature is enabled and **ASW Override** is **1**. **ASW Override** and **Roaming ASW Override** should always have the same setting.

Option	Description and UI equivalent
	Same as the **Roaming Tab - Set audio levels on each machine** option.
Roaming User Save Acoustics =0 (or 1)	When set to **1** (by default), when a user dictates on a computer, acoustic adaptation that occurred as Dragon 'adapted' to the user's voice, is saved. Acoustic optimization on the master User Profile applies the acoustic adaptation data from dictation to the acoustic model for the profile. When set to **0**, the .usr and .sig files created during dictation are not saved. Acoustic optimization on the master User Profile does not apply the acoustic adaptation data from dictation to the acoustic model for the profile. Same as the **Roaming Tab** - **Save acoustic information** option. See Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.
Roaming User Copy Dragon Log=0 (or 1)	Copies the *dragon.log* file from the local Roaming User Profile location to the master Roaming User Profile location at the same time that the program synchronizes the local and the master Roaming User Profiles. Default **0** = **Off** Same as the **Roaming Tab** - **Copy Dragon log to network** option.
RoamingUserCopyAcoustic Always=0(or 1)	Copies the User Profile's acoustic information to the master Roaming User Profile location when you do not want to run the **Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer** on the master Roaming User Profiles. The local Roaming User Profile acoustic information is stored in: `Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\RoamingUsers\<display name>\<username>\current\voice` The <display name> is the name you defined for the master Roaming User Profile location. You can have multiple network storage locations. The <username> contains the names of an individual master Roaming User Profile. Default **0** = **Off**. If you chose not to copy the User Profile's acoustic information to the network, corrections you make on one computer are not available on other computers used by that particular Roaming User Profile until you run the **Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer** on the master Roaming User Profile location and the local and master Roaming User Profile synchronize. When this option is set to **1** (on), the latest acoustic information is always available and auto-

Option	Description and UI equivalent
	matically synchronized when the master Roaming User Profile is opened from another location. The transfer of acoustic information is not limited by setting the **Disk space reserved for network archive** option. Same as the **Roaming Tab** - **Always copy acoustic information to network** option.
Roaming User Do Not Copy Dra Files=0 (or 1)	Prevents making files that contain acoustic data from the latest dictation session available to the **Acoustic Optimizer** when the program synchronizes the local and master Roaming User Profiles. You use this option to prevent the transfer of acoustic optimization data to local User Profiles. Same as the **Roaming Tab** - **Conserve archive size on network** option.
Roaming User Max Container Size=1000 MB	Controls the maximum size for each container directory in the **master** Roaming User profile directory. Defaults to 1000 MB.. Same as the **Roaming Tab** - **Disk space reserved for network archive** option.
Allow Users to Configure Tasks=0 or 1	An administrators enables this option to allow users to access the **Scheduled Tasks** tab in the Administrative Settings dialog box. Users can use the options in the **Scheduled Tasks** tab to set schedules for tasks, including the accuracy tuning task and the data collection task. If an administrator does not enable this option, users cannot access the **Scheduled Tasks** tab and the tasks will use the default schedule. Same as the **Scheduled Tasks Tab - Let the user choose when to run Accuracy Tuning and Data Collection** option.
Custom Directory =<full path>	Sets the location of the Data Distribution directory used by the Data Distribution Tool or the nsadmin command. The Data Distribution directory can be set to any directory that Windows has read and write access to. This includes portable devices such as Zip drives and CD/DVD burners. In enterprise installations, the Data Distribution directory is likely set to mapped network drives and UNC paths. Same as the **Miscellaneous Tab - Data Distribution location** option.

Editing Miscellaneous and Scheduled Task Settings in nsdefaults.ini File

Of the settings in the nsdefaults.ini file retrieved from the Administrative Settings dialog box, several settings are from the Miscellaneous and Scheduled Tasks tabs of the dialog box. You can modify the following settings in the nsdefaults.ini file:

Options	Description	UI
AO Archive Time Limit	Maximum audio archive size in minutes. The same option in the **options.ini** file for a particular user contains the size of the current audio archive for that user. Default max is **3600000** minutes.	Archive Size dialog box, displaying the range of audio archive sizes
Disable command changes for restricted users=0 (or 1)	Turns on or off the option that lets non-administrative users add or modify commands.	Do not allow restricted users to add or modify commands
Disable vocabulary changes for restricted users=0 (or 1)	Turns on or off the option that lets non-administrative users modify vocabularies.	Do not allow restricted users to modify vocabularies
Global Enable Pause Results=0 (or 1)	Turns on or off recognition when the speaker pauses.	Record wave data between utterances
Custom Directory=<*full path*>	Sets the location of the Data Distribution directory used by the Data Distribution Tool or the nsadmin command.	Data Distribution location

Options	Description	UI
Current Status Ctfmngr=0 (or 1)	Turns on or off Windows advanced text services. Turning off these services prevents conflict between them and Dragon (Windows XP only).	Disable Windows advanced text services
No Dictation=0 or 1	When No Dictation is on (set to 1) the user cannot dictate, but can only correct dictation; used to designate a user as a transcriptionist.	Correction Only Mode
Global MyCommands MacroRecorder=0 or 1	Allows or does not allow the user to modify Macro Recorder commands. The user should still be able to dictate with those commands, even when not allowed to modify them.	Disable use of Macro Recorder commands
Global MyCommands StepByStep Scripting=0 or 1	Allows or does not allow the user to modify Step-by-Step commands. The user should still be able to dictate with those commands, even when not allowed to modify them.	Disable use of Step-by-Step commands
Global MyCommands VBA Scripting=0 or 1	Allows or does not allow the user to modify Advanced Scripting	Disable use of Advanced Scripting commands

Options	Description	UI
	commands. The user should still be able to dictate with those commands, even when not allowed to modify them.	
enx ACO uses Auto Accent AM selection=0 or 1.	When set to **1**, the Acoustic Optimizer engine can automatically select an acoustic model that it believes is more suited to your speech. To avoid having this switch occur, set the option to **0**. In Dragon 11 or greater , special conditions apply if you run the Acoustic Optimizer on a User Profile that has two acoustic models. See Using multiple acoustic models with a User Profile for more information.	Disable automatic acoustic model selection in Acoustic Optimizer
Encrypt Patient Health Information=0 or 1	When set to 1, Dragon automatically encrypts interim files it automatically creates, to avoid the possibility of those files being inadvertently accessed by unauthorized personnel.	Encrypt patient health information
Data Collector Batch Mode=0 or 1	When set to 1,	Enable scheduled Data Collection

Options	Description	UI
	turns on a process that automatically collects data to help improve speech recognition in the future. The process sends the data to Nuance over the Internet, but does not send any personal information - it collects recorded dictation and the corresponding text. Collecting data for Nuance is optional.	
Allow Users to Optimize=0 or 1	When set to **1**, turns on a process that automatically runs an optimization process on speech recognition for the currently open User Profile.	Enable scheduled Accuracy Tuning
Allow Users to Configure Tasks=0 or 1	Turning this option on lets users set the schedule for accuracy tuning and data collection tasks. Otherwise, these tasks take place on a default schedule.	Let the user choose when to run Accuracy Tuning and Data Collection

Understanding Network and Connection Settings in roamingdef.ini File

Although you cannot edit the roamingdef.ini file because it is encrypted, you should know that the following information is in the file. You can modify these settings through the Administrative Settings dialog only. For more information on values for each option, refer to the Dragon Administrator Guide Help file available through the product menu:

Options	Description and UI
[<Network Settings>]	*Display Name* assigned to the network directory where Roaming User Profiles are stored, in the *Network Directories* box.
location	*Address*. Path to a network directory, web server, or secure web server where Roaming User Profiles are stored.
HTTP Settings (HTTP)	
type	*Authentication Type*.
authscheme=1	Indicates authentication is required.
queryforuserpassword	*Prompt for user and password* check box.
authuser	<*domain*>\<*username*> required to log in.
authpassword	Actual password required to log in.
followredirects	*Follow Redirects*. Never, Always, or Same Scheme Only.
keepalive	*Keep Connection Alive* check box.
locktimeout	*Lock* under *Timeouts*. Number of seconds after timeout expires to lock the connection.
connectiontimeout	*Connection* under *Timeouts*. Number of seconds after timeout expires to close the connection.
connectiontimeoutinactivity	*Type* under *Timeouts*. Set if you selected *Inactivity* option.
connectiontimeoutabsolute	*Type* under *Timeouts*. Set if you selected *Absolute* option.
firewall	*Firewall and Proxy Servers*. Set if a firewall is configured.

Options	Description and UI
proxy	*Use Proxy Server* check box. Set if checked.
proxyserver	*Network Location*. URL to the web server.
firewalltype	*Type*. Type of firewall represented by a number.
firewallhost	*Server*. Name of server for the firewall.
firewallport=1080	*Port*. Port used by the proxy server or firewall. **1080** is the default.
firewalluser	*Username*. Login name of the admin user who can access the firewall.
firewallpassword	*Password*. Password to log in to the firewall.
firewalldata	*Firewall Data or Proxy Authorization*. Special authentication string for firewall or proxy server, if applicable.
SSL Settings (HTTPS)	
sslcertstore	Certificate store text box with no label. Name of the certificate.
sslcertstorepassword	*Certificate Store Password*.
sslcertstoretype	*Certificate Store Type*, indicated by numeric designation.
useopenssl	*Using OpenSSL* check box.
opensslcipherlist	*Cipher List*.
opensslcafile	*Certificate Authority File*.
opensslcadir	*CA Directory*.
tls1 ssl3 ssl2 pct1	*SSL Enabled Protocols*

Carrying Out an Administrative Installation with .bat File

A straightforward way to install Dragon from the command line to a server is to carry out an administrative installation using a .bat file.

Caution: Only advanced users should attempt any type of administrative Installation.

Note: A script for carrying out a full administrative installation, including installation of Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon, is provided in the admininstall.bat file at the top of the directory structure on the DVD. The script provided includes a bare minimum of the options available, so you might want to read through the Installation using the Dragon command line to find out about other options you might use.

Understanding the script in admininstall.bat

Below are some of the lines from the script in the admininstall.bat file, a batch file that un-compresses setup files into a network location for installation using SMS or another service. Since any system to be installed might be a 32-bit system or a 64-bit system, the batch file places a different vcruntime on the server for each type of system.

To run the batch file, you enter admininstall.bat and follow it with three arguments: the locations of the vcruntime source file for 32-bit systems, the vcruntime source file for 64-bit systems, and the Dragon .msi file, in that order. Both 32-bit and 64-bit vcruntime files must be available for the .bat file to run.

Near the top of the batch file, you see the lines that check the parameters entered and if the parameters passed are not acceptable, execute a routine that handles that situation:

```
:rem //Check and analyze input parameters if .%1.==.. goto bad_args if
.%2.==.. goto bad_args if .%3.==.. goto bad_args
```

If the arguments you pass when you enter the command are acceptable, the batch file sets the NETWORK_VCRUNTIME_DIR variable to the first argument, the NETWORK_VCRUNTIME_X64_DIR to the second and NETWORK_DNS_DIR to the third:

```
set NETWORK_VCRUNTIME_DIR=%1% set NETWORK_VCRUNTIME_X64_DIR=%2% set
NETWORK_DNS_DIR=%3%
```

Notice that there are two VCRUNTIME variables. The first is for a 32-bit system and the second for a 64-bit system. The script needs both to carry out all the action.

In the next section of the batch file, you see the lines that install Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon, which must be installed before you can install Dragon. The batch file first installs 32-bit computer vcruntime and displays messages as it progresses:

```
echo Installing Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon NaturallySpeaking...
```

To install Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon, the script uses the full path to vcruntime.exe and passes it several options:

- /a to indicate it is an administrative installation (to a server)
- /L option followed by the language ID
- /v option followed by a series of MSI installation options all enclosed in quotation marks, including:
    - TARGETDIR to indicate where to put the image resulting from an administrative installation
    - /qb to display only a basic GUI
    - /L to indicate the types of messages to log and the file to log them in

```
ISSetupPrerequisites\VCRuntime\vcruntime.exe /a /l1033
/v"TARGETDIR=%NETWORK_VCRUNTIME_DIR% /qb /L*v %TEMP%\admininstall.log"
```

Note: An administrative installation should always use the TARGETDIR option instead of the INSTALLDIR option.

The batch file then installs 64-bit vcruntime using the full path to vcruntime_x64.exe and passes it the same options:

```
echo Installing Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon NaturallySpeaking 64bit
(x64)... ISSetupPrerequisites\VCRuntime\vcruntime_x64.exe /a /l1033
/v"TARGETDIR=%NETWORK_VCRUNTIME_X64_DIR% /qb /L*v %TEMP%-
\admininstall.log"
```

If you have Version 10, you have only the 32-bit version and need to use a different path:

```
ISSetupPrerequisites\{1FAD9007-0FF1-4B05-B7CE-ADE12FB7DEC5}-
\vcruntime.exe /a /l1033 /v"TARGETDIR=%NETWORK_VCRUNTIME_DIR% /qb /L*v
%TEMP%\admininstall.log"
```

When the installation of Visual C++ Runtime succeeds or fails, the batch file displays the appropriate message.

Finally, the log file installs Dragon, using a single line of code that calls the setup.exe command and passes it:

- /a option — Indicates administrative install
- /s option for a silent no-GUI installation
- /v option to indicate msiexec options follow, enclosed in quotation marks

When you perform a silent installation of Dragon, the installation process does not display any messages. To view installation messages, administrators should view the setup log.

The msiexec options with /v include /qb for display of a basic GUI during the process, the TARGETDIR setting, and a /L with a series of log file options, including the name and location for the log file:

```
echo Installing Dragon NaturallySpeaking... setup.exe /a /s /v"/qb TAR-
GETDIR=%NETWORK_DNS_DIR% /L*v %TEMP%\admininstall.log"
```

When the installation of Dragon succeeds or fails, the batch file displays an appropriate message. The remainder of the file handles errors and cases where bad arguments are passed on the command line.

Modifying admininstall.bat

You can modify the admininstall.bat file by adding to and changing the options you pass for installation Visual C++ Runtime, then Dragon. You can add more options and/or modify the options shown here. For more on installation options, refer to Installation using the Dragon command line or these summaries:

- MSI Options Specific to Dragon
- MSI Options for Installing Dragon Features/Advanced Options
- Feature Variables to Set Through the ADDLOCAL or ADVERTISE Properties
- MSI Options for Roaming User Profile, Tuning, and Data Collection Setup

Install Dragon on an initial computer and choose the default settings

Before you proceed, you should be familiar with installing the product on a single computer from the DVD. For more information, see Installing, modifying and upgrading Dragon.

The initial installation is used to set default values for the Administrative, User and Auto-Formatting options. These options can then be used to install on other computers using the same values.

Even if you are installing from a server, you should run through the initial installation below first. For more information on installing from a server, proceed to Overview of the Network Installation of Dragon from a Server.

Caution: If you want to set any administrative settings, be sure you have Windows administrator privileges. Administrator rights are not required to create a User Profile or use the software after installation.

Before you begin:

- Install any pending Windows updates and reboot the computer when you are finished.
- Close all open applications.
- Turn off or disable antivirus software; the installation process can sometimes trigger a false virus report.

Note: An alternative to this approach is to use msiexec.exe to install Dragon, covered under Step-by-Step Command Line Installation with msiexec.exe.

Extracting MSI/MST Files from the Dragon setup.exe

Some minor release of Dragon, Service Pack 1 of Dragon 10 for example, do not include a .MSI file, they are supplied with a setup.exe.

You can carry out an administrative installation using setup.exe, as follows:

- Create a server image of Dragon files for later installing clients. You create the image by executing setup.exe and passing it the /a option and a Dragon-specific option that extracts MST and MSI files from the Dragon setup.exe file provided.
- Use the options to extract the MSI/MST Files from the Dragon setup.exe.

Extracting MSI/MST Files from setup.exe

The following setup.exe options are designed to extract .msi/.mst files for Windows Installer-oriented distributions.

Note: When you install Dragon 11 or greater , Dragon installs using the primary language for the product. You cannot install Dragon using a language that is different than the primary language. For example, when you install Dragon 11 or greater , Professional - English version, Dragon installs using the English language.

If you attempt to use the `/l` option with setup.exe to install Dragon 11 or greater using a non-primary language, the installation process uses the primary language for that edition of Dragon and ignores the `/l` option.

These options do not install any files, but rather extract an installable set of files into the server directory you specify.

Option	Description
/a	Administrative installation. Instructs **setup.exe** to perform an administrative installation to a network for use by a workgroup instead of a normal installation. This option is required when trying to extract the **.msi** files. An administrative installation installs a source image of the application onto the network. The image is similar to a source image on a CD or DVD. Users in the workgroup who have access can then install the product over the network from this source image.
/a	Administrative installation. Instructs **setup.exe** to perform an administrative installation to a network for use by a workgroup

Option	Description
	instead of a normal installation. This option is required when trying to extract the **.msi** files. An administrative installation installs a source image of the application onto the network. The image is similar to a source image on a CD or DVD. Users in the workgroup who have access can then install the product over the network from this source image.
/v"<*msiexec options*>"	Passes **msiexec** options to Windows Installer. See table of **msiexec** options for details. This option is required when trying to extract the **.msi** files.
/l<*Windows Language Code*>	Specifies the language to use for installing *Dragon*. For example, to launch the installation in French, the command line would include **/L1036**. The language codes supported for installing Dragon are: 1031=German 1033=English 1034=Spanish 1036=French 1040=Italian 1043=Dutch Also creates an MST file for the language you specify, such as **1036.MST**.
EXTRACTFILES="c:\xyz"	For installing Version 10 Service Pack 1 only. Indicates the directory where the extracted **.msi**/**.mst** files are to be written. Long path names containing spaces need to be in quotation marks escaped by having a backslash precede each quotation mark (\"). This property is required to extract the **.msi** files. If the directory you specify does not exist, the installer creates it. Here is a sample command line to extract **msi** files from a single executable: **setup.exe /a /s /v"-EXTRACTFILES=c:\temp\msifiles"**

Option	Description
TARGETDIR="C:\xyz"	Use with administrative installations only. Indicates the full path to where to install the image of *Dragon*.

Using .MSI/.MST Files for Custom Installations Example

Using .MST files you can tailor the MSI installation without changing the setup.exe file that Nuance provides.

Note: When you install Dragon 11 or greater , Dragon installs using the primary language for the product. You cannot install Dragon using a language that is different than the primary language. For example, when you install Dragon 11 or greater , Professional, English version, Dragon installs using the English language.

If you attempt to use the `/l` option with setup.exe to install Dragon 11 or greater , using a non-primary language, the installation process uses the primary language for that edition of Dragon and ignores the `/l` option.

Step1: Running setup.exe to Extract .MSI and .MST Files

The following sample command line extracts the French .MSI file, Dragon NaturallySpeaking 10.msi , and the .MST file used for installing Dragon in French :

The following sample command line extracts the Dragon NaturallySpeaking 10.msi and the .MST file used for installing Dragon :

```
setup.exe /a /s /l1036 /v"EXTRACTFILES=c:\temp\MSIfiles /qn"
```

```
setup.exe /a /s /v"EXTRACTFILES=c:\temp\MSIfiles /qn"
```

Caution: The first time you try any command line, you should not run it in Silent mode, because if you have neglected to provide required information, you then receive a GUI prompt for that information.

(The character that immediately follows the third slash is a lowercase L.)

Next, you specify the extracted .MSI and .MST files in a command line to install Dragon . The next two examples show how these files are used running first setup.exe, then msiexec.exe.

Step 2: Passing MST File to setup.exe to Install Dragon

This sample command line launches setup in French and installs Dragon into the C:\Dragon directory:

This sample command line launches setup and installs Dragon into the C:\Dragon directory:

```
setup /a /s /v"INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon\" TRANSFORMS=1036.MST /qn
```

```
setup /a /s /v"INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon\" /qn
```

Alternative Step2: Passing MST File to msiexec.exe to Dragon

Before actually use the MST file you extracted in the previous step to install Dragon on the command line with msiexec.exe, you must install Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon, as outlined here.

1. Find the ISSetupPrerequisites/VCRuntime directory on the product DVD and open it. In the directory you find the vcruntime.exe and vcruntime_x64.exe files. (If you are installing Version 10, look in the ISSetupPrerequisites\{1FAD9007-0FF1-4B05-B7CE-ADE12FB7DEC5} directory instead.)
2. Copy the vcruntime files to your server or to another accessible location. These .exe files install Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon. Run vcruntime.exe on each 32-bit computer where you intend to install Dragon and vcruntime_x64.exe on each 64-bit computer.

   Caution: Do not attempt to extract the .msi file from either vcruntime.exe or vcruntime_x64.exe. Installing the Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon as part of an msiexec.exe command line installation of Dragon is not recommended and not supported.

The /q option runs the installation in Quiet mode.

For more on using the Microsoft Windows Installer, refer to http://msdn2.microsoft.com/en-us/library/Aa372866.

Installation using the Dragon installation process

Perform the following steps to use the user interface of the Dragon installation process:

1. Insert the product DVD in the DVD drive. If the installation does not start, run setup.exe from the DVD.
2. Choose the Custom installation with appropriate languages and vocabularies.
3. Choose the Custom installation with appropriate vocabularies.
4. Choose the following check boxes under **Additional options** to have additional dialog boxes pop up at the end of the installation, where you can make changes that affect all users dictating on this computer.
   - **Modify the application's settings for all user profiles** - Displays the Options dialog box at the end of the installation.
   - **Modify the administrative settings** - Displays the Administrative Settings dialog box at the end of the installation, where you set up the Roaming feature, where to backup your User Profiles, and who can modify commands/vocabularies.
   - **Auto-Formatting options** - Displays the Auto-Formatting dialog box at the end of the installation, where you apply uniform formatting to all documents dictated at this installation; for example, formats for dates, times, and phone numbers.
5. When the Options dialog box appears, select the default options that should apply to all client installations and click OK. This dialog box is where you set up all the options under the various tabs (Correction, Command, and so on). In Dragon Medical, you can also program custom actions into the buttons on the PowerMic I and PowerMic II microphones.

   Note: Settings under the Playback/Text-to-Speech tab are not saved. To include Text-to-Speech as a feature of your installation, work with options in Summary: MSI Options for Installing Dragon Features/Advanced Options.

   Note: At least one supported third-party indexing/search software should be installed on the system before you install Dragon, or the Enable Desktop Search commands check box will not only be unchecked, but will not be available to be checked. Dragon supports Google Desktop and Microsoft Windows Search.
6. When the Auto-Formatting dialog box appears, select Auto-Formatting options to apply to all client installations and click **OK**.
7. When the Administrative Settings dialog box appears, if you want to set up Roaming User Profiles, set the options under Roaming User Profile (to set the HTTP or HTTPS settings under the HTTP Settings or HTTPS Settings button, you must have either http:// or https:// in front of the network directory path); whether you have Roaming User Profiles or not, set the options under Miscellaneous and Scheduled Tasks tabs and click Apply for each; then, when you have set all the settings, click OK.
8. Dragon has saved the configuration you created with running natspeak.exe in the nsdefaults.ini and roamingdef.ini files (the roamingdef.ini file is created only if you set up Roaming User

Profiles). You can find these .ini files under
`C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\N-uance\NaturallySpeaking11\`.
These .ini files are now considered customized files, because they now contain the custom settings that will be applied to each of the DNS client installations you deploy. Retrieve the nsdefaults.ini and roamingdef.ini files and copy them to a directory where you can access them from the other client computers. (If you did not run natspeak.exe on the command line, you do not find a roamingdef.ini file; in that case, you can use a roaming.ini file from an existing installation whose settings you'd like to replicate. If you did not change the Network Settings, you do not need a roamingdef.ini or roaming.ini file at all.)

You are now ready to install the same configuration you just established here onto other computers.

Notes:

- If you are installing Dragon on more than one client computer and over a network, you can use the same .ini files with the MSI Installer (msiexec). You also use SMS Server or another server-based program that pushes the installation out to several clients at once. Even if you are installing from a server, you should run through the initial installation before you carry out the administrative installation. Then, for more information on installing from a server, proceed to **Overview of Pushing Client Installation from Server**.
- When you install Dragon 11 or greater , Dragon installs using the primary language for the product. You cannot install Dragon using a language that is different than the primary language. For example, when you install Dragon 11 or greater , Professional - English version, Dragon installs using the English language. If you attempt to use the `/l` option with setup.exe to install Dragon 11 or greater using a non-primary language, the installation process uses the primary language for that edition of Dragon and ignores the `/l` option.

Install the Same Configuration on Additional computers

Note: If you chose Enable Desktop Search Commands on the Commands tab during the initial installation, you must install Google Desktop or Microsoft Windows Search before you install Dragon; otherwise, that option does not take effect..

1. Be sure you can access the .ini files you created in the previous procedure from the computer you will be installing on or copy the files to a local path on the client computer where you are about to install Dragon.
2. Be sure you have the Dragon serial number (or the group serial number, if you are installing Dragon to multiple computers on a network).
3. Be sure all mapped drives you plan to use are mapped on individual client computers where you are distributing the installation.
4. Install any pending Windows updates and reboot the computer.
5. Open a command line window (Start > Run cmd).
6. Insert the product DVD in the DVD drive and search the DVD for the path where the Dragon setup.exe is located.
7. On the computer where you are installing Dragon, to install the same configuration you created during the initial installation, enter the following on the command line (using the customized nsdefaults.ini file) of a single client. You pass the Dragon serial number for the SERIALNUMBER option and the full path to the nsdefaults.ini file using the DEFAULTSINI option (this line assumes no Roaming User Profiles):

   ```
   setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
   INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\"
   DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\"
   /L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log
   ```

   Note: The full path for the DEFAULTSINI setting uses escaped out quotation marks (preceded by a backslash) only when there are spaces in the full path.

   Caution: The first time you test any installation, you should pass /q rather than /qn so that if you have neglected to provide information about a setting that does not have a default, you receive a GUI prompt for that information.
8. If you entered a network address in the Network Directories box and set up HTTP or HTTPS settings in the Roaming tab of the Administrative Settings dialog during the initial installation, those settings are transferred to your client computers only if you include the ROAMINGUSERINI option, set to roamingdef.ini:

   ```
   setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
   INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\"
   DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\"
   ROAMINGUSERINI=\"C:\<full_path>\roamingdef.ini\"
   /L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log
   ```

You include the bolded portion of the above command lines so that if something goes wrong during the installation, you receive messages about it. You pass /L and a series of sub-options followed by a log file name to have the installation log errors and other messages related to the process. (You can send the log file to technical support should any issues arise.)

Note: You can also use the /qn option to install the product in Quiet mode, where no GUI or other messages appear. Another option, the /passive mode, runs the entire installation unattended, but displays a progress bar. However, the first time you run any installation command line, you should not use the /qn option, because turning off the GUI also turns off any messages that help you determine any problems with that command line. To use the /qn option, add it to the end of the command line:

```
setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\" DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\ns-
defaults.ini\"
/L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log /qn

setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\" DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\ns-
defaults.ini\"
ROAMINGUSERINI=\"C:\<full_path>\roamingdef.ini\" /L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log
/qn
```

Creating Custom Installation Using Microsoft Custom Install Wizard

If you are installing Dragon on a network, you can create a custom installation program using a set of tools available from Microsoft.

1. Download and install the tools
2. Run the wizard

You are then ready to use the custom installer to install the product.

Installing the Microsoft Custom Installation Wizard

The Microsoft Custom Installation Wizard is part of the Microsoft Office Resource Kit Tools. To install the Custom Installation Wizard:

1. Download the Office Resource Kit Tools (OrkTools.exe) from: http://www.microsoft.com/office/orkarchive/xpddl.htm. The OrkTools.exe self-extracting executable (EXE) file installs the core Office XP Resource Kit tools on your computer through a single Setup program.
2. After downloading OrkTools.exe, to install the tools, you either double-click the executable or select **Start** > **Programs** > **Microsoft Office Tools** > **Microsoft Office XP Resource Kit Tools**.

After you install the tool, you use its Custom Installation Wizard to create your custom installation. For details on using the wizard, proceed to Modifying setup Properties for Custom Installation.

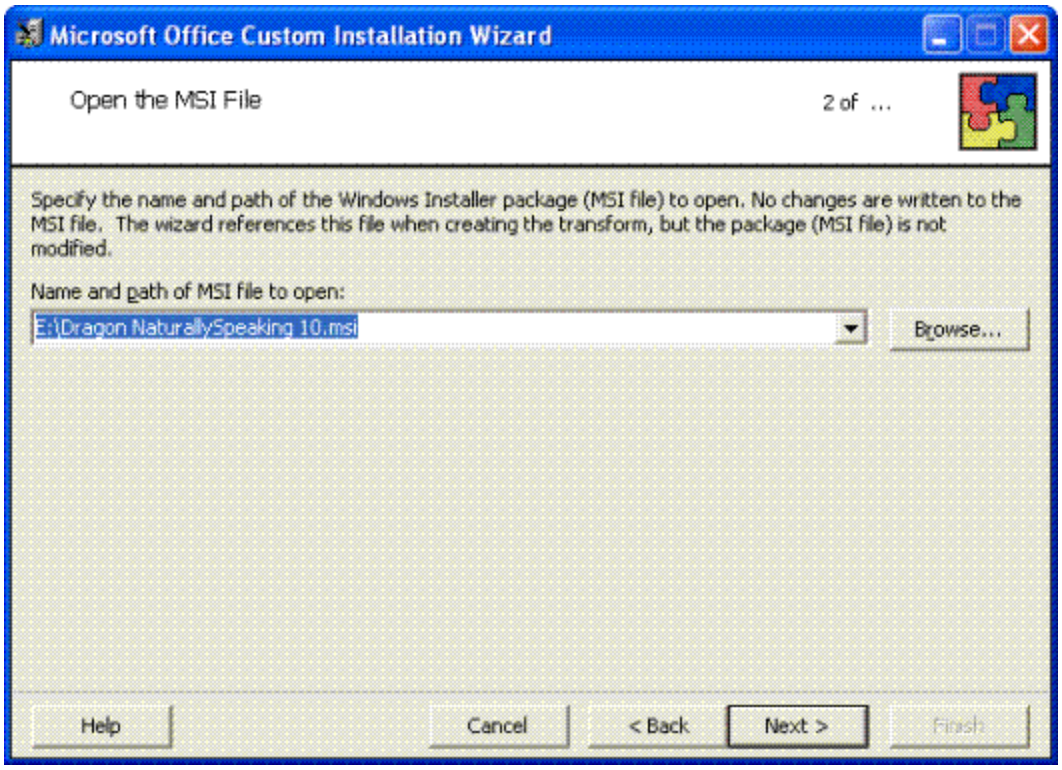
Modifying setup Properties for Custom Installation

The following explains how to modify setup properties for a custom installation of Dragon. This example shows how to add to the installer configuration one of the many MSI options you can set for installing Dragon, the SERIALNUMBER property. (You can add any options available to MSI on the command line.)

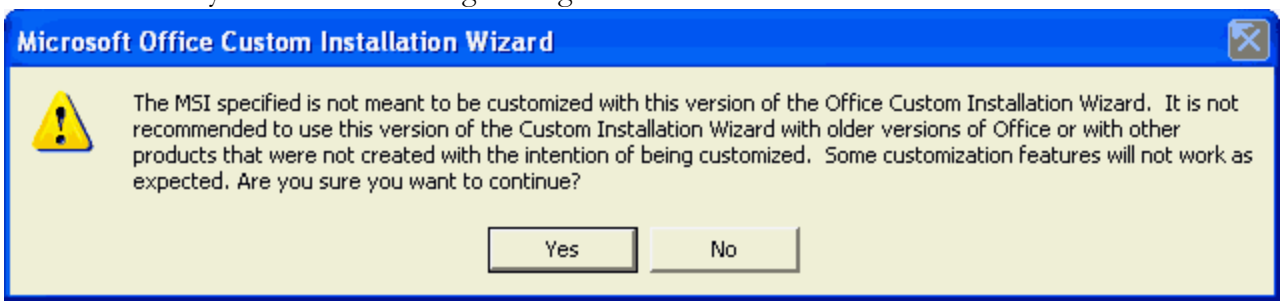
1. Start the Microsoft Custom Installation Wizard by choosing **Start** > **Programs** > **Microsoft Office Tools** > **Microsoft Office XP Resource Kit Tools**, and then click **Custom Installation Wizard**. The Custom Installation Wizard screen displays:

2. Click Next.
3. On the Open the MSI File page of the wizard, shown below, select the .MSI file you want to use to create a custom installation. The compiled .MSI file is located on your installation CD. The files are named:
    - Dragon NaturallySpeaking or Dragon Medical: Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi

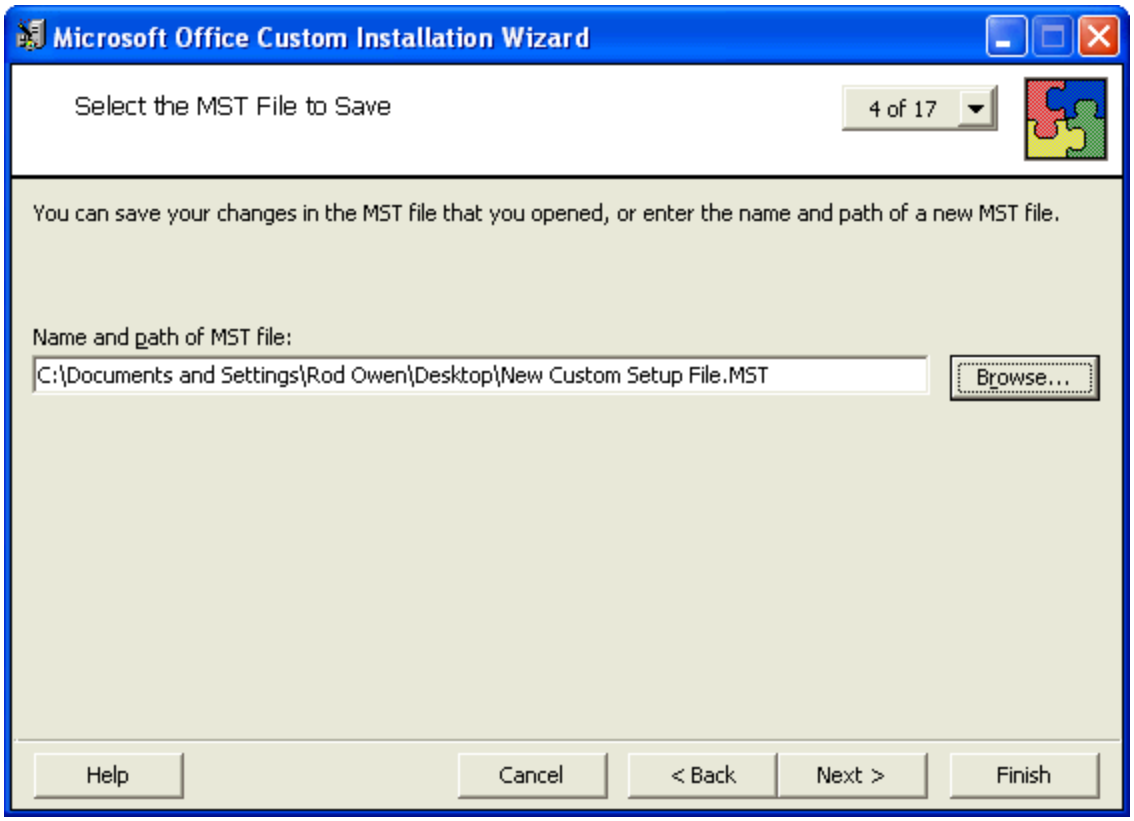
4. The following example uses Dragon NaturallySpeaking 10.msi.



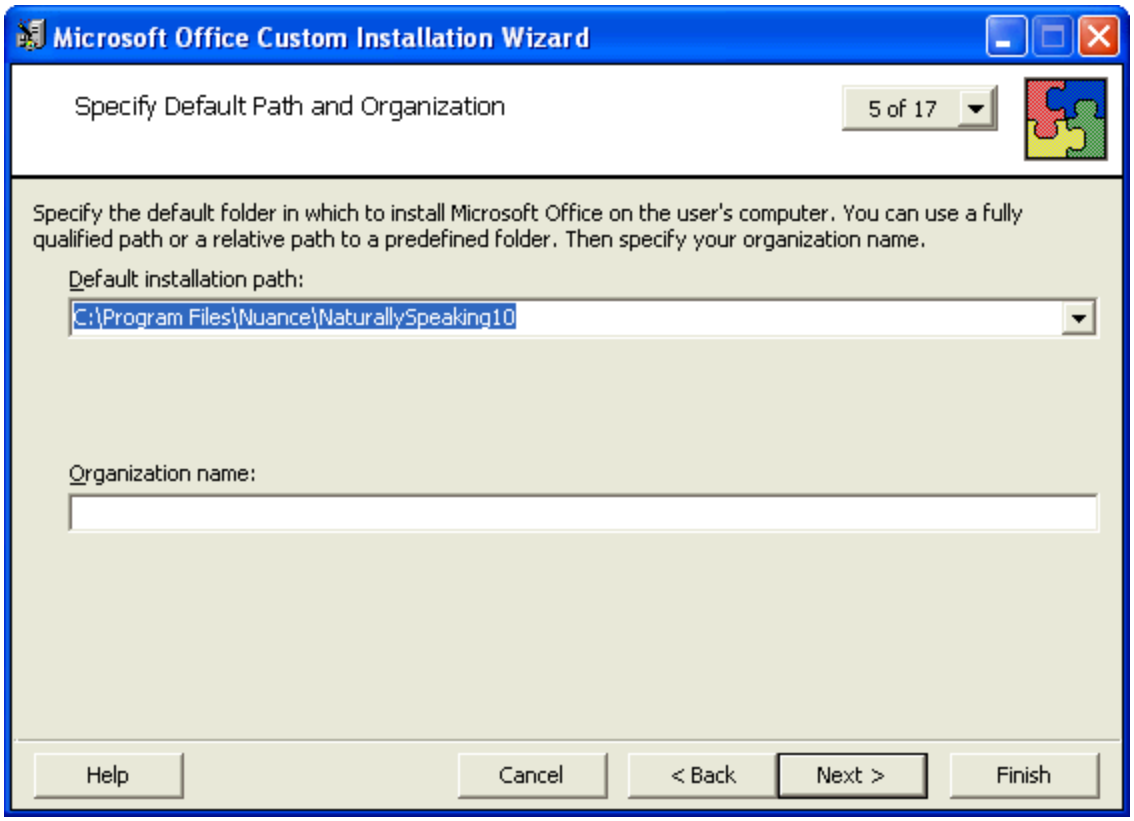
5. Click Next.
6. Click Yes when you see the following message:



7. On the Open the MST File page of the wizard, select Create a new MST file.
8. Click Next to continue.
9. On the Select MST File to Save page of the wizard, select a file name and path for the MST file you are creating:

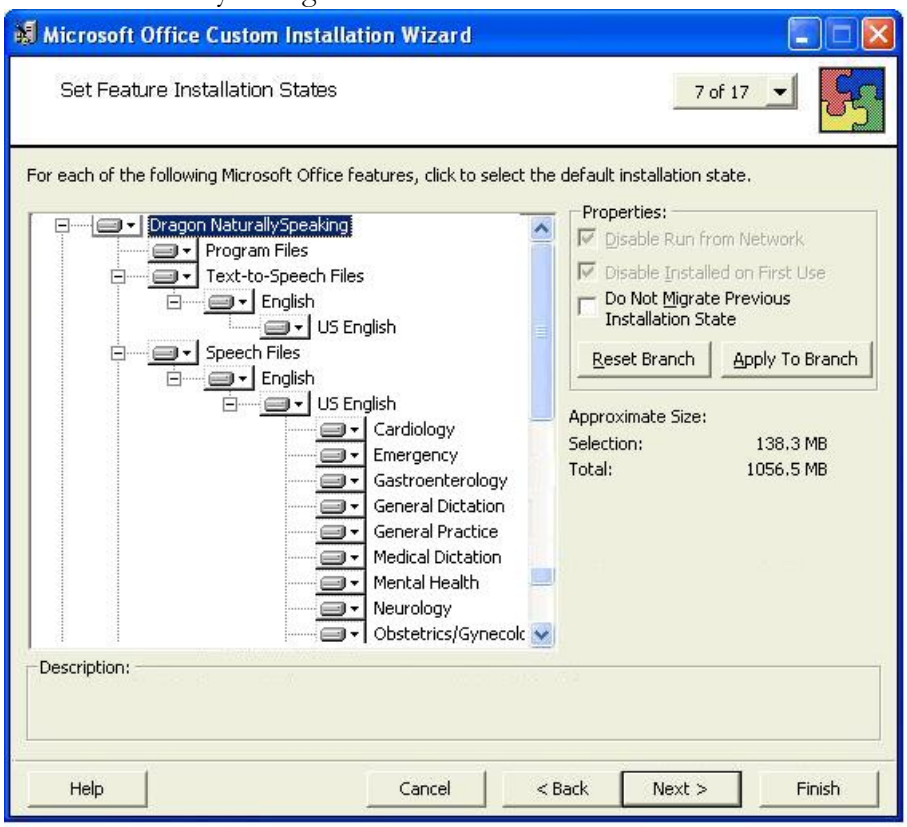


10. Click Next.
11. On the Specify a Default Path and Organization page, select the default path for the installation. By default, Dragon installs in `\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11`.



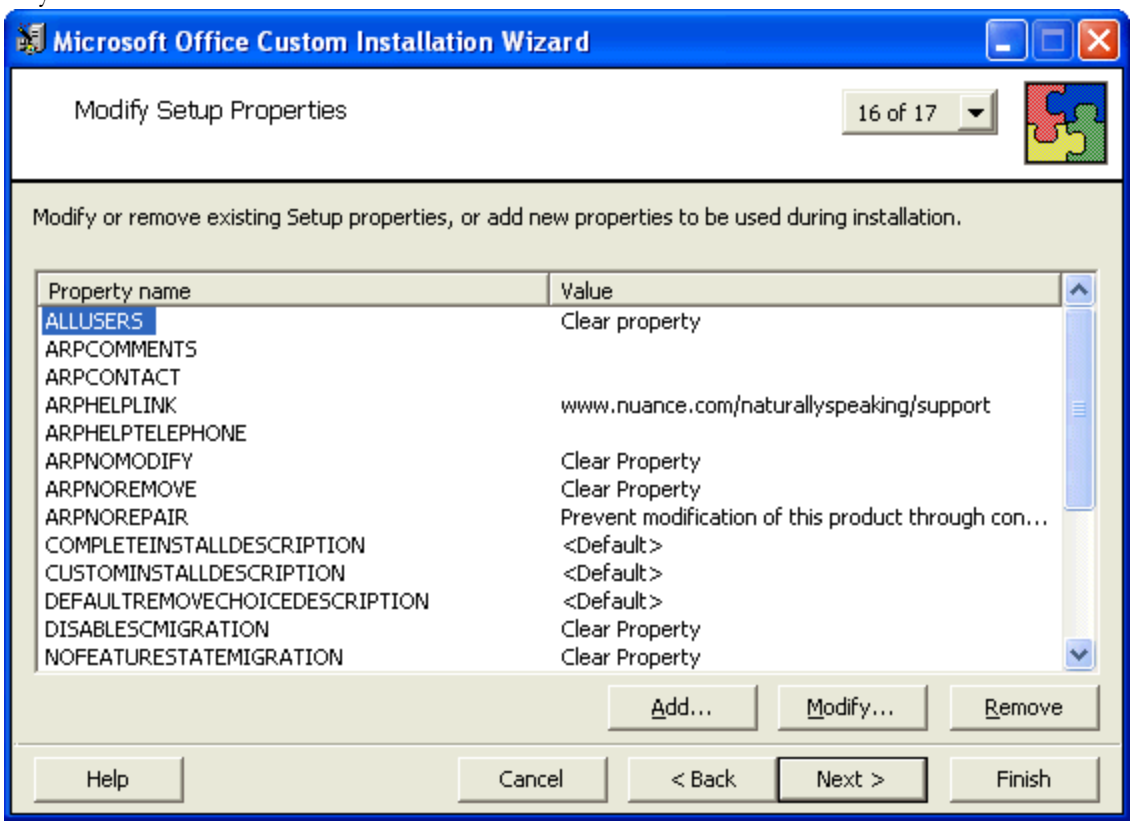
12. Click Next.
13. On the Remove Previous Versions page, keep the default selections and click Next. This page applies only to Microsoft Office and does not affect the Dragon installation.
14. Click Next to keep all the defaults when you come to the Set Features Installation States page, where you select particular components to install. The illustration here shows some of the Med-

ical vocabularies you might choose:

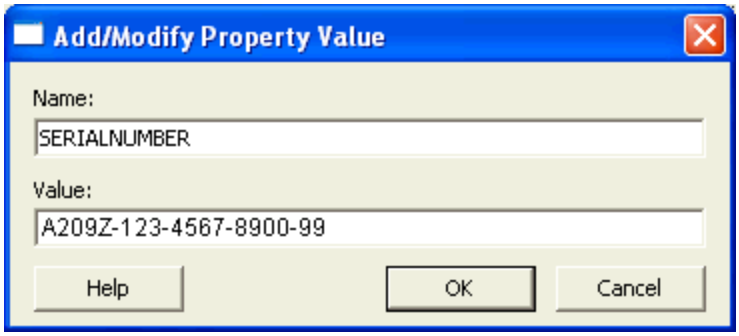


15. On the next several pages of the wizard, click Next on each, and proceed until you reach the Modify Setup Properties page. All the pages in between apply only to Microsoft Office.
    - Customize Default Application Settings page
    - Change Office User Settings page
    - Add/Remove Files page
    - Add/Remove Registry Entries page
    - Add, Modify, or Remove Shortcuts page
    - Identify Additional Servers page
    - Specify Office Security Settings page
    - Add Installations and Run Programs page

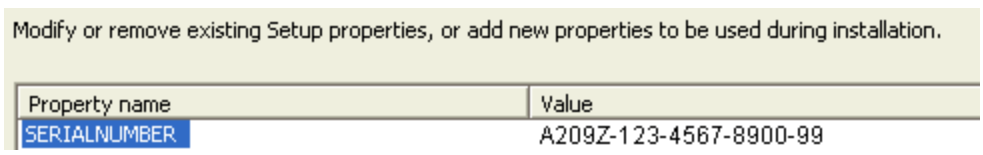
16. Use the Modify Setup Properties page, shown below, to add, modify, and set the MSI options of your custom installation.



17. Click the Add... button to display the Add/Modify Property Value dialog box, where you modify the MSI installation options. In this example, we add and set the SERIALNUMBER option.
18. In the following Add/Modify Property Value page, enter the new property name SERIALNUMBER and a valid serial number, then click OK:

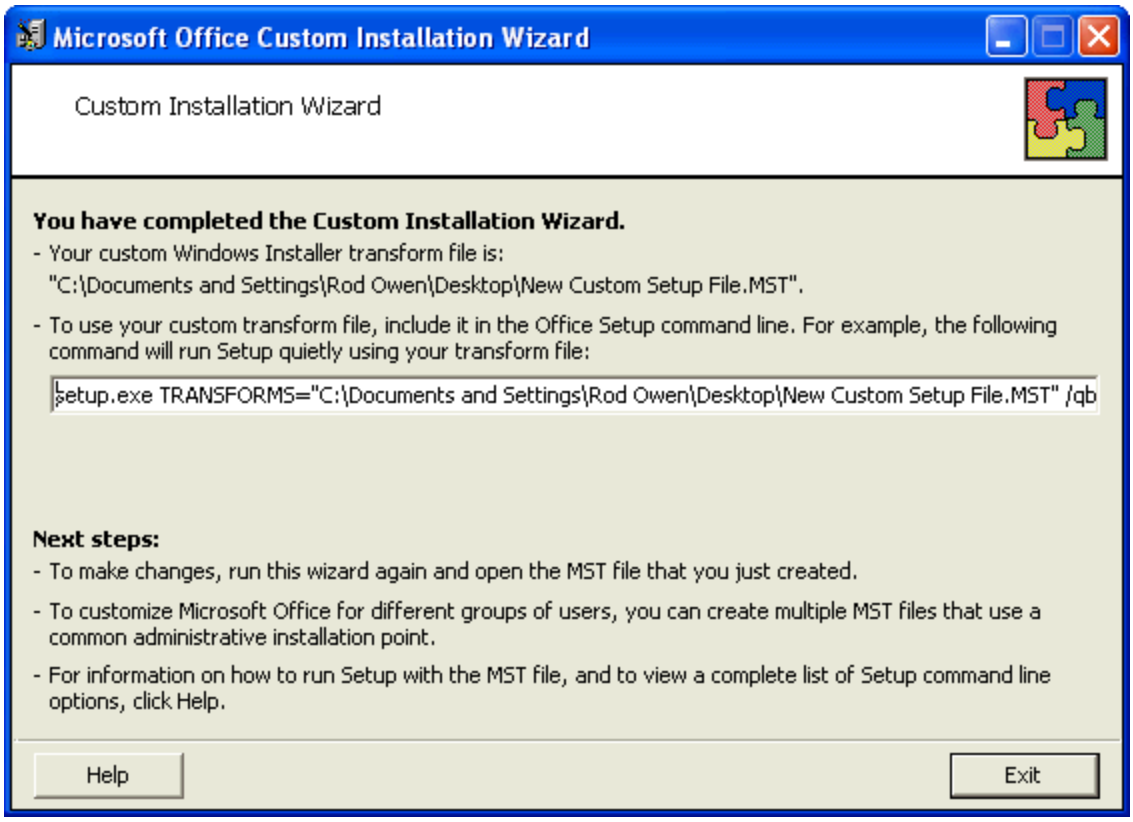


19. Note that the Modify Setup Properties page re-displays with the updated information. For example:



20. Continue adding or modifying other MSI options that apply for your environment. Once you are done, click Next.

21. On the Save Changes page, click Finish.
22. When the Custom Installation Wizard page appears, click Exit. This screen displays the location of Windows Installer transform (.MST file) that you created.



After you save changes, you can use the resulting .MST file to manage an installation through a Group Policy in Active Directory Services.

You are now ready to use the custom installer you created to install the product.

Installation using the Dragon command line

When you install Dragon 11 or greater , Dragon installs using the primary language for the product. You cannot install Dragon using a language that is different than the primary language. For example, when you install Dragon 11 or greater , Professional - English version, Dragon installs using the English language.

If you attempt to use the `/l` option with setup.exe to install Dragon 11 or greater using a non-primary language, the installation process uses the primary language for that edition of Dragon and ignores the `/l` option.

Perform the following steps to use the Dragon command line:

1. Open a command line window (Start > Run and enter cmd).
2. Insert the product DVD in the DVD drive, search the DVD for the path where the Dragon setup.exe is located, and switch directories to the path on the product DVD where the Dragon setup.exe is located.
3. Enter the following command line to install Dragon on this initial computer (ignore any errors you receive regarding the serial number, as it is not required for this in initial installation, unless you plan to dictate later):

```
setup.exe /s /v"INSTALLDIR=c:\Dragon11 /L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log /qn"
```

The /s option sets the silent option for the every .exe that setup.exe provides a wrapper for, including the vcruntime.exe service that setup.exe automatically installs for you, so that no GUI pops up.When you perform a silent installation of Dragon, the installation process does not display any messages. To view installation messages, administrators should view the setup log.

By contrast the /qn inside the quotation marks after /v sets the silent option for the Dragon installation.

The /v option introduces any series of msiexec.exe options you want to pass to the Windows installer, all enclosed in quotation marks after the /v, with no space allowed between the /v and the opening quotation mark. Among the options inside the quotation marks are:

- INSTALLDIR — Indicates the full path to where you want Dragon installed
- /L*v — (either upper or lowercase) Indicates the log file where messages about the installation should be written
- /qn — (Quiet mode—also called Silent mode—no GUI) Turns off the Dragon GUI

Caution: The first time you test any installation, you should not run it in Silent mode, because if you have neglected to provide information about a setting that does not have a default, you receive a GUI prompt for that information. You should initially pass the /L*v option because it runs the entire installation GUI. When the Welcome dialog appears, you can stop and look into the log file., where you can search for Command line to verify that all command line parameters are being incorporated. The line you find will have this format:

```
MSI (c) (##:##)[##:##:##:###] Command Line: <OPTION>=<value>
<OPTION>=<value> ...
```

The above command line is to install the primary language of the Dragon product.

For changes required to install another language, see Silent Installation with Language Other Than US English.

Logging errors and other messages

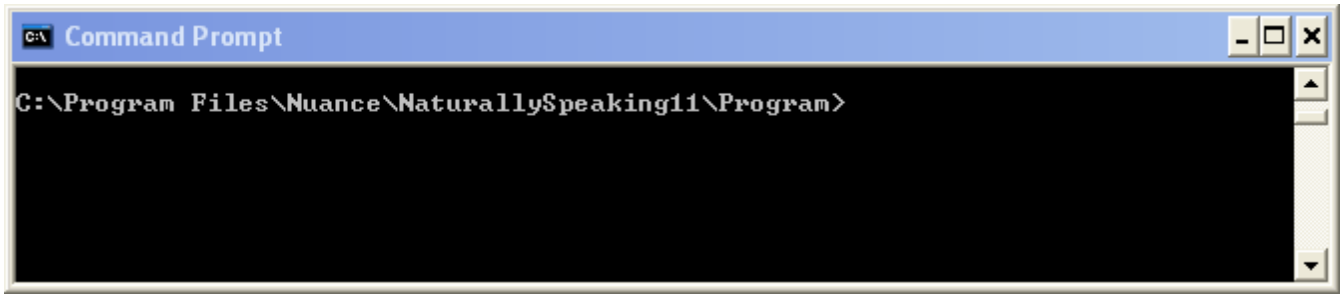
Sub-options for /L indicate the types of messages to send to the log:

Sub-option	Message type sent to log file
i	Status messages
w	Nonfatal warnings
e	All error messages
a	Start up actions
r	Action-specific records
u	User requests
c	Initial UI parameters
m	Out-of-memory or fatal exit information
o	Out-of-disk-space messages
p	Terminal properties
v	Verbose output
x	Extra debugging info (Windows Server 2000 only)
+	Append to existing log file
*	Wildcard. Log all info except v and x options
*vx	Log all info including v and x options

Running natspeak.exe to Set Options

When the installation completes, you then set up the configuration on this initial computer by running natspeak up to three times, in the steps that follow. All steps are optional; by skipping a step, you are choosing to accept the default values for the options applicable for associated options.

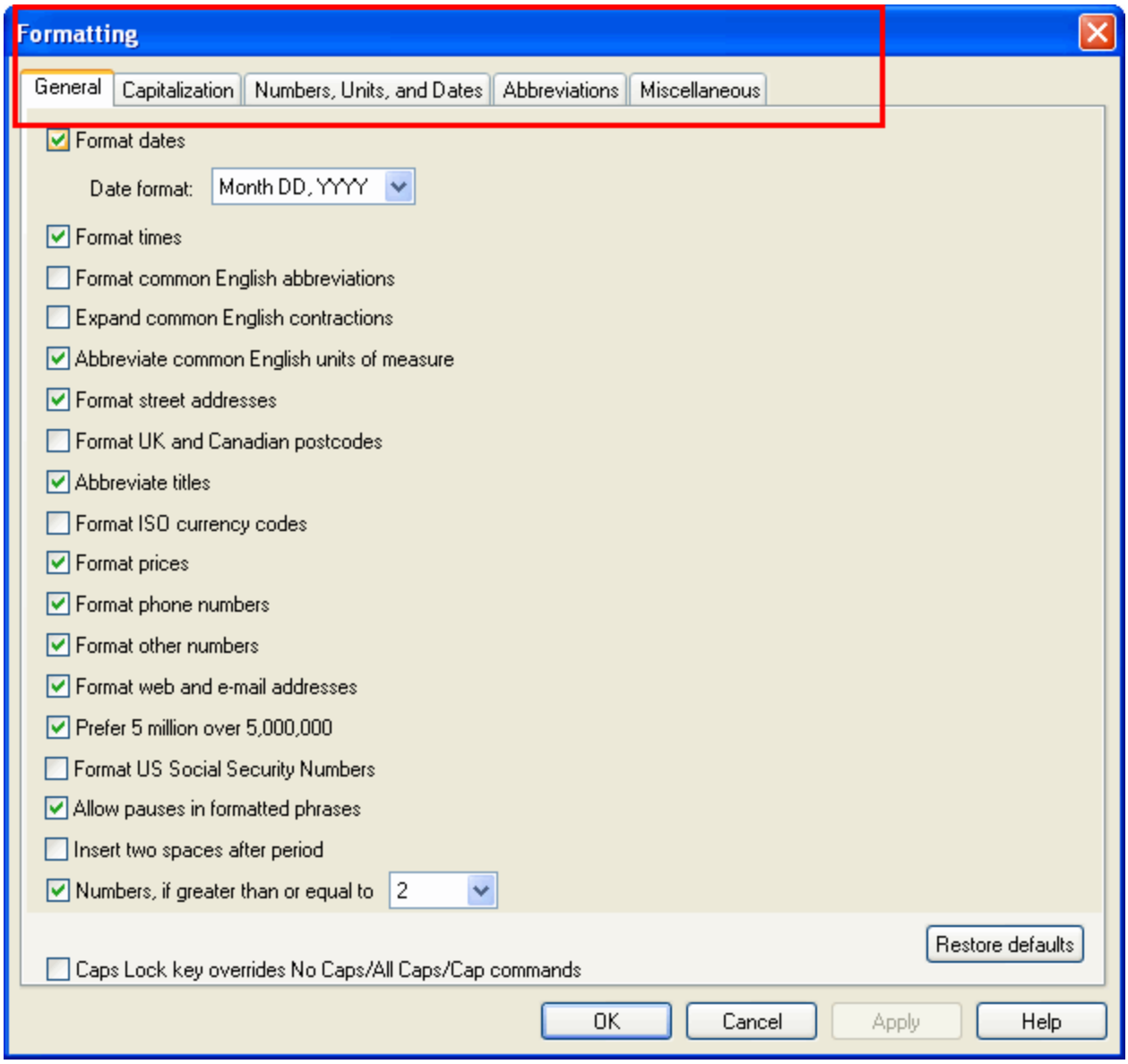
1. On a workstation PC where Dragon is installed, close Dragon if it is running.
2. From the Windows **Start** menu, select **All Programs** > **Accessories** > **Command Prompt** to open the Command Prompt window.
3. Switch to the Program directory. The default is:
   `C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program`



4. Enter the following natspeak command:
   `natspeak.exe /setdefaultsoptions`
5. When the Options dialog box appears, select the default options that should apply to all client installations and click OK. This dialog box is where you set up all the options under the various tabs (Correction, Command, and so on). In Dragon Medical, you can also program custom actions into the buttons on the PowerMic I and PowerMic II microphones.

   Note: Settings under the Playback/Text-to-Speech tab are not saved. To include Text-to-Speech as a feature of your installation, work with options in Summary: MSI Options for Installing Dragon Features/Advanced Options.

   Note: At least one supported third-party indexing/search software should be installed on the system before you install Dragon, or the Enable Desktop Search commands check box will not only be unchecked, but will not be available to be checked. Dragon supports Google Desktop and Microsoft Windows Search.
6. Enter another natspeak command:
   `natspeak.exe /setdefaultformattingoptions "US English | Large | General Medical"`
7. When the Auto-Formatting dialog box appears, select Auto-Formatting options to apply to all client installations and click OK.
   For example (Dragon Medical):



8. Enter a final natspeak command:
   `natspeak.exe /setdefaultadministrativeoptions`
9. When the dialog box appears, if you want to set up Roaming User Profiles, set the options under Roaming User Profile (to set the HTTP or HTTPS settings under the HTTP Settings or HTTPS Settings button, you must have either http:// or https:// in front of the network directory path); whether you have Roaming User Profiles or not, set the options under Miscellaneous and Scheduled Tasks tabs and click Apply for each; then, when you have set all the settings, click OK.
10. Dragon has saved the configuration you created with running natspeak.exe in the nsdefaults.ini and roamingdef.ini files (the roamingdef.ini file is created only if you set up Roaming User Profiles). You can find these .ini files under
    `C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\`.

    Note: If you do not find the nsdefaults.ini file in the sub-folders under All Users, navigate to

All Users.WINDOWS, or administrator, or any other Documents and Settings sub-folders for other users on this workstation until you locate the nsdefaults.ini file. It's possible that the workstation was configured so that a different "user" folder is the default for application data for Nuance and other applications.

These .ini files are now considered customized files, because they now they contain the custom settings that will be applied to each of the DNS client installations you deploy. Retrieve the nsdefaults.ini and roamingdef.ini files and copy them to a directory where you can access them from the other client computers. (If you did not run natspeak.exe on the command line, you do not find a roamingdef.ini file; in that case, you can use a roaming.ini file from an existing installation whose settings you'd like to replicate. If you did not change the Network Settings, you do not need a roamingdef.ini or roaming.ini file at all.)

11. When you have located the nsdefaults.ini file, verify that your option settings have been changed. Double-click the nsdefaults.ini file to open it in a text editor. You should see values defined for the options you changed.

    Example: If the Capitalize 'allergy' and 'allergies' as 'ALLERGY' and 'ALLERGIES' option has been turned on, the nsdefaults.ini file contains this statement:

```
;(ALLERGY_CAP) Capitalize "allergy" and "allergies" as "ALLERGY" and "ALLERGIES"
ALLERGY_CAP=1
```

12. Include the newly created nsdefaults.ini file in your MSI package to distribute the file to all user workstations where Dragon is installed.

For more on natspeak.exe command line options, refer to **natspeak Command Line Switches**.

You are now ready to install the same configuration you just established here onto other computers.

Note: If you are installing Dragon on more than one client computer and over a network, you can use the same .ini files with the MSI Installer (msiexec). You also use SMS Server or another server-based program that pushes the installation out to several clients at once. Even if you are installing from a server, you should run through the initial installation before you carry out the administrative installation. Then, for more information on installing from a server, proceed to **Overview of Pushing Client Installation from Server**.

Natspeak.exe command line reference

You can use command line options to modify the way that Dragon NaturallySpeaking or Dragon Medical starts up.

These switches are used in the following syntax:

natspeak /switch

where /switch is one or more switches from table below (each switch is a single word without spaces or hyphens):

Switch	Function
/diagnose	Runs Dragon in diagnostic mode to output info to Dragon.log file and exits.
/user <user>	Automatically loads the user profile.
/topic <topic>	Automatically loads the topic (Professional/Medical/Legal editions only).
/quick	Runs Dragon in QuickStart mode, a mode that starts Dragon without loading a user profile or any speech models on startup of your computer.
/SetDefaultOptions	Displays the Options dialog box.
/SetDefaultAdministrativeOptions	Displays the Administrative settings dialog box.
/SetDefaultFormattingOptions	Displays Auto-Formatting dialog box.
/SetDefaultFormattingOptions "US English | Large | General Medical"	Displays Auto-Formatting dialog with general and medical options.

Other Actions You Can Take on Command Line

When you perform a silent installation of Dragon, the installation process does not display any messages. To view installation messages, administrators should view the setup log.

Here are other (optional) actions you can take on the command line as part of a silent installation:

Note: In Dragon 11 or greater , the installation process does not present the QuickStart option. If you wish to enable this option, you can do so after Dragon is installed.

Additional Options for Silent Installations

- Modifying the Default Installation Directory
- Configuring Installation of Product Updates
- Suppressing Reboot of the computer After Installation
- Setting Dragon to Run in QuickStart Mode
- Installing Same Roaming User Profile Configuration on Additional computer(s)
- Silent Installation with Language Other Than US English

Additional Options with Extensive Settings for Silent Installations

- Revising Day/Time of Scheduled Tasks (Optional)
- Configuring Local or On-Demand Install of Vocabularies/Text-to-Speech (Optional)

Modifying Default Installation Directory

If you want to set an installation directory other than the default, pass INSTALLDIR="<full path to install>" on the command line (note that the quotation marks are required only if you have spaces in the path):

```
setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\"
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\" /L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log /qn"
```

Note: If the installation directory does not have spaces, note how the INSTALLDIR directory is designated in the command line:

```
setup.exe /v"INSTALLDIR=C:\Dragon11 ADDLOCAL=ALL"
```

If the installation directory has space(s), it is surrounded in quotation marks that are escaped out by having backslashes precede them (shown in bold):

```
setup.exe /v"INSTALLDIR=\"C:\NaturallySpeaking11\" ADDLOCAL=ALL"
```

Caution: The first time you try any installation, you should not run it in Silent mode, because if you have neglected to provide information about a setting that does not have a default, you receive a GUI prompt for that information.

Configuring Installation of Product Updates

If you want the individual client computer to download product updates to Dragon over the web, you would set the PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG option to 1 (option checks the check box). If you prefer to install the updates on the servers and later distribute them to client computers, set this option to 0 (unchecks the check box). If your enterprise does not install service packs provided by Nuance, Nuance recommends you set this flag to -1:

```
setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\"
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\"
PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1 /L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log /qn"
```

Suppressing Reboot of the computer After Installation

To suppress rebooting of the computer after installation of Dragon completes, you can pass Microsoft's REBOOT option set to ReallySuppress. Using this option also suppresses the reboot sometimes required by the installation of Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon, which setup.exe installs in the background. Using this option is highly recommended if you are executing a silent installation (if system updates are pending, rebooting is required for DNS to work normally).

```
REBOOT=ReallySuppress
```

The altered command line would look like this:

```
setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\"
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\" /qn
PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1 REBOOT=ReallySuppress
/L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log /qn"
```

Setting Dragon to Run in QuickStart Mode

To set Dragon to QuickStart mode and create a shortcut for Dragon in the Windows Startup folder, set the QUICKSTART option to 1:

```
QUICKSTART=1
```

The altered command line would look like this:

```
setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\"
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\"
PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1 REBOOT=ReallySuppress QUICKSTART=1
/L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log /qn"
```

Installing the same Roaming User Profile Configuration on Additional computer(s)

Use the roamingdef.ini file you created during the initial installation as the input for the ROAMINGUSERINI option in this format (be sure to use the full path to the file when you pass the option):

```
ROAMINGUSERINI=\"C:\<full_path>\roamingdef.ini\"
```

The default is empty (no .ini file will be used). Include the ROAMINGUSERINI option in the installation command line:

```
setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\"
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\"
ROAMINGUSERINI=\"C:\<full_path>\roamingdef.ini\"
/L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log /qn"
```

The example above assumes that the full path has spaces in it, so it has escaped out quotation marks around the option value. After you have completed the installation, verify that all options are correctly set on the client computer.

Silent Installation with Language Other Than US English

When you perform a silent installation of Dragon, the installation process does not display any messages. To view installation messages, administrators should view the setup log.

By default Dragon installs in the language that matches the language of your operating system; to install it in another language, you must purchase that kind of license, then use the /L option followed by a numeric language ID, outside the quotation marks:

```
setup.exe /L1031 /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\"
DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\" /qn"
```

Revising Day/Time of Scheduled Tasks (Optional)

This section describes how to modify the schedule for Dragon tasks to later take place on each dictation client computer by passing particular options in a command line installation. This section is a continuation of Installation using the Dragon command line. When you finish this section, you might want to proceed to Configuring Local or On-Demand Install of Vocabularies/Text-to-Speech (Optional).

Note: You take the following actions on the client computer to install Dragon on client PCs, not on the computer where you installed the initial installation and configured default option settings for users.

You can include an additional option on the command line to indicate you want on any or all of the following tasks carried out on a particular schedule:

- Acoustic model optimization (ACO) — This task optimizes the acoustic files used to recognize words that the user trains and speaks. You can set a particular date and time for this optimization to occur. When a speaker is new to Dragon, you might want to run the optimization more often, after the speaker has worked with Dragon for a while.
- Language model optimization (LMO) — This task optimizes the language model (vocabulary files) used to help recognize words that the user speaks. The model incorporates data from the user's speech into the language model he or she is using, ultimately customizing the model for that user profile.
- Data Collection (DC) — This task automatically collects data that helps improve Dragon's ability to recognize speech. You can choose to allow this data to be sent back to Nuance over the Internet on a particular schedule or choose not to send the data. This process does not collect your personal information.

You turn on/off the above tasks and set the schedule for those you turn on by passing an option called PERIODIC_TASK to the MSI installer. You set PERIODIC_TASK to a string containing short acronyms for the types of tasks, aco | lmo | dc, separated by vertical bars. If you do not pass the acronym for the feature, that feature is set to its default.

After the acronyms for the tasks to schedule, the string for PERIODIC_TASK should include the administrator login and password, then the schedules that correspond to the acronyms, in the order that they occur in the string. The schedules use three-letter weekday abbreviations and 24-hour time with two digits for the hour and two for the minute, separated by a colon. The two schedules are separated by vertical bars and presented in the same order as their corresponding acronyms. While the acronyms for the tasks are separated from each other by vertical bars, semicolons separate the group of tasks from the admin user name, password, and group of schedules.

For instance, to retain the default schedule for data collection and modify schedules for acoustic model optimization to Mondays at 1 AM and language model optimization to Mondays at 6 AM, you would set PERIODIC_TASK as follows:

```
PERIODIC_TASK="aco|lmo;admin;pswd;Mon, 01:00|Mon, 06:00"
```

An installation command line including this task setting option might look like the following:

```
setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\"
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\"
ROAMINGUSERINI=\"C:\<full_path>\roamingdef.ini\"
PERIODIC_TASK="aco|lmo;admin;pswd;Mon, 01:00|Mon, 06:00"
/L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log /qn"
```

For more information on the PERIODIC_TASK option, refer to MSI Options for Roaming User Profile, Tuning, and Data Collection Setup.

Configuring Local or On-Demand Install of Vocabularies/Text-to-Speech (Optional)

This section describes how to enable Roaming User Profiles in a command line installation and is a continuation of Installation using the Dragon command line.

Note: You take the following actions on the client computer where you want to install Dragon, not on the computer where you carry out the initial installation.

Installing only particular vocabularies locally, others on-demand

When you install Dragon or Dragon Medical on a client computer as outlined in Installation using the Dragon command line, by default you install all the available vocabularies locally.

If you do not want all of those vocabularies to be installed locally, but to instead have them installed only if/when a user attempts to deploy a particular vocabulary, you can indicate that fact on the installation command line by adding the ADDLOCAL option and setting it to the names of the vocabularies to install locally. For example, say you want to do a partial installation of Dragon Medical and you only want to install the General Medical vocabulary and the Radiology vocabulary, you set ADDLOCAL to NatSpeak, ENUMedical, ENURadiology, and the command line would appear as follows (NatSpeak must be in the setting of ADDLOCAL, unless you set ADDLOCAL to ALL; otherwise, the installation fails):

```
setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\"
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\" PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1
REBOOT=ReallySuppress ADDLOCAL=NatSpeak,ENUMedical,ENURadiology
/L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log /qn"
```

Note: There must not be any spaces between the arguments specified for ADDLOCAL.

If you want other vocabularies to be available, you set ADDLOCAL to ALL and set the ADVERTISE property to a list of additional vocabularies. The command line might look like the following:

```
setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\"
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\"
PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1 REBOOT=ReallySuppress ADDLOCAL=ALL
ADVERTISE=ENUCardiology,ENUEmergency,ENUGastroenterology
/L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log /qn"
```

Separate the features/vocabularies for ADDLOCAL with commas, but do not put spaces in the list. The names you must use for the vocabularies consist of a prefix for the language, then the

name of the vocabulary, such as ENU for English and Cardiology to form ENUCardiology. For a list of the exact names for features/vocabularies you can assign to ADDLOCAL or ADVERTISE on the command line, refer to MSI Options for Installing Dragon Features/Advanced Options.

Installing Text-to-Speech feature

To install Text-to-Speech locally, you would include the feature in the list of features for ADDLOCAL; for instance, you would add TTSENX for Text-to-Speech in English:

```
setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\"
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\"
PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1 REBOOT=ReallySuppress
ADDLOCAL=TTSENX,NatSpeak,ENUMedical
/L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log /qn"
```

Links to Summaries of MSI Options

For more information, see these summary topics:

- MSI Options Specific to Dragon.
- Feature Variables to Set Through the ADDLOCAL or ADVERTISE Properties
- MSI Options for Roaming User Profile, Tuning, and Data Collection Setup

Upgrading Your Dragon Installation from the Command Line

There are two command line upgrade scenarios:

- Major Upgrade—Upgrading from Version 9, 9.x, 10, or 10.x to Dragon 11 or greater .
- Minor Upgrade—Upgrading to a higher point release within the same edition and version of Dragon. For example, upgrading from Dragon 11.0 to Dragon 11.x.

Note: You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported

All of these types of upgrades can either display the GUI or be silent (not display the GUI), except the minor upgrade, which does not support the silent option. Upgrades to Dragon 11 or greater are only supported for Dragon 9.x and 10.x.

When you perform a silent installation of Dragon, the installation process does not display any messages. To view installation messages, administrators should view the setup log.

An administrator cannot upgrade User Profiles with the command line installation. For more information on upgrading Roaming User Profiles, see the section below. If User Profiles are not Roaming User Profiles, administrators run the **User Profile Upgrade Wizard** after installation completes.

Upgrading Roaming User Profiles

Before upgrade User Profiles, administrators must upgrade Roaming User Profiles in the Roaming User Profile directory. Afterwards, administrators can upgrade Dragon on the client computers and the Roaming User Profiles become available as soon as the upgrade is complete.

See "Upgrading User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater " in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

Background on Roaming User Profiles

Before administrators upgrade Roaming User Profiles from Dragon NaturallySpeaking or Dragon Medical 9.x or 10.x to Dragon 11 or greater , they need to recall some basics about how the Roaming feature works: Each Dragon user has a master Roaming User Profile that can be opened from any networked computer where Dragon is installed. The master Roaming User Profiles are stored on a network location. When a master Roaming User Profile is opened from that central network location, Dragon transfers a copy of that User Profile to the Local Roaming User Profile on the computer where the user is dictating.

Recommended Approach

Since the Local Roaming User Profile is a copy of the user data taken from the master Roaming User Profile, it does not make any sense to directly upgrade the Local Roaming User Profile when upgrading the local Dragon installation.

Instead, administrators should install Dragon 11 or greater directly on the network computer where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located and upgrade those Master Roaming User Profiles directly. After upgrading the master Roaming User Profiles, administrators can then proceed to upgrade end-user systems that deploy the Roaming feature.

Notes:

- Even though the Dragon 11 or greater **User Profile Upgrade Wizard** supports both mapped drives and UNC paths, Nuance strongly recommends upgrading the Master Roaming User Profiles on a drive on a computer where Dragon 11 or greater is locally installed. Nuance does not recommend upgrading the Master Roaming User Profiles across a network to either a mapped drive or UNC path; upgrading over a network will take a undetermined length of time. In addition, the **User Profile Upgrade Wizard** does not support upgrading User Profiles over an HTTP connection.
- Upgrading the master Roaming User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater leaves the 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles unchanged, so that the users in the network can run Dragon 9.x or 10.1 while the administrator plans the upgrade.
- If upgrading from Dragon version 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11 or greater , version 8.x or earlier custom words and commands can be re-used in Dragon 11 or greater :

  1. In Dragon 8.x or earlier, export the custom words and commands
  2. In Dragon 11 or greater , create a new User Profile
  3. In Dragon 11 or greater , import the custom words and commands

  See the Dragon Help for information on exporting and importing custom words and commands.

Step-by-Step Process for Upgrading Roaming User Profiles

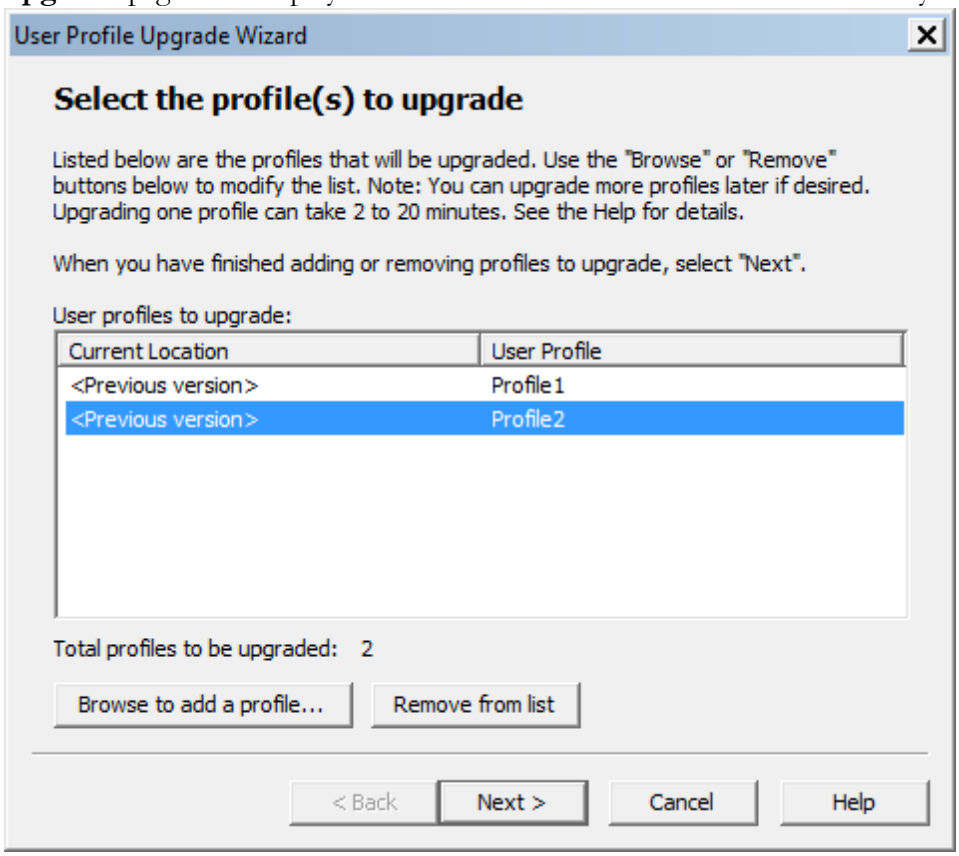
1. Plan to upgrade the master Roaming User Profiles at a time when they are not being opened by end users, for example during the night or on a weekend. Nuance recommends backing-up User Profiles before upgrading them.
2. Install Dragon 11 or greater on the computer where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located. If that is not possible, Nuance recommends that you install Dragon 11 or greater on a separate computer where you will perform the upgrades.
   OR
   If unable to install Dragon where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located, Nuance recommends administrators:
   - Install Dragon 11 or greater on a separate computer where they will perform the upgrades.
   - Copy the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles from the network location to the computer where Dragon 11 or greater is installed.
   - Upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles on the computer where Dragon 11 or greater is installed.
   - Copy the upgraded Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles to a network accessible directory on the original network location.

   In Dragon 11 or greater or earlier, if the upgrade installation displays an option to upgrade existing User Profiles to work with this installation, ignore the option, as it does not affect Roaming User Profiles. Administrators manually run the **User Profile Upgrade Wizard** later.
3. On the end-user systems where the users dictate, save and close any open User Profiles on each Dragon 9.x or 10.x system that uses the Roaming feature.
   If there is no time when all of the Roaming User Profiles are not in use (for example, in a hospital where physicians use Dragon during a night shift), administrators can upgrade different groups of Roaming User Profiles at different times.
4. On the central network location that stores Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles, back up the master Roaming User Profiles to a separate location by using any system backup utility that is implemented at your facility.
5. On the central network location that stores Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles, create a new directory to store the upgraded Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles.
   Always be sure the upgraded User Profiles are in a different location from the current User Profiles. If end users see two versions of each User Profile, they may become confused when they try to open a User Profile. Nuance recommends storing User Profiles, from different versions of Dragon, in different locations.
6. If Dragon 11 or greater is not installed on the computer where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located, create a directory on the local computer where Dragon 11 or greater is installed. The directory stores all the Master Roaming User Profiles you plan to

upgrade. Copy the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles from the network location to this directory.

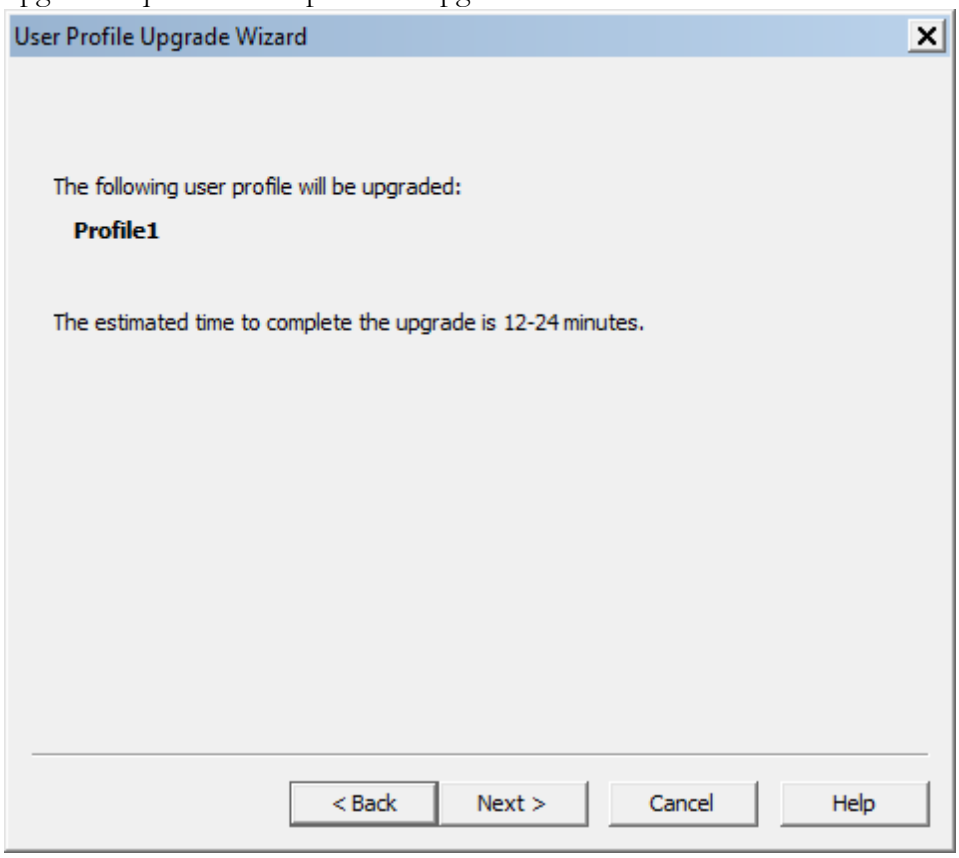
7. On the administrator system where you upgrade the Master Roaming profiles to Dragon 11 or greater , start Dragon and make sure the Roaming feature is turned off.
   To turn off the Roaming feature:
   - Close any open User Profiles.
   - Click **Tools** > **Administrative Settings** on the menu to display the Administrative Settings dialog box.
   - On the **Roaming** tab, make sure **Enable** is not selected.
8. Close Dragon.
9. On the computer where both the 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming profiles and Dragon 11 or greater are installed, select ***Start*** > ***Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking Tools*** > ***Upgrade User Profiles***. The User Profile Upgrade Wizard opens.

   If you do not turn off the Roaming feature in the Administrative Settings dialog box before attempting to start the User Upgrade Wizard, you see an error message stating that you cannot upgrade a Roaming User Profile. If you see the message, go back to the Administrative Settings dialog and make sure the **Enabled** check box is not checked.
10. On the **Select the profile(s) to upgrade** page, click **Browse to add a profile**... to select the location of the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles. The **Select the profile(s) to upgrade** page now displays a list of User Profiles in the selected directory:



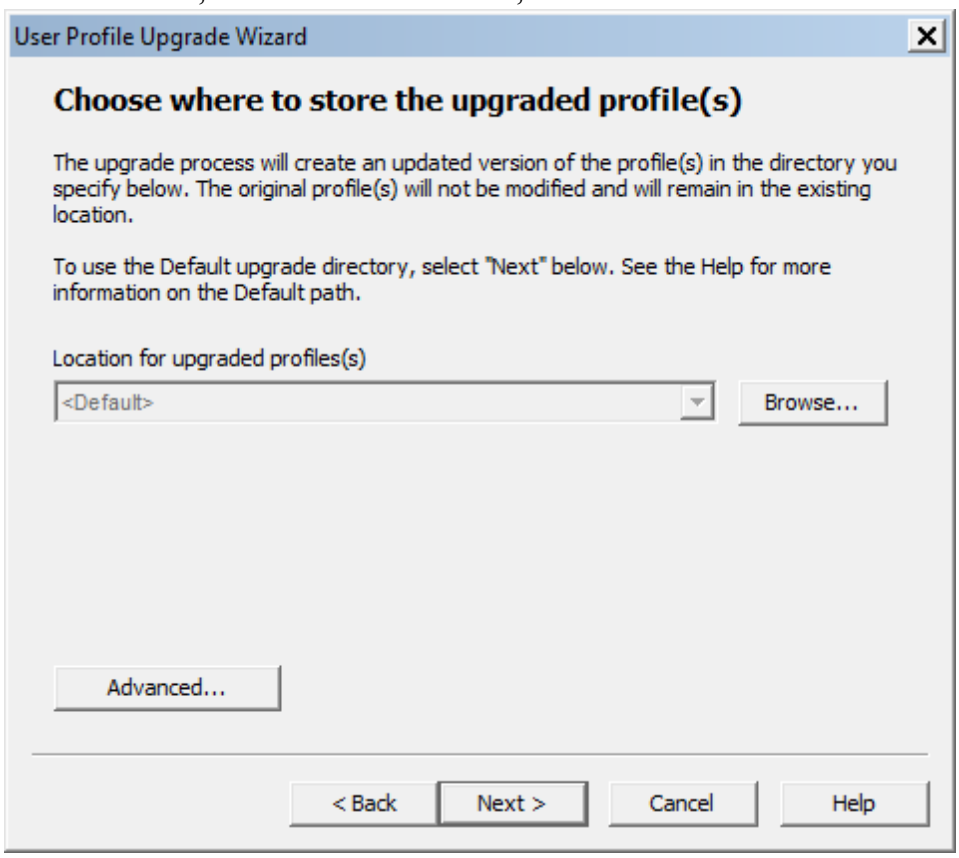
Continue to add User Profiles from other local locations or use the **Remove from list** button to remove specific User Profiles. Click **Next** to continue.

11. If you choose to upgrade only one User Profile, the wizard displays the number of minutes the upgrade requires to complete the upgrade.



12. If you upgrade a UK User Profile, the wizard displays a page that lets you select a region for the profile.
13. On the **Choose where to store the upgraded profile(s)** page, in the **Location for upgraded profile(s)** text box, choose the local location you previously created to contain the upgraded Dragon 11 or greater master Roaming User Profiles. If a location is not visible, click the

Browse button, find the correct location, and click **Next**.



14. The **Begin profile upgrading** page displays the number of User Profiles that the wizard is prepared to upgrade.
    Click **Begin upgrading** to start the upgrade process. The upgrade process can take 2-3 minutes or more per User Profile, depending on the speed of the computer system and the speed of the network. Click **Stop** at any time to interrupt this process. The upgrade process creates new master Roaming User Profiles in the destination you selected.
15. Click **Finish** to complete the upgrading process and exit the **User Profile Upgrade Wizard**. The **User Profile Upgrade Wizard** renames Dragon 11 or greater master Roaming User Profile as follows: `<name> (v11)`. For example, Dragon copies and renames a 10.x Master Roaming User Profile named *roaminguser1* to *roaminguser1 (v11)* when the profile upgrades to Dragon 11 or greater . Dragon does not change the 10.x Master Roaming User Profile named *roaminguser1*.
16. (Optional) If you cannot install Dragon where the original Master Roaming User Profiles are located and those User Profiles were copied to another computer where Dragon 11 or greater was installed, copy the upgraded Master Roaming User Profiles back to the new network-accessible directory that you created to store them.
17. Since the **User Profile Upgrade Wizard** leaves the Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles unchanged and in their original network location, the Dragon 9.x and 10.x systems can continue to use the Roaming feature until you upgrade the systems to Dragon 11 or greater . Follow the steps in "Major and Minor Upgrades: Silent Upgrade" and be sure to enable the Roaming feature. In the Network Directories settings, set the correct path to the upgraded Roaming User Profiles.
18. Run Dragon on the end-user system and open a User Profile.

If upgrading from Dragon version 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11 or greater , Dragon 8.x or earlier custom words and commands can be re-used in Dragon 11 or greater :

1. In Dragon 8.x or earlier, export the custom words and commands
2. In Dragon 11 or greater , create a new User Profile
3. In Dragon 11 or greater , import the custom words and commands

See the Dragon Help for information on exporting and importing custom words and commands.

Major and Minor Upgrades: Silent Upgrade

To upgrade from Dragon Version 10.x to Dragon 11 or greater (major upgrade), you can use either msiexec.exe or setup.exe. You can carry out this installation with a GUI or silently. The procedure presented here shows how to upgrade silently using msiexec.exe.

Note: A Minor upgrade involves upgrading to a higher point release within the same edition and version of Dragon. For example, upgrading from Dragon 11.0 to Dragon 11.x.

You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported

Overview of Silent Upgrade

If your environment requires that you perform a silent installation and use msiexec.exe, rather than setup.exe, take these high-level actions in this order:

- Uninstall the older version of Dragon.
- Version 10 only: Uninstall the older version of Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon.
- Install the new version of Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon. Note that there are two versions of vcruntime.exe, one for 32-bit Windows and another for 64-bit Windows. Use the appropriate version for your enterprise.
- For major upgrades only: Perform an initial installation of the new version of Dragon on a single computer and establish the configuration you want to use by calling natspeak.exe on the command line and passing it these options:
    - /setdefaultoptions
    - /setdefaultformattingoptions (to set only the general Auto-Formatting options)
    - /setdefaultformattingoptions "US English | Large | General Medical" (to set both the general and medical Auto-Formatting options)
    - /setdefaultadministrativeoptions

When you run the Dragon command line installation silently, the msiexec.exe installer automatically retains User Profiles from the previous version. Later individual users can upgrade their local (but not Roaming User) profiles when they start Dragon. (For updating Roaming User Profiles, see Before You Upgrade.)

When you perform a silent installation or upgrade of Dragon, the installation process does not display any messages. To view installation messages, administrators should view the setup log.

GUIDs for uninstalling

The table below lists GUIDs that you pass to the /x option of msiexec for each version of Dragon and Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon. Make sure to use the /x option with the GUID.

Products and versions	GUID
DNS V11	{EFFA53BC-8C04-2E21-3D90-A13B1697B0CA}
DNS V10 and 10.x	{E7712E53-7A7F-46EB-AA13-70D5987D30F2}
DNS V9 and 9.x	{DDDD90B2-80F2-413A-8A8E-38C5076A7DBA}
VC-Runtime 32-bit	{4A5A427F-BA39-4BF0-9A47-9999FBE60C9F}
VC-Runtime 64-bit	{4A5A427F-BA39-4BF0-9A47-7777FBE60C9F}

Step-by-Step Upgrade Process

You must follow these steps to set options for your users:

1. If you are upgrading from a previous version of Dragon, copy the nsdefaults.ini and roamingdef.ini files to a central location so they can accessed later.
2. Open a command line window (**Start** > **Run** and enter **cmd**).
3. Uninstall Dragon Version 10.x with msiexec.exe by passing the installer the /x option followed by the old version's GUID and the /qn option to turn off any GUI.

   The correct GUID for each Version you can upgrade to Dragon 11 or greater on the command line is shown in the adjacent table and the example below uses the Dragon 9.x GUID:

   ```
   msiexec /x {DDDD90B2-80F2-413A-8A8E-38C5076A7DBA}
   /L*v "C:\updatelog.log" /qn
   ```

   msiexec automatically retains User Profiles when you use the silent option.

   Caution: The first time you try any upgrade, you should not run it in Silent mode, because if you have neglected to provide required information, you then receive a GUI prompt for that information.
4. For upgrading from Dragon 9.x, skip this step. If you are upgrading from Dragon 11 or 11.x (minor upgrade), uninstall the old version of Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon with msiexec.exe by passing the installer the /x option followed by the old version's GUID and the /qn option to turn off any GUI. The example below shows uninstalling the 32-bit Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon:

   ```
   msiexec /x {4A5A427F-BA39-4BF0-9A47-9999FBE60C9F}
   /L*v "C:\updatelog.log" /qn
   ```

   To uninstall the 64-bit version, use the alternative GUID shown in the adjacent table.
5. Be sure you have the Dragon serial number (or the group serial number, if you are upgrading Dragon on multiple networked computers).
6. Be sure all mapped drives you plan to use are mapped on individual client computers where you are distributing the upgrade.
7. Install any pending Windows updates on clients and reboot as needed before continuing.

8. Insert the product DVD in the drive and search the DVD for the path where the Dragon setup.exe is located.
9. Install the new version of Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon by entering the full path to vcruntime.exe on a 32-bit system or vcruntime_x64.exe on a 64-bit system:

   ```
   ISSetupPrerequisites\VCRuntime\vcruntime.exe /S /v"qn /l*v %TEMP%\vc-
   runtime.log"
   ```

   OR

   ```
   ISSetupPrerequisites\VCRuntime\vcruntime_x64.exe /S /v"qn /l*v %TEMP%\vc-
   runtime.log"
   ```

   If you are installing Version 10, you have only the 32-bit version and use a slightly different path:

   ```
   ISSetupPrerequisites\{1FAD9007-0FF1-4B05-B7CE-ADE12FB7DEC5}\vcruntime.exe
   /S
   /v"qn /l*v %TEMP%\vcruntime.log"
   ```

10. If you are performing a minor upgrade, skip this step. If you are performing a major upgrade from Dragon 9.x, perform an initial installation on a single computer where you configure the settings of user profile options, Auto-Formatting options, and administrative settings. You can follow the instructions in Install the Same Configuration on Additional computers under Installation using the Dragon command line.
11. Be sure you can access the .ini files from the old installation (minor upgrades) or the .ini files you just created in the initial installation (major upgrades) from all computers you will be upgrading. (Or copy the files to a local path on the client computer where you are about to upgrade.)
12. For a major upgrade, install the new version of Dragon with msiexec.exe by passing the installer the /i option followed by the name of the Dragon .msi file and options like those shown in the sample below:

    ```
    msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
    SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-## REBOOT=ReallySuppress
    INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11"
    DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
    ROAMINGUSERINI="C:\<full_path>\roamingdef.ini"
    REMOVEOLDPROD=1 /L*v "C:\logfile.log" /qn
    ```

    To ensure that the entire old version of the product is removed, you pass REMOVEOLDPROD=1 (major upgrades only, not minor upgrades) so that the process removes the old version of Dragon before installing the new. In addition, you should be sure to provide the full path to each .ini file you are using.
13. For a minor upgrade, install the new version of Dragon with msiexec.exe the same way as you would the major upgrade, only passing both REINSTALL or REINSTALLMODE options, as shown in the sample below. Here REINSTALL is set to **ALL** and REINSTALLMODE is set to **vemus**, where /v indicates to reinstall from the source (reupdating cache), **e** indicates to install the newer file if one is available, **mu** means to rewrite the registry settings, and **s** means to

reinstall all shortcuts and recache all icons. For more information on the REINSTALL and REINSTALLMODE settings, refer to MSI Options for Installing Dragon Features/Advanced Options.

Here is a typical minor upgrade installation line:

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
REBOOT=ReallySuppress
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11"
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
ROAMINGUSERINI="C:\<full_path>\roamingdef.ini"
REINSTALL=ALL REINSTALLMODE=vamus
/L*v "C:\logfile.log" /qn
```

Caution: If you do not pass the REINSTALL and REINSTALLMODE options, the minor upgrade will fail.

Using setup.exe for Upgrades

When installing both major and minor upgrades, the setup.exe installer automatically installs Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon before installing Dragon.

Note: A Minor upgrade involves upgrading to a higher point release within the same edition and version of Dragon. For example, upgrading from Dragon 11.0 to Dragon 11.x.

You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported

Although the upgrade does not migrate forward the configuration and Roaming User Profile settings from the earlier version, you can reuse the nsdefaults.ini and roamingdef.ini files you used to install Dragon 11 or greater . You can also create new .ini files or update existing ones.

When you run setup.exe with a GUI to install a minor upgrade, setup.exe can detect when a previous version of Dragon exists on a target computer. Once it detects a previous version, setup.exe runs the rest of your installation in minor upgrade mode, automatically overwriting older files with newer files and adding any missing files. .

Using setup.exe for Silent Upgrades

If you are upgrading a previous version of Dragon, you must use the REINSTALL=ALL option and REINSTALLMODE set to the sub-options that indicate which files to reinstall, usually REINSTALLMODE=vamus. If you did not originally install in the default location, the INSTALLDIR option is also required. Here is the command line using setup.exe:

To upgrade silently with setup.exe, you pass the /s option, then pass REINSTALL or REINSTALLMODE options. When you perform a silent installation of Dragon, the installation process does not display any messages. To view installation messages, administrators should view the setup log.

```
setup.exe /s /v"/i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
REBOOT=ReallySuppress
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\\Dragon11\"
DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\"
ROAMINGUSERINI=\"C:\<full_path>\roamingdef.ini\"
REINSTALL=ALL REINSTALLMODE=vamus
/L*v C:\logfile.log /qn"
```

Step-by-Step Command Line Installation with msiexec.exe

Another way to install Dragon from the command line on several dictation client computers is to use the msiexec.exe program from Microsoft. You are required to use msiexec.exe instead of setup.exe if you are installing Dragon from a server across a network to a single or multiple computers.

In the sections that follow, you carry out these two tasks:

- Install Dragon on Initial computer and Establish Configuration
- Install Same Configuration on Additional computer(s)

Finding the MSI Installer on the Dragon DVD

The compiled ***MSI*** file is located on your installation DVD. The files for each edition are named:

- *Dragon NaturallySpeaking (all editions)*or *Dragon Medical*: Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi

You can double click on one of these ***.msi*** files to start the InstallShield Wizard; however, to instead take advantage of available command line options, you can pass the file name as the application to install to the ***msiexec.exe*** command using the **/i** option:

```
msiexec.exe /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking11.msi"
```

Install Dragon on Initial computer and Establish Configuration

Follow the steps outlined under Installation using the Dragon command line.

Then return here and continue with the next section to install the same configuration on individual client computers using msiexec.exe instead of setup.exe.

Install Same Configuration on Additional computer(s)

If you chose Enable Desktop Search Commands on the Commands tab during the initial installation, you must install Google Desktop or Microsoft Windows Search before you install Dragon; otherwise, that option does not take effect.

1. Be sure you can access the .ini files you created in the previous procedure from the computer you will be installing on or copy the files to a local path on the client computer where you are about to install Dragon.
2. Be sure you have the Dragon serial number (or the group serial number, if you are installing Dragon to multiple computers on a network).
3. Be sure all mapped drives you plan to use are mapped on individual client computers where you are distributing the installation.
4. Install any pending Windows updates/reboot the computer.

5. Open a command line window by selecting **Start** > **Run** and entering **cmd**.
6. Insert the product DVD in the DVD drive and search the DVD for the path where the Dragon **setup.exe** file is located.
7. In the command window, switch to the ISSetupPrerequisites\VCRuntime\ directory inside the directory of the executable for Dragon. (If you are installing Version 10, the path to switch to is ISSetupPrerequisites\{1FAD9007-0FF1-4B05-B7CE-ADE12FB7DEC5} .)
8. On the command line, run the installation of Visual C++ Runtime (requires 4.08 MB of disk space to install):

   ```
   vcruntime.exe
   ```

   The Choose Setup Language dialog box appears asking you to select a language for the installation. After you select the language, an initialization GUI briefly displays, then the InstallShield wizard pops up. To disable the dialog box that requests the language, pass the /S option (see more options below). To install vcruntime.exe without seeing either the Choose Language Setup dialog or the InstallShield wizard, you should execute the command line shown here for 32-bit Windows:

   ```
   vcruntime.exe /S /v"/qn /l*v %TEMP%\vcruntime.log"
   ```

   Or the command line shown here for 64-bit Windows:

   ```
   vcruntime_x64.exe /S /v"/qn /l*v %TEMP%\vcruntime.log"
   ```

   Caution: The first time you try any installation, you should not run it in Silent mode, because if you have neglected to provide required information, you then receive a GUI prompt for that information.
9. On your product DVD, locate the compiled .msi file for the edition of Dragon you want to install and switch to that directory.
10. Retrieve the customized nsdefaults.ini and roamingdef.ini files from the computer where carried out the initial installation.
11. To install Dragon, enter the following command line, using the /i option also using the /qn option to install the product in Quiet mode, where no GUI appears. You also pass the Dragon serial number for the SERIALNUMBER option, the full path to the nsdefaults.ini file for the DEFAULTSINI option, and the full path to the roamindef.ini file for the ROAMINGUSERINI option:

    ```
    msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
    SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
    DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
    ROAMINGUSERINI="C:\<full_path>\roamingdef.ini"
    /L*v "C:\Logs\logfile.log" /qn
    ```

Notes:

- For an administrative installation, you pass the /a option to msiexec rather than the /i option. You also need to pass the TARGETDIR option instead of the INSTALLDIR option.

- The first time you test this installation, you should pass /q rather than /qn so that if you have neglected to provide information about a setting that does not have a default, you receive a prompt asking for that information.

The bolded portion of the preceding command line is included so that if something goes wrong during the installation, you receive messages about it. You pass /L and a series of sub-options to have the installation process log errors and other types of messages related to the process. (You can then send the log file to Nuance Technical Support should any issues arise.)

Here are other optional actions you can take on the command line that link you to further instructions, below:

Additional Options for Installations with msiexec.exe

Note: In Dragon 11 or greater , the installation process does not present the QuickStart option. If you wish to enable this option, you can do so after Dragon is installed.

When you perform a silent installation of Dragon, the installation process does not display any messages. To view installation messages, administrators should view the setup log.

Additional Options for Silent Installations

- Modifying the Default Installation Directory
- Configuring Installation of Product Updates
- Suppressing Reboot of computer After Installation
- Setting Dragon to QuickStart Mode
- Installing Same Roaming User Profile Configuration on Additional computer(s)

Additional Options with Extensive Settings for Silent Installations

- Installing Some Vocabularies Locally/Others Only On Demand
- Installing Text-to-Speech Feature
- Reinstalling Dragon with Particular Set of Features
- Setting Day/Time of Scheduled Tasks

Additionally, you can launch the Online Registration Form After Installation

Additional Options for Silent Installations

Note: In Dragon 11 or greater , the installation process does not present the QuickStart option. If you wish to enable this option, you can do so after Dragon is installed.

When you perform a silent installation of Dragon, the installation process does not display any messages. To view installation messages, administrators should view the setup log.

Additional Options for Silent Installations

- Modifying the Default Installation Directory
- Configuring Installation of Product Updates
- Suppressing Reboot of computer After Installation
- Setting Dragon to QuickStart Mode
- Installing Same Roaming User Profile Configuration on Additional computer(s)

Additional Options with Extensive Settings for Silent Installations

- Installing Some Vocabularies Locally/Others Only On Demand
- Installing Text-to-Speech Feature
- Reinstalling Dragon with Particular Set of Features
- Setting Day/Time of Scheduled Tasks

Additionally, you can launch the Online Registration Form After Installation

Modifying Default Installation Directory

If you want to set an installation directory other than the default, pass INSTALLDIR="<path to install>" to msiexec on the command line:

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11"
/L*v "C:\Logs\logfile.log" /qn
```

Note: For an administrative installation, you should pass the TARGETDIR option instead of the INSTALLDIR option.

Configuring Installation of Product Updates

If you want the individual client computer to download product updates to Dragon over the web, you would set the PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG option to 1 (option checks the check box). If you prefer to let the server download the updates and later distribute them to client computer, set this option to 0 (unchecks the check box). To not even display the check box, set the option to -1. For enterprise sites, choose -1 to prevent product updates from being downloaded.

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11"
PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1 /L*v "C:\Logs\logfile.log" /qn
```

Suppressing Reboot of computer After Installation

To suppress rebooting of the computer after installation of Dragon completes, you can pass Microsoft's REBOOT option set to ReallySuppress. Using this option also suppresses the reboot sometimes required by the installation of Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon, which setup.exe installs in the background. Using this option is highly recommended if you are executing a silent installation (But if system updates are pending, rebooting is required for DNS to work normally.

```
REBOOT=ReallySuppress
```

The altered command line would look like this:

```
setup.exe /s /v"SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI=\"C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini\"
INSTALLDIR=\"C:\<full_path>\Dragon11\" /qn
PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1 REBOOT=ReallySuppress
/L*v C:\Logs\logfile.log /qn"
```

Suppressing Reboot of computer After Installation

To prevent the computer where you are installing Dragon from rebooting automatically after the installation ends, you can pass Microsoft's REBOOT option set to ReallySuppress:

```
REBOOT=ReallySuppress
```

The altered command line would look like this:

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11"
PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1
REBOOT=ReallySuppress
/L*v "C:\Logs\logfile.log" /qn
```

Setting Dragon to run in QuickStart Mode

To set Dragon to QuickStart mode and create a shortcut for Dragon in the Windows Startup folder, set the QUICKSTART option to 1:

```
QUICKSTART=1
```

The altered command line would look like this:

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11"
PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1 REBOOT=ReallySuppress
QUICKSTART=1 /L*v "C:\Logs\logfile.log" /qn
```

Installing the Same Roaming User Profile Configuration on Additional computer(s)

Use the roamingdef.ini file you created during the initial installation as the input for the ROAMINGUSERINI option in this format (be sure to use the full path to the file when you pass the option):

```
ROAMINGUSERINI="Y:\<full_path>\roamingdef.ini"
```

In the above example, Y: is mapped network drive, accessible from client computers.

Optionally include the ROAMINGUSERINI option in the installation command line. If you do not use this property, default settings are assumed.

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11"
ROAMINGUSERINI="C:\<full_path>\roamingdef.ini"
/L*v "C:\nuanceLogs\logfile.log" /qn
```

After you have completed the installation, verify that all options are correctly set on the client computer.

Launching Online Registration Form After Installation

To have the online registration form for Dragon pop up on the workstation in its browser immediately after the installation completes, you can pass a option to the WEBREGISTRATION option and set it to 1 (applies only if you do not use the /qn option). The default is 0 which means registration will not be launched.

```
WEBREGISTRATION=1
```

The revised command line would look like this:

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11" PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1
```

```
REBOOT=ReallySuppress QUICKSTART=1
WEBREGISTRATION=1 /L*v "C:\Logs\logfile.log"
```

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11" PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1
REBOOT=ReallySuppress
WEBREGISTRATION=1 /L*v "C:\Logs\logfile.log"
```

Installing Some Vocabularies Locally and Others On Demand

When you install Dragon or Dragon Medical on a client computer, by default you install all the available vocabularies locally.

If you do not want all of those vocabularies to be installed locally, but to instead have them installed only if/when a user attempts to create a particular vocabulary, you can indicate that fact on the installation command line by adding the ADDLOCAL option and setting it to the names of the vocabularies to install locally. For instance, to install only an English Legal vocabulary, you would set ADDLOCAL to NatSpeak,ENUMedical and the command line would appear as follows (NatSpeak must be in the setting of ADDLOCAL, unless you set ADDLOCAL to ALL, or the installation will fail):

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11" PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1
REBOOT=ReallySuppress ADDLOCAL=NatSpeak,ENUMedical
/L*v "C:\Logs\logfile.log" /qn
```

Separate the features/vocabularies for ADDLOCAL with commas, but do not put spaces in the list. The names you must use for the vocabularies consist of a prefix for the language, then the name of the vocabulary, such as ENU for English and Cardiology to form ENUCardiology. For a list of the exact names for features/vocabularies you can assign to ADDLOCAL or ADVERTISE on the command line, refer to Summary: MSI Options for Installing Dragon Features/Advanced Options.

Particularly in a Dragon Medical installation, you might find it useful to have most vocabularies available but not locally installed. You can take that action by setting ADDLOCAL to ALL and then setting the ADVERTISE property to a list of vocabularies to not be installed locally, so that you end up with a subset of the medical vocabularies locally installed and all others available only on demand. The command line might look like the following:

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11" PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1
```

```
REBOOT=ReallySuppress ADDLOCAL=ALL
ADVERTISE=ENUCardiology,ENUEmergency,ENUGastroenterology
/L*v "C:\Logs\logfile.log" /qn
```

Installing Text-to-Speech Feature

To install Text-to-Speech locally, you would include the feature in the list of features for ADDLOCAL; for instance, you would add TTSENX for Text-to-Speech in English:

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11" PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1
REBOOT=ReallySuppress
ADDLOCAL=TTSENX,NatSpeak,ENUMedical
/L*v "C:\Logs\logfile.log" /qn
```

Reinstalling Dragon with Particular Set of Features

Sometimes you want to reinstall Dragon and add or remove particular features of the product. You can also take this action on the command line using the REINSTALL and REINSTALLMODE options of the MSI installer. You set REINSTALL to those features you want to install or to ALL.

For example, to install a minor upgrade to Dragon, you might use this command line:

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking11.msi" REINSTALL=ALL REIN-
STALLMODE=vamus /qn
```

The vemus options: v indicates to reinstall from the source (reupdating cache), e indicates to install the newer file if one is available, mu means to rewrite the registry settings, and s means to reinstall all shortcuts and re-cache all icons. For more information on the REINSTALL and REINSTALLMODE settings, refer to **Summary: MSI Options for Installing Dragon Features/Advanced Options**.

Note: A Minor upgrade involves upgrading to a higher point release within the same edition and version of Dragon. For example, upgrading from Dragon 11.0 to Dragon 11.x.

Setting Day/Time for Scheduled Tasks

To retain the default schedule for data collection and modify schedules for acoustic model optimization to Mondays at 1 AM and language model optimization to Mondays at 6 AM, you would set the PERIODIC_TASK string as follows:

```
PERIODIC_TASK="aco|lmo;admin;pswd;Mon, 01:00|Mon, 06:00"
```

An MSI installation command line including the option setting this schedule would look like this:

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
```

```
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11"
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
ROAMINGUSERINI="C:<full_path>\roamingdef.ini"
PERIODIC_TASK="aco|lmo;admin;pswd;Mon, 01:00|Mon, 06:00"
/L*v "C:\Logs\logfile.log" /qn
```

For more information on the PERIODIC_TASK option, refer to MSI Options for Roaming User Profile, Tuning, and Data Collection Setup.

Launching Online Registration Form After Installation

To have the online registration form for Dragon pop up on the workstation in its browser immediately after the installation completes, you can pass a option to the WEBREGISTRATION option and set it to 1 (applies only if you do not use the /qn option). The default is 0 which means registration will not be launched.

```
WEBREGISTRATION=1
```

The revised command line would look like this:

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11" PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1
REBOOT=ReallySuppress
WEBREGISTRATION=1 /L*v "C:\Logs\logfile.log"
```

```
msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi"
SERIALNUMBER=#####-###-####-####-##
DEFAULTSINI="C:\<full_path>\nsdefaults.ini"
INSTALLDIR="C:\<full_path>\Dragon11" PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=-1
REBOOT=ReallySuppress QUICKSTART=1
WEBREGISTRATION=1 /L*v "C:\Logs\logfile.log"
```

MSI Options Specific to Dragon

This section describes the fundamental msiexec.exe options that apply to Dragon NaturallySpeaking and Dragon Medical. Additional options that apply only to a Dragon installation are listed in:

- MSI Windows Installer Options
- MSI Options for Installing Dragon Features/Advanced Options
- MSI Options for Roaming User Profile, Tuning, and Data Collection Setup

Caution: Before you install Dragon using an MSI installation, you must install Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon on each dictation computer using the vcruntime.exe available on the product DVD. You cannot install Visual C++ Runtime as part of a typical msiexec.exe installation. For details, refer to Installing Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon.

If you install Dragon using its setup.exe file, InstallShield installs vcruntime.exe for you.

Dragon command line options do not need to be prefaced by hyphens or slashes.

Notes:

- In Dragon 11 or greater , the installation process does not present the QuickStart option. If you wish to enable this option, you can do so after Dragon is installed.
- Launching msiexec.exe /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.msi" XYZ=ABC automatically sets the property named XYZ to the value of ABC internally and continues the installation. However, if you use setup.exe to install, you must put all msiexec.exe options you pass it in quotation marks after the /v option.

Unless noted otherwise, all property values are in UPPERCASE.

Options	Description
DEFAULTSINI="c:<*path*>\nsdefaults.ini"	Indicates a *default settings (***nsdefaults.ini**) file that the installer uses to change the default behavior of the product for all users at installation time. This file must be in an **.ini** file format; any settings you want to take effect on clients must have a section name encased in square brackets as well as the value and data. If only values and data are set in this file without the section name encased in brackets, the settings are not propagated on client computers. Usually, you do not edit the **nsdefaults.ini** file directly; instead you set defaults in *Dragon's* **Options** and **Administrative Settings** dialog boxes. Follow these steps to create a **nsdefaults.ini** file for an MSI installation:

Options	Description
	Install *Dragon* on a computer with Windows administrator privileges. Set options in the **Options** and **Administrative Settings** dialog boxes as required in your environment and save them by closing **Dragon**. Copy the **nsdefaults.ini** file created by this installation *of Dragon* to a separate location. By default, the **nsdefaults.ini** is located in: **C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11** Use the copied **nsdefaults.ini** as the input for the **DEFAULTSINI** option.
SERIALNUMBER=abcde-fgh-ijkl-mnop-qr	A serial (license) number is required for all installations. You must specify a valid serial number on the command line. **Note:** Specifying a serial number on the command line does not bypass the serial number checking within setup.
PRODUCTUPDATEFLAG=0 (or 1 or –1)	Sets the default state of the product update check box at the end of installation, to indicate whether the installation should automatically check the web for product updates. Automatic product updates are not supported for enterprise installations. A value of **0** (zero) turns the check box off by default, **1** (one) turns it on by default. To disable the option entirely (turn the option off and suppress the display of the check box altogether), set the value to **–1**. The default setting is **1** (enables the check box and checks for product updates by default).

Options	Description
QUICKSTART=0 (or 1)	Set the default state of **Enable QuickStart Mode** check box to enable **QuickStart** and to create shortcut for *Dragon* in the Windows **Startup** folder. A value of **0**/**1** will turn check box off/on, respectively.
SETDEFAULTS=0 (or 1)	If set to 1, sets the default state of **Modify the application's settings for all users** check box to display the **Options** dialog box at the end of the installation. The **Options** dialog box lets you change *Dragon*'s standard behavior, including specifying hot keys, customizing how text is formatted, changing initial microphone settings, and setting the how often your User Profiles are backed up. Applies only if your installation displays the **Installation Wizard**. A value of **0**/**1** will turn check box off/on accordingly. With **SETDEFAULTS=1**, no dialogs display during installation if **/qn** is used for Quiet mode installation.
SETADMINS=0 (or 1)	If set to **1**, sets the default state of **Modify the administrative settings** check box to display the **Administrative settings** dialog box at the end of the installation. The **Administrative settings** dialog box lets you set up the **Roaming** feature, set the backup location of your User Profiles, and restrict users from modifying commands and vocabularies. Applies only if your installation displays the **Installation Wizard**. A value of **0**/**1** will turn checkbooks off/on accordingly. With **SETADMINS=1**, no dialogs display during installation if **/qn** is used for Quiet mode installation.
SETFORMATTINGS=0 (or 1)	If set to **1**, sets the default state of **Modify the administrative settings** check box to display the **Auto-Formatting** dialog box at

Options	Description
	the end of the installation. The **Auto-Formatting** dialog box lets you set up visual formats for the output of the recognized text, including standard abbreviations and other preferences. Applies only if your installation displays the **Installation Wizard**. A value of **0**/**1** will turn check box off/on accordingly. With **SETFORMATTINGS=1**, no dialogs display during installation if **/qn** is used for **Quiet** mode installation.
WEBREGISTRATION=1 (or 0)	Determines whether or not to launch the online product registration form after the installation completes. **0** disables the product registration. The default of **1** enables display of the form.

MSI Options for Installing Dragon Features/Advanced Options

This section describes additional msiexec.exe options that apply to Dragon NaturallySpeaking and Dragon Medical. Although these options are for msiexec.exe, they are also available for setup.exe if you use them with the /v“ option.

Other options are listed under:

- Summary: MSI Windows Installer Options
- Summary: MSI Options Specific to Dragon.
- Summary: MSI Options for Roaming User Profile, Tuning, and Data Collection Setup

Note: A Minor upgrade involves upgrading to a higher point release within the same edition and version of Dragon. For example, upgrading from Dragon 11.0 to Dragon 11.x.

The following table presents options that apply to a Dragon installation where you select particular features to install. Unless noted otherwise, all property values are in UPPERCASE.

Options	Description
ADDLOCAL=Feature1,Feature2,... or ADDLOCAL=ALL	Set the ADDLOCAL property to a list of features to be installed locally, delimited by commas. To install all features locally (including User Profiles), use ADDLOCAL=ALL on the command line.
ADVERTISE=Feature1,Feature2,FEATURE3,...	Set the ADVERTISE property to a list of features to be available but not locally installed, delimited by commas. To install all features as advertised, use ADVERTISE=ALL on the command line. The ADVERTISE option overrides the ADDLOCAL option. The best method for installing a particular set of features is to set the ADDLOCAL property to ALL and then set the ADVERTISE property to those features you do not want installed locally. A list of the features that you can set for installation is listed in the section after this table.
REINSTALL=Feature1,Feature2,... (or ALL)	List of features that are to be reinstalled, delimited by commas. To reinstall all features use REINSTALL=ALL on the command line.

Options	Description
	If you set the REINSTALL property, you should also set the REINSTALLMODE property, to indicate the type of reinstall to be performed. If the REINSTALLMODE property is not set, then by default all files that are currently installed are reinstalled only if the currently installed file is an earlier version (or is not present). By default, no registry entries are rewritten. Note that even if REINSTALL is set to ALL, only those features that were already installed previously are reinstalled. Thus, if REINSTALL is set for a product that is yet to be installed, no installation action takes place at all. For more information, see: http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/msi/setup/reinstall.asp
REINSTALLMODE={type of reinstallation to perform}	String that contains letters indicating the type of reinstall to perform. Options are case-insensitive and order-independent. This property should normally always be used in conjunction with the REINSTALL property. However, this property can also be used during installation, not just during a reinstall. See REINSTALLMODE for more details.
REMOVEOLDPROD=1	Removes the old version of the product before installing the new version. Should be used in major upgrades only.
/x<*Product.msi*|*ProductCode*>	Un-installs the currently installed version of *Dragon*. You are required to take this action during upgrading; however, you should be familiar with the entire upgrade procedure before proceeding with this option.

REINSTALLMODE

By default the REINSTALLMODE=**omus** to reinstall all files whose checksums are missing or corrupt, rewrite all registry names, reinstall all shortcuts and re-cache icons. Below is a list of the options with abbreviated definitions:

p — Reinstall only if the file is missing.

o — Reinstall if the file is missing or is an older version.

e — Reinstall if the file is missing or is an equal or older version.

d — Reinstall if the file is missing or a different version is present.

c — Reinstall only files whose checksums are missing or corrupt.

a — Force all files to be reinstalled, regardless of checksum or version.

u — Rewrite all required registry entries from the Registry Table that go under HKEY_CURRENT_USER or HKEY_USERS .

m — Rewrite all required registry entries from the Registry Table that go under HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE or HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT. Regardless of computer or user assignment, rewrite all info from these tables: Class, Verb, PublishComponent, ProgID, MIME, Icon, Extension, and AppID . Reinstall all qualified components. When reinstalling an application, run the RegisterTypeLibraries and InstallODBC actions.

s — Reinstall all shortcuts and re-cache all icons, overwriting existing shortcuts and icons.

v — Run from the source package, re-cache the local package. Does not apply to new installation of a product or feature.

If you set **REINSTALLMODE** without also setting **REINSTALL**, then the **detection** modes you specify still apply and the **overwrite** mode is used. The **REINSTALLMODE** property affects only those features selected for installation using **REINSTALL**.

For example, to launch a minor upgrade without using **setup.exe**, you must set the following properties on the command line:

REINSTALL=ALL REINSTALLMODE=vamus

To install a minor upgrade using an **.msi** file, use this command line:

msiexec /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking11.msi" REINSTALL=ALL REINSTALLMODE=vamus

For more information on **REINSTALLMODE** and the reinstall option codes, see:
http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/msi/setup/reinstallmode.asp

MSI Options for Roaming User Profile, Tuning, and Data Collection Setup

This section summarizes the Roaming User Profile, acoustic/language model tuning, and data collection options for command line installations of Dragon NaturallySpeaking and Dragon Medical. Other options are listed under:

- Summary: MSI Windows Installer Options
- Summary: MSI Options Specific to Dragon
- Summary: MSI Options for Installing Dragon Features/Advanced Options

Options	Description
PERIODIC_TASK=<*string*>	Sets schedule for either one, two, or three tasks — an acoustic model optimization (ACO) task, language model optimization (LMO) task, and/or data collection (DC) task. You can schedule each task to run daily or weekly, but need to set the schedule for each task only once. See PERIODIC_TASK for more details.
ROAMINGUSERINI="c:\xyz.ini"	Specifies a roaming user **.ini** file (**roamingdef.ini**) that contains the **Master Roaming User Profile** location and any associated HTTP or HTTPS settings for a Roaming User Profile. These are the same options set in the **Network Directories** field of the **Roaming** tab of the **Administrative settings** dialog box and the **HTTP and HTTPS Settings** dialog boxes. See ROAMINGUSERINI for more details.

PERIODIC_TASK

The <*string*> of PERIODIC_TASK contains these arguments, separated by semicolons:

aco | lmo | dc — One, two, or all three of them with a vertical bar separating each. If you do not pass the acronym for the feature, that feature is set to its default.

Administrator login name. Be sure you use the fully qualified <*domain name*>\<*account name*> in a case where the user is a local administrator but the computer is on a domain.

Administrator password.

When to run the task(s), with times for each of multiple tasks separated by a vertical bar (|). Each scheduled time should be in the format *DayOfWeek*, *hh:mm*, where the day of the week is the three letter abbreviation (no period), the time is the 24-hour time, and the comma between them is required.

The task runs once a week on the day/at the time you indicate. If you omit the *DayOfWeek*, the task runs every day at the time given.

The first of multiple times becomes the schedule for the first task named in the first parameter, the second time the schedule for the second task, the third the schedule for the third task. If you omit a time by having two vertical bars with no time between them or by leaving out the first or last time, the corresponding task is scheduled for a default time.

Default Schedules

Acoustic model optimization (ACO) — Mon, 02:00

Language model optimization (LMO) — Every day, 03:00

Data collection (DC) — Fri, 01:00

Examples of PERIODIC_TASK Settings

A string setting this option to perform an acoustic model optimization every Monday at 1 AM and a language model optimization the same day at 4 AM is (notice the comma between the day of the week and the time):

```
PERIODIC_TASK="aco|lmo;admin;pswd;Mon, 01:00|Mon, 04:00"
```

To schedule only data collection and language model optimization tasks and have them occur every day at 4 PM and 11 PM, respectively, you would enter only the time for each task, without indicating a particular day:

```
PERIODIC_TASK="dc|lmo;myadmin;mypswd;04:00|23:00"
```

A string setting this option to perform an acoustic model optimization every Tuesday at midnight, data collection every Wednesday at 3 AM, and a language model optimization every Friday night at 10 PM is:

```
PERIODIC_TASK="aco|dc|lmo;myadmin;mypswd;Tue, 00:|Wed, 03:00|Fri,
22:00"
```

To have the data collection and language model optimization tasks occur at default times, you modify the previous string by removing the times for those tasks, but leaving space between the vertical bars and after the last vertical bar:

```
PERIODIC_TASK="aco|dc|lmo;myadmin;mypswd;Tue, 00:| | "
```

ROAMINGUSERINI

When you enable the **Roaming** feature, *Dragon* creates an encrypted **roamingdef.ini** file.

Use the following steps to create a **roamingdef.ini** file to be used for an MSI installation where the **Roaming** feature is enabled:

Install Dragon on a computer with Windows administrator privileges.

Enable the Roaming feature options required in your environment. These must include the Master Roaming User Profile location set in the Network Directories field in the Roaming tab of the Administrative Settings dialog box and any HTTP or HTTPS settings.

Test these settings to make sure the Roaming User Profile connection works.

Save your settings by closing Dragon.

Copy the encrypted roamingdef.ini or roaming.ini file (use the one that is newer) created by this installation of Dragon to a separate location. By default, the .ini is located in:
`C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\N-uance\NaturallySpeaking11\`

Set the ROAMINGUSERINI option to the name of the roamingdef.ini file. The default is empty (no .ini file will be used).

To set these options using **ROAMINGUSERINI**, the **Roaming** feature must be enabled in the **nsdefaults.ini** file.

Feature Variables to Set Through the ADDLOCAL or ADVERTISE Properties

When specifying features on the command line:

- If a feature does not exist in a particular edition or language, overriding its default property has no effect.
- Some features (such as Text-to-Speech) have sub-features. Setting these features on the command line automatically turns on the properties of all sub-features, unless you specify an additional override for those sub-features.
- Any information in parentheses after the sub-feature is not included in the feature name.

You can specify any of the following features using ADDLOCAL and ADVERTISE properties on the command line:

Feature	Sub-feature	
NatSpeak	None	Dragon NaturallySpeaking and Dragon Medical: Sub-features for ENU (US English):
Samples *(Sample Commands file)*	None	
TTS *(Text-to-Speech)*	TTSDEU *(German Text-to-Speech)* TTSENU *(US English Text-to-Speech)* TTSENG (*British English Text-to-Speech*)	TTSESP *(Spanish Text-to-Speech)* TTSFRA *(French Text-to-Speech)* TTSITA *(Italian Text-to-Speech)* TTSNLD *(Dutch Text-to-Speech)*
Tutorial	TutDEU *(German Tutorial)* TutENX *(English Tutorial)* TutESP *(Spanish Tutorial)*	TutFRA *(French Tutorial)* TutITA *(Italian Tutorial)* TutNLD *(Dutch Tutorial)*
Speech—DEU *(German)*	Sub-features for DEU (German) DEUGeneral *(German General Large, Swiss German General, Empty Dictation General)* DEULegal *(German Legal)*	DEUMedical *(German Medical Large)* DEURadiology *(German Medical Radiology Large)*

Feature	Sub-feature	
Tutorial	TutDEU *(German Tutorial)* TutENX *(English Tutorial)* TutESP *(Spanish Tutorial)*	TutFRA *(French Tutorial)* TutITA *(Italian Tutorial)* TutNLD *(Dutch Tutorial)*
Speech ENX *(English)*— ENU *(US English)*	Dragon NaturallySpeaking and Dragon Medical: Sub-features for ENU (US English) ENULegal (*US English Legal Large*) ENUGeneral (*US English General Medium, US English Empty Dictation, US English Commands Only*) ENUGenSvc (*US English Large General*)	The ENU sub-feature includes support for the following accents: ▪ General — Use if your accent is not covered by the other choices or you are not sure which accent to select. ▪ Australian accented English ▪ British accented English ▪ Indian accented English ▪ Inland Northern US (Great Lakes area) — Covers Upstate New York through the Chicago area. ▪ SEAsian accented English — South East Asian ▪ Southern US — Covers most of the Southern United States, including Texas. ▪ Spanish Accented English.
Speech ENX *(English)*— ENU *(US English)* (continued) **Note**:ENURadiology and ENUPathology are not available in the Dragon Medical Small Practice Edition.	Dragon Medical: Sub-features for ENU (US English): ENUCardiology *(US English Medical Large Cardiology, Pediatric Cardiology)* ENUEmergency *(US English Emergency Medicine Large)*	ENUObGyn (US English Medical Large ENT, Fetal Medicine, Midwifery, Obstetrics and Gynecology, Ophthalmology) ENUOncology *(US English Medical Large Oncology, Radiation Therapy)*

Feature	Sub-feature	
	ENUGeneralPractice *(US English Large Family Medicine, Allergy and Immunology, Dermatology, Epidemiology, Geriatric, Hematology, Infectious Disease, Internal Medicine, Medical Education and Writing, Nephrology, Nursing, Osteopathy, Pulmonary Disease, Rheumatology, Sleep Lab)* ENUMedical *(US English General Medical Large—No Specialty)* ENUMentalHealth *(US English Large Medical Addiction Psychiatry; Endocrinology, Diabetes, and Metabolism; Psychiatry, Psychology)* ENGNeurology *(US English Anesthesiology, Neurology, Pain Medicine, Vascular and Interventional Radiology and Speech and Language Pathology)*	ENUOrthopaedic *(US English Medical Large Dentistry, Large Hand Surgery, Neurosurgery, Orthopaedics, Oral and Facial Surgery, Orthopaedic Surgery, Plastic Surgery, Podiatry)* ENUPathology *(US English Medical Large Pathology)* ENUPediatrics *(US English Medical Large Pediatrics, Neonatal and Perinatal Medicine, Pediatric Dentistry)* ENURadiology *(US English Medical Large Nuclear Medicine or Radiology)* ENUSurgery *(US English Medical Large Cardiac Surgery, Colon and Rectal Surgery, Surgery, Thoracic Surgery, Urology, Vascular Surgery)*
Speech ENX *(English)*—ENG *(UK English)*	Dragon NaturallySpeaking and Medical: Sub-features for ENG (UK English): ENGGeneral (UK English General Large, Empty Dictation General, Commands Only	The ENG sub-feature includes support for the following accents: ▪ General — Use if your accent is not covered by the other choices or you are not sure which accent to select. ▪ Australian accented

Feature	Sub-feature	
		English. ▪ Indian accented English. ▪ SEAsian accented English – South East Asian.
Speech ENX *(English)*—ENG *(UK English)*	Dragon Medical: Sub-features for ENG (UK English): ENGCardiology *(UK English Cardiology Large)* ENGEmergency *(UK English Emergency Large)* ENGGastroenterology *(UK English Gastroenterology Large)* ENGGeneralPractice *(UK English General Practice Large)* ENGMedical *(UK English Medical Large — No Specialty)* ENGMentalHealth *(UK English Mental Health Large)* ENGNeurology *(UK English Neurology Large)*	ENGObGyn *(UK English ObGyn Large)* ENGOncology *(UK English Oncology Large)* ENGOrthopaedic *(UK English Large Orthopedic)* ENGPathology *(UK English Large Pathology)* ENGPediatrics *(UK English Large Pediatrics)* ENGRadiology *(UK English Large Radiology)* ENGSurgery *(UK English Large Surgery)*
Speech—ITA *(Italian)*	Sub-features for ITA (Italian): ITA *(Italian General Large and Italian Empty Dictation General Large)*	
Speech—NLD *(Dutch)*	Sub-features for NLD (Dutch) NLDGeneral *(Dutch General Large and Dutch*	

Feature	Sub-feature	
	Empty Dictation General Large) *Dragon Medical Only-Sub-features for NLD (Dutch):* *NLDCardiology (Dutch Cardiology)* NLDGeneralPractice *(Dutch General Practice)* NLDMedical *(Dutch Medical Large)* NLDOrthopaedics *(Dutch Orthopaedics Large)*	NLDPathology *(Dutch Pathology Large)* NLDPediatrics *(Dutch Pediatrics)* NLDRadiology *(Dutch Radiology Large)* NLDRalph *(Dutch Ralph Large)* NLDSurgery *(Dutch Surgery Large)*
Speech—FRA *(French)*	Sub-features for FRA (French): FRAGeneral (*French General Large, French Empty Dictation General Large*)	FRAMedical *(French Medical Large)* FRARadiology (*French Radiology Large*)
Speech—ESP *(Spanish)*	Sub-features for ESP (Spanish) ESP (*Latin American Spanish General Large*) ESP *(Latin American Spanish Empty Dictation General Large)* ESP (*Castilian Spanish General Large*)	Speech—ESP *(Spanish)*

Installing Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon

Caution: Before you carry out an installation of Dragon using msiexec.exe, you must install Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon on every dictation client computer. You can install it one of the following ways:

- Use the Dragon setup.exe on the command line, which automatically installs vcruntime.exe for you.
- Include a vcruntime.exe command line in your admininstall.bat script (see Carrying Out an Administrative Installation).
- If you are using msiexec.exe to install Dragon, manually install vcruntime.exe from the DVD (see instructions below).

Manually Installing Visual C++ Runtime

Note: These steps are included in the msiexec.exe installation of Dragon.

1. Find the ISSetupPrerequisites/VCRuntime directory on the product DVD and open it. In this directory you find the vcruntime.exe and vcruntime_x64.exe files. If you are installing Version 10, look in the ISSetupPrerequisites\{1FAD9007-0FF1-4B05-B7CE-ADE12FB7DEC5} directory; you find only the 32-bit version of vcruntime.exe for Version 10.
2. Copy the vcruntime files to your server or to another accessible location. These .exe files install Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon. Run vcruntime.exe on each 32-bit computer where you intend to install Dragon and vcruntime_x64.exe on each 64-bit computer.

Caution: Do not attempt to extract the .msi file from either vcruntime.exe or vcruntime_x64.exe. Installing the Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon as part of an msiexec.exe command line installation of Dragon is not recommended and not supported.

Pushing an installation of the Visual C++ Runtime

You can install the Visual C++ Runtime for Dragon using a Windows installer (MSI).

To create the MSI file for the C++ Runtime, perform the following steps:

1. On the Dragon installation disc, find the **vcruntime.exe** file.
2. Double-lick the **vcruntime.exe** file.
3. When the **Welcome** dialog-box displays, use Windows explorer to navigate to the Windows user's %TEMP% directory.
4. In the newest directory under the %TEMP% directory, look for a file called **Visual C++ 9.0 Runtime for Dragon NaturallySpeaking.msi**.

You can now use a server application and the **Visual C++ 9.0 Runtime for Dragon NaturallySpeaking.msi** file to push the Visual C++ Runtime to multiple computers across a network.

See Overview of Installing Dragon using the Windows installer (MSI) for more information on pushing MSI installations and using MSI files from a command prompt.

Using an MSI file to install the Visual C++ Runtime from a command line

You can use the **Visual C++ 9.0 Runtime for Dragon NaturallySpeaking.msi** file to install the C++ Runtime from a command line.

From a command line, pass the MSI file name as the application to install to the **msiexec.exe** command using the /i option:

```
msiexec.exe /i "Dragon NaturallySpeaking11.msi"
```

Command Line Options for vcruntime.exe

Option	Description
/L <Lang ID>	To provide language ID. The default is US English.
/S	Silent mode. To turn off GUI prompt for the *Choose Setup Language* dialog box.
/v"<msiexec options>"	To hide all GUI dialogs.To provide **msiexec.exe** parameters, especially **/qn** for a silent **msiexec** installation and **/l*v** to indicate a file where extensive installation messages should be logged. If you want fewer messages in the log, you can pass **/l** without the **v** option. The * is a wildcard that calls all the other logging options available.

Chapter 6: Configuring and using the Roaming feature and Roaming User Profiles

This section describes how to set up, configure, and enable the Roaming feature on client computers. This section also provides information on how to create, dictate with, and upgrade Roaming User profiles.

Setting up the Roaming feature 195

Overview of the Roaming feature 197

Setting up the Roaming feature 202

Creating a network storage location for the Master Roaming User Profiles 203

Where to install and configure Dragon 207

Storage space required for the Master and Local Roaming User Profiles 209

How Dragon Synchronizes Master and Local Roaming User Profiles 211

Estimating Network traffic caused by synchronization 215

Enabling the Roaming feature on each computer where a user will dictate 218

Administrative Settings: Roaming tab 222

Administrative Settings: Roaming User Network Location 225

Setting up HTTP Connection: HTTP Settings 227

Setting up secure web server connection: SSL Settings 230

Testing and troubleshooting an HTTP connection 232

Setting and selecting Roaming User Profile options 234

Creating a Roaming User Profile on the local computer 240

Creating and training a new Roaming User Profile 241

Converting a non-roaming local User Profile into a Roaming User Profile 242
Dictating with a Roaming User Profile 243
Opening a Roaming User Profile 244
Using multiple dictation sources with a single User Profile 245
Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer for Roaming User Profiles 246
Controlling user access to other user's profiles 248
Configuring Internet Information Services and WebDAV for HTTP Roaming 251
Configuring Internet Information Services and WebDAV 252
Configuring Dragon internet roaming 255
Upgrading Roaming User Profiles: Overview 256
Preparing to upgrade Roaming User Profiles 258
Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles 261
Upgrading end-user systems 266

Setting up the Roaming feature

The Roaming feature lets users dictate with *Dragon* from different network locations and on different computers without having to create and train individual User Profiles at each location.

The Roaming feature works by storing User Profiles in a central network location so that the information *Dragon* learns from a user dictating on one computer is also available on other computers.

To set up Roaming User Profiles, carry out the steps shown in the table below, in chronological order.

Topic	Link
The Roaming feature	Overview of the Roaming feature
Setting up the Roaming feature: ■ Creating a network storage location for the Master Roaming User Profiles ■ Where to install and configure *Dragon* ■ Storage space required for the Master and Local Roaming User Profiles ■ How Dragon Synchronizes Master and Local Roaming User Profiles ■ Estimating Network traffic caused by synchronization	Setting up the Roaming feature
Enabling the Roaming feature on each computer where a user dictates: ■ Setting Roaming User Profile locations ■ Setting Roaming User Profile options ■ Testing an HTTP or HTTPS connection	Enabling the Roaming feature on each computer where a user will dictate
Creating Roaming User Profiles: ■ Creating and training a new Roaming User Profile ■ Converting a non-roaming local User Profile into a Roaming User Profile ■ Copying a non-Roaming User Profile to the Master Roaming User Profile location	Creating a Roaming User Profile on the local computer
Dictating with a Roaming User Profile: ■ Opening a Roaming User Profile ■ Using multiple dictation sources with a single User Profile ■ Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer for Roaming User Profiles ■ Synchronizing Master and Local Roaming User Profiles	Dictating with a Roaming User Profile
Upgrade Roaming User Profiles from *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* or *Dragon Medical* 9.x or 10.x to Dragon 11 or greater	Upgrading Roaming User Profiles: Overview

Topic	Link
Enabling Roaming User Profiles as part of an MSI installation	Enabling Roaming User profiles for an MSI installation

Overview of the Roaming feature

The Roaming feature lets users dictate with *Dragon* from different network locations and on different computers without having to create and train individual User Profiles at each location.

Some situations that the Roaming feature makes possible:

- A doctor may need to dictate reports in a medical office building using a desktop computer, in a hospital room using a Tablet PC, or at home using a laptop computer. The Roaming feature allows the doctor to use the same set of User Profiles containing the same vocabulary words with the acoustic information from each location.
- A user dictates on the same laptop at multiple offices and at home. Before leaving the office, the user loads a set of User Profiles from a central location on the network to his laptop. Once home, the user dictates and corrects as you normally would. When you return to the office, you reconnect the laptop to the network. The next time the user opens a *Dragon* user profile, the Roaming feature synchronizes the updated User Profiles on the laptop with those at the network's central location.

The relationship between the Master and the Local Roaming User Profile

With the Roaming feature, each *Dragon* user profile has a single Master Roaming User Profile that can be opened from multiple networked computers running *Dragon*. The Master Roaming User Profile is stored on a network location accessible to your dictating users.

When a Master Roaming User Profile is opened from that central network location, *Dragon* transfers a copy of that user profile to the local computer. That local copy is called the *Local Roaming User Profile*.

The Local Roaming User Profile is a copy of the user data taken from the Master Roaming User Profile but modified locally by corrections and acoustic data gathered during a dictation session.

You can set a central storage device to contain all your Master Roaming User Profiles. By loading a *Dragon* User Profile from the central network location, your users can dictate at any computer where *Dragon* is installed. When users exit *Dragon* and save the changes to their User Profiles, these changes are saved in that central location. The next time the user runs *Dragon*, all the changes saved are available regardless of which computer on the network he or she uses for dictation.

Advantages of the Roaming feature

It is important to distinguish the Roaming feature from simply browsing to a network directory and creating files there. Nuance recommends using the Roaming feature rather than storing non-Roaming User Profiles in a network directory. Using the Roaming feature, you can:

- Minimize network traffic. When Dragon opens a User Profile, if there is already a copy of the Roaming User Profile on the local computer, only the updates are downloaded from the network. When the user closes the User Profile at the end of his or her dictation session, only the updates from the current session are uploaded to the network. These updates typically

amount to no more than a few KB of data, as opposed to roughly 55 MB of data if the entire User Profile is opened and closed over the network.

- Allow the user to use Dragon even if the network directory is unavailable. In that case, Dragon opens the local copy of the Roaming User Profile.
- Give the administrator precise control over where users can put User Profiles. If the Roaming feature is enabled, the administrator can specify whether or not to also allow users to browse to any User Profile location; the default is not to allow browsing. This means that the administrator can easily see how many User Profiles have been created and who created them. If the Roaming feature is not enabled, users can browse to any location to which they have access and create User Profiles there.
- If HTTP Roaming is configured, it can be used to provide username/password authentication on User Profiles.

Hosting Master Roaming User Profiles

There are several methods for hosting your Master Roaming User Profiles:

- On a file server you connect to over a Mapped Drive
- On a file server that you connect to over a UNC (Universal Naming Convention) address
- On a web server that you connect to over HTTP (http://)
- On a secure web server that you connect to over SSL (https://)

Why the Master Roaming User Profiles should be in shared directories

Nuance recommends placing the master Roaming User Profiles in a shared directory to make certain administrative tasks more efficient. These tasks include:

- Scheduling an Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer task that optimizes multiple User Profiles
- Upgrading multiple User Profiles to a new major release of Dragon
- Keeping track of how many User Profiles have been created, which helps with licensing compliance (note that Dragon is licensed per user, not per workstation)

It is possible, though not recommended, to place Roaming User Profiles in a non-shared, user-specific location such as the user's home drive, provided every user's home drive is mapped to the same drive letter (this is because the Roaming User Profile location is an administrative setting that is per-workstation, not per-user).

Using multiple Roaming User Profile locations

If you have a large number of Roaming User Profiles, you may want to divide them among multiple shared directories. This facilitates performing tasks such as scheduling the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on a subset of User Profiles. You can choose how to divide your User Profiles, for example:

- By department
- By alphabetical groupings (for example A through H, I through M, N through R, and S through Z)

On each PC, you can configure any number of Roaming User Profile locations. Make sure you give each Roaming User Profile location a display name that makes it clear to your users which location to choose from.

Controlling user access to other user's profiles

If you have multiple Dragon users on an end-user workstation, those users will have multiple User Profiles to choose from in Dragon's Open User Profile dialog box.

If you use a shared directory for User Profiles, whether they are roaming or non-roaming, you may be concerned about the ability of a user to see and/or open another user's profile as well as their ability to open the correct profile. There are several ways to address this concern:

- Many of Nuance's customers address this concern simply through user training. Each user should be aware that if they open another user's profile and try to use it, their accuracy will be poor and user-specific customizations will not be available. Therefore, each user has an incentive to use only their own profile. However, this fact does not prevent a malicious user from damaging another user's profile.
- If users always log into Windows with a unique Windows user ID, you can use Windows file permissions to control access to the profiles. Typically, you do this by granting Full Control or Read/Write/Modify access to the shared directory, but do not allow this permission to propagate to sub-directories. That way, each user becomes the creator owner of any Dragon User Profile that he or she creates. Users can still see all of the Dragon User Profiles in the Open User Profile dialog box, but if they try to select another user's profile, a message will appear saying that they do not have permission to access that profile. Apply similar file permissions to the local copy of each Roaming User Profile; the default location for local copies is under
  `C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\RoamingUsers` for Windows XP

  `C:\ProgramData\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\RoamingUsers` for Windows Vista, Windows 7, and Windows Server 2008.
- If users log in using a shared Windows user ID, the best way to control access is through HTTP Roaming. In this configuration, you set up a web server running either IIS or Apache and with the WebDAV file system enabled. On each workstation, you specify a URL on the web server as the Roaming User Profile location. When a user launches Dragon, before displaying the Open User Profile dialog it prompts for a user name and password, which it uses to authenticate against the web server.

  You can use file permissions on the web server to specify which User Profiles are accessible to each account on the web server. File security is a function of the web server and the WebDAV software.

Making it easier for users to select their User Profiles

As described above, the Dragon Open User Profile dialog shows a list of all of the User Profiles in a shared directory (unless you are using HTTP Roaming to limit access to User Profiles). If there are more User Profiles than will fit on one screen, you can train users to go directly to a specific User Profile by typing the first few letters of its name.

It is possible to create an icon in the Start Menu and/or the Windows desktop that opens a specific User Profile. This can be helpful if there are only a few users of Dragon who share a particular workstation. Make a copy of the Dragon icon for each user, and place the parameter /user "user name" on the natspeak.exe command line.

In Dragon 11 or greater , you can display and view groups of User Profiles in a tree-style structure. See "Open User Profiles dialog box optimized for Roaming" in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

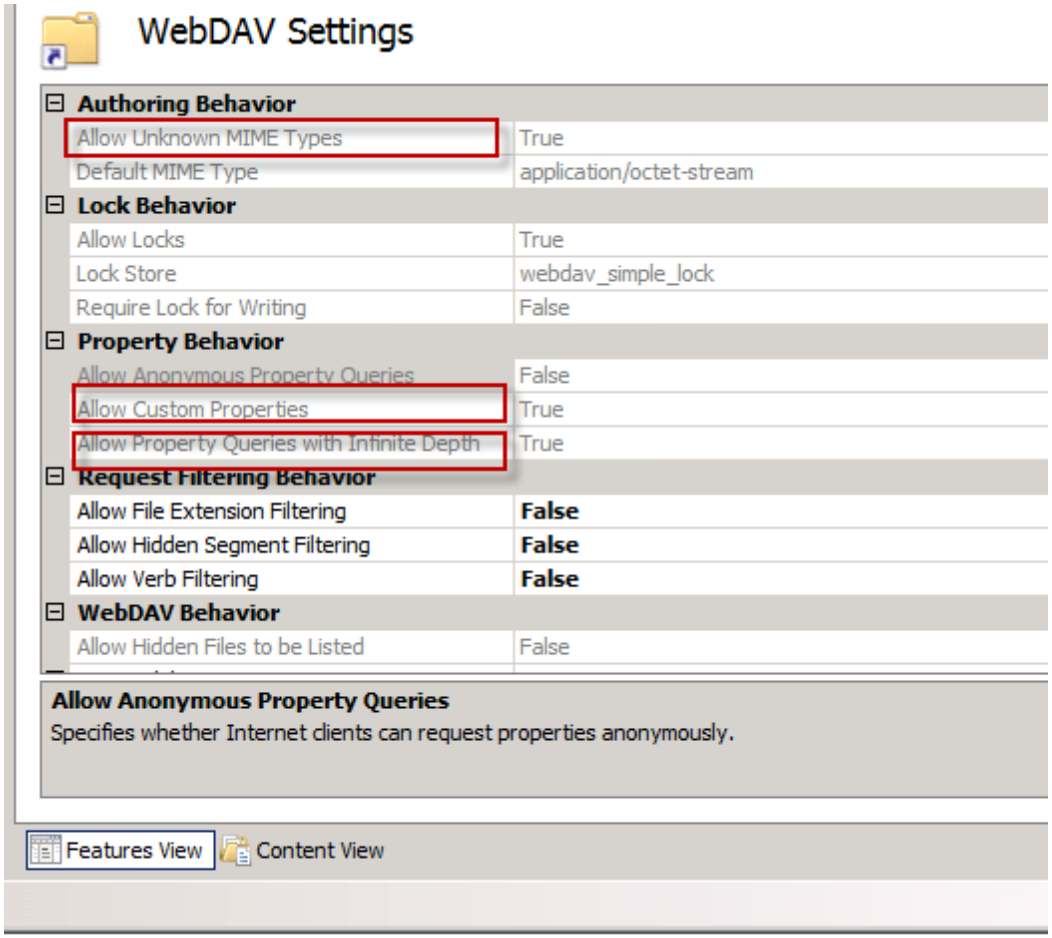
Backing up your Master Roaming User Profiles

Dragon does not backup local Roaming User Profiles on the end-user workstations and does not backup the Master Roaming User Profiles on the location where they are stored on your network.

It is the responsibility of your local system administrator to backup the Master Roaming User Profiles.

Notes: For use of WebDAV

- After you install Internet Information Services and WebDAV, you need to use the Internet Information Services Manager tool to set the “Allow Unknown MIME Types”, “Allow Custom Properties”, and “Allow Property Queries with Infinite Depth” settings to true. For example, in IIS 7:



- For more information, see Configuring Internet Information Services and WebDAV for HTTP Roaming.
- If you connected to your Roaming User Profile Master Directory over HTTP and you find that the Open User Profile dialog box does not display all the vocabularies and acoustic models for your User Profiles, make sure that you:
    - Add all file extensions within your Master Roaming User Profile directories and sub-directories to the Registered MIME types list of your IIS server. You could also add a wildcard (.*) MIME-type. For more information on adding a wildcard (.*) MIME-type, see http://www.microsoft.com/technet/prodtechnol/WindowsServer2003/Library/IIS/cd3e6b8e-b497-4b8c-b552-83a2c180cd32.mspx?mfr=true.
    - Check that no files in your User Profile directory are locked, password protected, or otherwise access-restricted by your server permissions.

Setting up the Roaming feature

When setting up the Roaming feature, note the following:

- Creating a network storage location for the Master Roaming User Profiles
- Where to install and configure Dragon
- Storage space required for the Master and Local Roaming User Profiles
- Synchronizing Master and Local Roaming User Profiles
- Estimating Network traffic caused by synchronization

Note: To enable the Roaming feature and set the Roaming User Profile options, you must log into an account with Windows Administrator privileges.

Creating a network storage location for the Master Roaming User Profiles

For any installation of Dragon, you must first determine where on the network the Master Roaming User Profiles should be located.

Dragon lets you store your Master Roaming User Profiles on:

- Any networked computer.
  You are not strictly required to store Master Roaming User Profiles on a server. Any shared location accessible to other computers on the network is a perfectly acceptable place to store Master Roaming User Profiles.
- a Windows file server
- A web server (HTTP)
- A secure web server running SSL (HTTPS)

Note: The location(s) you pick must be accessible to all computers where users will dictate with a Roaming User Profile. Each location must have adequate storage space for Roaming User Profiles. For more information, see Storage space required for User Profiles.

What to consider for the Master Roaming User Profile location

To set up a location for the Master Roaming User Profiles, you should first determine:

- The kind of network file server on which you want to store your Master Roaming User Profiles. Make sure it has enough storage space. Each location you pick must be accessible to all computers where your users will dictate with Roaming User Profiles. You can create multiple network storage locations.
- How the computers from where your users will dictate will connect to that network location; for example using a mapped drive, UNC connection, or an HTTP or HTTPS connection..

Using a networked computer or Windows file server

If you choose to use a networked computer or Windows server, you should determine the path to where the Master Roaming User Profiles will reside. You can create multiple network storage locations.

The Roaming feature supports the following types of locations for your Master Roaming User Profiles:

- Mapped Drives—Connects to a shared network folder that has a drive letter assigned to it.
- UNC Paths—Connects to a shared network folder using the Universal Naming Convention (UNC) to locate a user profile. Format is: \\<*servername*>\<*sharename*>\<*path*>\<*filename*>.

What you'll need to know to configure your local Roaming User Profiles

After you have chosen the type of computer to store the Master Roaming User Profiles, you should determine the following information so that you configure your local copies of *Dragon* to connect to a mapped or shared drive:

Mapped Drives

UNC paths

Using a HTTP or HTTPS web server

If you choose to use a HTTP or HTTPS web server, the Roaming feature supports the following types of locations for your Master Roaming User Profiles

- HTTP (**http:**)—Connects to computer on the internet or your local intranet. Format is: **http://**<*myserver.com*>**/**<*webdav*>
- HTTP with SSL (**https:**)—Connects to computer on the internet or your local intranet with SSL. Format is: **https://**<*myserver.com*>**/**<*webdav*>

Supported web servers

If you want to store your Master Roaming User Profiles on a web server, Internet access to Master Roaming User Profiles is supported on two web servers:

- Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) version 6.0, 7.0, and 7.5. For this type of server:
    - Digest authentication through a proxy server with Internet Information Server (IIS) 6.0 is not supported.
    - Be sure that the server has Web-based Distributed Authoring and Versioning (WebDAV) software is turned on to publish content to an Internet Information Services (IIS) web server.

      If you have not already installed the WebDAV component, use the Add or Remove Programs in your Control Panel and run the Windows Components Wizard. WebDav is listed under Application Server>Internet Information Services>World Wide Web Service>WebDAV Publishing.
- Apache HTTP Server 2.0.54 and higher. For this type of server:
    - Internet Roaming User—Redirects must be turned on when using Digest authentication.
    - Be sure that the server has Web-based Distributed Authoring and Versioning (WebDAV) software turned on. The WebDAV Apache module is available free of charge at http://www.webdav.org/mod_dav/.

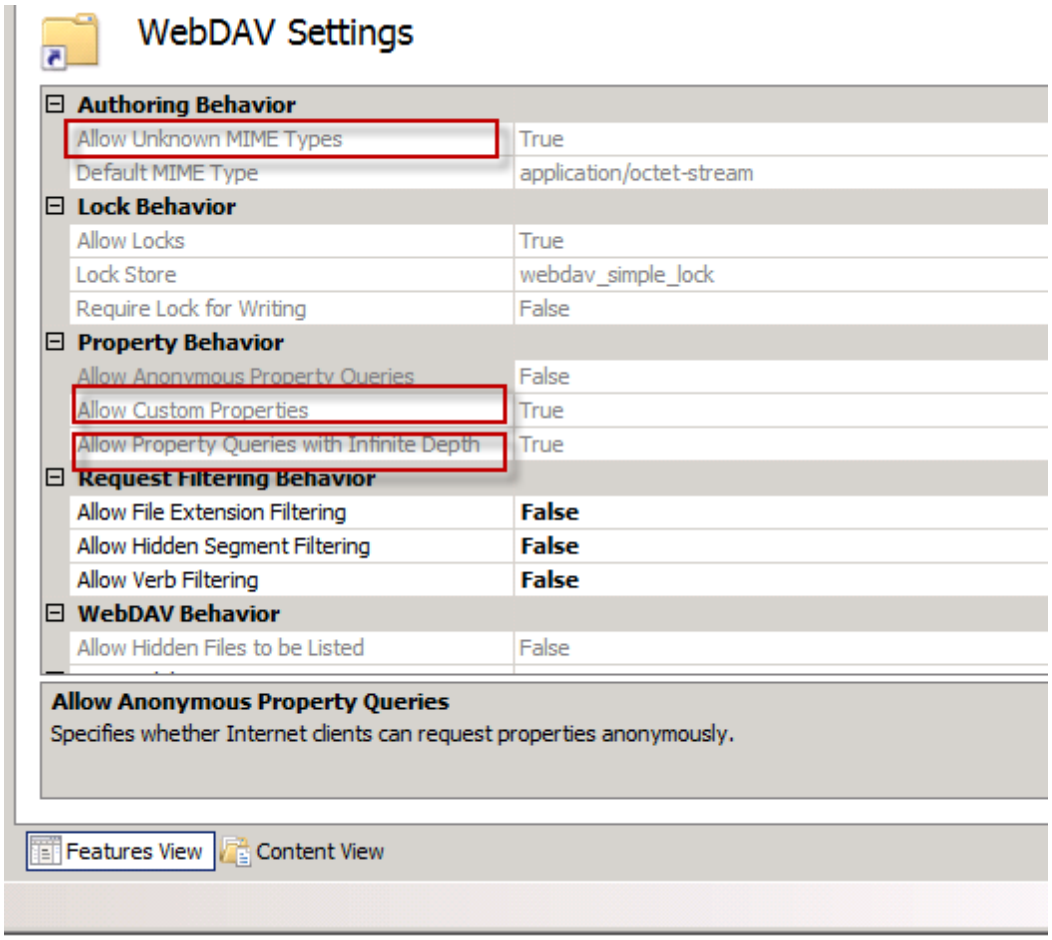
What you'll need to know to configure your local Roaming User Profiles

After you have chosen the type of computer to store the Master Roaming User Profiles, you should determine the following information so that you configure your local copies of *Dragon* to connect to the HTTP server:

- **The network location:** You need to know the URL address of your HTTP server. For more information, see XXXXX.
- **HTTP settings:** For your http (or https) connection you need to know authentication, firewall, and proxy server information. For more information, see HTTP Settings.

Notes: For use of WebDAV

- After you install Internet Information Services and WebDAV, you need to use the Internet Information Services Manager tool to set the "Allow Unknown MIME Types", "Allow Custom Properties", and "Allow Property Queries with Infinite Depth" settings to true. For example, in IIS 7:



- For more information, see Configuring Internet Information Services and WebDAV for HTTP Roaming.
- If you connected to your Roaming User Profile Master Directory over HTTP and you find that the Open User Profile dialog box does not display all the vocabularies and acoustic models for your User Profiles, make sure that you:
    - Add all file extensions within your Master Roaming User Profile directories and sub-directories to the Registered MIME types list of your IIS server. You could also add a wildcard (.*) MIME-type. For more information on adding a wildcard (.*) MIME-type, see http://www.microsoft.com/technet/prodtechnol

/WindowsServer2003/Library/IIS/cd3e6b8e-b497-4b8c-b552-83a2c180cd32.mspx?mfr=true .

- Check that no files in your User Profile directory are locked, password protected, or otherwise access-restricted by your server permissions.

Where to install and configure Dragon

Installing Dragon where you plan to dictate using the Roaming feature

Dragonmust be installed each computer where you plan to have users dictating with Roaming User Profiles.

Installing Dragon on the same computer as your Master Roaming User Profiles

Nuance recommends that you install Dragon on the same computer where the Master Roaming User Profiles for your network are located.

As the system administrator, you are responsible for running the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** on the network location of the Master Roaming User Profiles. The ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** and the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer Scheduler*** can only be run on the Master Roaming User Profiles.

Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer updates the Master Roaming User Profiles with the accumulated acoustic data from any corrections and additional training done by the users at the computers where they dictate. Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer will increase your overall accuracy. Any optimizations done by the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** are copied to each Local Roaming User Profile when synchronization occurs.

Running the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** over the network can result in a large amount of data being transferred between the server and the workstation running the optimizer.

For more information, see Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer for Roaming User Profiles.

If you are using Dragon 11 or greater , see Using multiple acoustic models with a User Profile for information on using the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer with a User Profile that has two acoustic models.

Notes:

- You must have Windows Administrator privileges on the computer where you are running the ***Scheduler*** for the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer***.
- Do not enable the Roaming feature on the administrator computer where you plan to run the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer***.
- When the Roaming feature is enabled on a computer where someone dictates, that computer is blocked from locally running the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** or the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer Scheduler*** on the local copy of the Roaming User Profiles.

For more information on installing or upgrading Dragon

For more information on installing or upgrading Dragon on the computers in your network, see:

- Upgrading Roaming User Profiles: Overview for information how to upgrade Roaming User Profiles from *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* or *Dragon Medical* 9.x or 10.x to Dragon 11 or greater .
- The Installation Guide that came with your copy of Dragon for information on installing Dragon on a single computer
- The System Administrator's Guide for information on how to use MSI to install or upgrade Dragon on multiple computers.

Storage space required for the Master and Local Roaming User Profiles

Adequate storage space must be available for User Profiles that store information about each particular user's speech patterns.

You need to plan for storage space on:

- Each computer where you plan to have users dictating with a Roaming User Profile.
- The network accessible central computer or computers where Master Roaming User Profiles are stored.

These are guidelines only and not definitive specifications—actual size will vary from site to site.

For each Master Roaming User Profile- on the network

For **each** Master Roaming User Profile (User Profiles stored on the central network location), you should plan on:

- 55 MB for each set of Roaming User Profiles, this includes:
  - 18 MB for each additional vocabulary you add for this user profile
  - 35 MB for each additional dictation source you add for this user profile
- 1000 MB for acoustic optimizer data associated with each dictation source of each User Profile

For each computer where Dragon is installed

You must install 1 copy of Dragon on each computer where your users will be dictating with the Roaming feature. Multiple users can use a single Dragon installation.

Each installation of Dragon takes a minimum of 1.8 GB of free hard disk space for a custom Installation where you install only the program files and 1 set of User Profiles. Installations can range from 800 MB (US English Home Edition) to 5 GB (Dragon Medical Practice Edition), depending on which languages and vocabularies you install. See Dragon system requirements for information on disk space requirements for Dragon 11 or greater .

For each Local Roaming User Profile- on the client PC

On **each** installation of Dragon where your users plan to dictate using the Roaming feature, **each** Local Roaming User Profile (the User Profiles stored on the local computer running Dragon), require the following:

- 55 MB for each set of Roaming User Profiles. This includes:
  - 18 MB for each additional vocabulary you add for this user profile
  - 35 MB for each additional dictation source you add for this user profile

- 10 MB per topic for language model optimizer data in the topic container data
- 240 MB for acoustic optimizer data associated with each dictation source of each User Profile

How much acoustic optimizer data is retained locally is controlled by settings on the ***Data*** tab of the ***Options*** dialog box:

1. To set the number of minutes of audio to retain locally, click the ***Archive size...*** button and position the slider.
2. To turn off retaining this data locally, check the ***Conserve disk space required by user profile (for portability)*** option.

A non-Roaming User Profile requires approximately three times as much disk space as a local Roaming User Profile. Dragon periodically creates a backup copy of a non-Roaming User Profile and stores the copy on the local computer. On the other hand, a Roaming User Profile is stored in a network storage location and Dragon does not create a backup copy of a Roaming User Profile.

An administrator should create backup copies of all Roaming User Profiles on a regular basis.

How Dragon Synchronizes Master and Local Roaming User Profiles

When a user that uses a Roaming User Profile exits *Dragon*, switches User Profiles, closes a User Profile, or saves a User Profile, *Dragon* saves changes to the Local Roaming User Profile and then synchronizes these changes with the Master Roaming User Profiles on the network.

In a networked situation, this occurs at the time one of these operations is performed.

When a user dictates using a computer not currently connected to a network, all changes are saved to the Local Roaming User Profile; synchronization occurs when the user reattaches the computer to the network containing the Master Roaming User Profile and opens that User Profile again.

For more information on what options effect what data gets synchronized between the Master and Local Roaming User Profile, see Setting/selecting Roaming User Profile options.

Note: During synchronization, changes to the Master Roaming User Profile overwrite any changes made to a Local Roaming User Profile that a user has been using for dictating and correcting dictation while not on the network.

What happens during synchronization

The following changes take place when Local and Master Roaming User Profiles are synchronized:

- Combines words added to the Local Roaming User Profile during a dictation session with the Master Roaming User Profile vocabulary,
- Removes words deleted from the Local Roaming User Profile from the Master Roaming User Profile vocabulary.
- Copies acoustic data (from files with a ***.DRA*** or ***.NWV*** extension) from the Local Roaming User Profile and adds them to the Master Roaming User Profile where the data become available to the Acoustic Optimizer (Note that .DRA files saved voluntarily by the user along with a document do not get added to the Master Roaming User Profile. The.DRA files created automatically by Dragon for use by the optimizer are the only ones that get added to the Master Roaming User Profile). For more information on running the Acoustic Optimizer, see Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer for Roaming User Profiles.
- Copies any custom commands created or modified locally (using the ***MyCommands*** editor) to the Master Roaming User Profile.
- Saves any local user options that you changed on the **Options** or **Formatting** dialog box to the Master Roaming User Profile, except the options listed below.

What changes don't get synchronized

The following options are not synchronized with the Master Roaming User Profile; they remain exclusively on the local computer with the Local Roaming User Profile:

Locally set options on the Options dialog:

- On the **Data tab**:

- ***Conserve disk space required by user profile*** option
- ***Create usability log*** option in the ***Advanced*** dialog box
- ***Incremental adaptation in general training*** option

- On the ***Miscellaneous tab***:
  - ***Voice enable menus and dialog controls*** option
  - ***Launch Dragon in QuickStart mode when Windows starts*** option
- On other tabs of ***Options*** dialog box:
  - All the options on the ***Playback/Text-to-speech*** tab
  - All the options on the ***Hot keys*** tab

- Settings in the ***Auto-Formatting*** dialog box:
  - The **UK and Canadian postcodes** option
  - Medical Auto-Formatting options

What files are synchronized

The following table explains how and when individual files are copied or updated to the master Roaming User Profile or to the local cache when the Master and Local Roaming User Profiles are synchronized.

For more information on what options effect what data gets synchronized between the Master and Local Roaming User Profile, see Setting/selecting Roaming User Profile options.

These options can effect how much data is transferred across your network when the Master and Local Roaming User Profiles are synchronized. For more information, see Estimating Network traffic caused by synchronization.

File name or type	Copied or updated with the master Roaming User Profile	Copied or updated to local cache
Acoustic files:*.usr and *.sig	At save time if the **Always copy acoustic information to network** option in the Administrative settings is on. See Acoustic files for more details.	Copied if version number on server is different
Vocabulary files:*.voc	Copied only after the acoustic files for the user profile have been modified with information from **Learn from specific documents**, **Learn from sent e-mails**, **Import a list of words or phrases**, and similar procedures.	Copied if version number on server is different

File name or type	Copied or updated with the master Roaming User Profile	Copied or updated to local cache
Acoustic archive created for each dictation session: acarchive.nwv (encryption disabled), acarchive.enwv (encryption enabled)	Copied to session folder if it exists; once master voice_container limit is reached, nothing more is copied. The local copy is deleted and a zero-length file is created.	Never
Audio.ini	Copied to master after running the Check Microphone wizard or at User Profile close if not copied successfully after running the Check Microphone wizard	Copied if version number on server is different; also copied right before Check Microphone wizard is run
Backups	Never - Dragon does not backup local Roaming User Profiles on the end-user workstations and does not backup the Master Roaming User Profiles on the location where they are stored on your network. See Backups for more details.	Never
DRA files, aco.ini; drafiles.ini	Copied to session folder if the master voice_container has space. Files are deleted after being copied; aco.ini and drafiles.ini are recreated at zero-length	Never
Custom commands created on client PC:Mycmds.dat	Copied when User Profiles are saved, or a User Profile is closed and saved.	Copied at User Profile open if version number on server is different
Options.ini, soptions.ini, itnoptions.ini	Copied at User Profile close, options dialog close when the timestamp on the local file has changed.	Copied on User Profile open, options dialog open if version number is different on the server
History of changes to the vocabulary: Vocdelta.dat	Merged to master copy on User Profile save and open. When vocabularies are copied up, vocdelta.dat is reset to zero in the master copy for that topic.	Copied to local cache on User Profile open and merged into the voc if version number is different on the server
nsuser.ini, local.ini, nssystem.ini, natspeak.ini	Never (machine dependent)	Never

Acoustic files

If the setting is off (the default), after the acoustic optimizer runs on the master Roaming User Profile, the server incorporates the changes

In Dragon 11 or greater , a user can set the **Save Acoustic information** option to control if Dragon saves the .usr and .sig files on each computer they dictate on. See "Controlling updates to the acoustic components of a User Profile" in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

Backups

It is the responsibility of your local administrator to backup the Master Roaming User Profiles. However, Dragon does automatically back up local non-Roaming User Profiles on the end-user workstations as specified in the Miscellaneous tab of the Administrative Settings dialog box.

Estimating Network traffic caused by synchronization

The following table explains how and when individual files are copied or updated to the master Roaming User Profile or to the local cache when the Master and Local Roaming User Profiles are synchronized and how much data is transferred in the process.

In addition, this table which option controls whether the data is transferred. For more information on what options effect what data gets synchronized between the Master and Local Roaming User Profile, see Setting/selecting Roaming User Profile options.

The estimates of the data transferred across the network is for a **single** Roaming User Profile.

Files copied to the Master Roaming User Profile	Transfer Direction & Data Amount	Files copied to the Local Roaming User Profile	Administrative Setting to enable for Transfer
Acoustic files: *.user and *.sig **User Action**: Dictation, Audio Setup **Transfer time**: When the User Profile is saved	35 MB <---->	**Transfer time**: Copied if server version is different from client version	▪ Always copy acoustic information to network ▪ Save Acoustic information
Vocabulary files: *.voc **User Action**: Dictation, Learn from specific documents, Learn from sent e-mails, Vocabulary Optimizer. **Transfer time**: Copied only after the vocabulary files for the user have been modified with information from Learn from specific documents, Learn from sent e-mails, and the Vocabulary Optimizer. Copy only happens after saving or closing a User Profile.	18 MB <---->	**Transfer time**: Copied if server version is different from client version	Access network at user profile open/close only

Files copied to the Master Roaming User Profile	Transfer Direction & Data Amount	Files copied to the Local Roaming User Profile	Administrative Setting to enable for Transfer
Acoustic archive created for each dictation session: acarchive.nwv, acarchive.enwv **User Action**: Dictation, Correction **Transfer time**: Copied to session folder if it exists. Once master voice_container limit is reached, nothing more is copied. Copy only happens after saving or closing a User Profile.	240 MB <------	**Transfer time**: Never. The local copy is deleted and a zero-length file is created after files are copied to the server.	Access network at user profile open/close only
DRA files created during dictation: DRA files, aco.ini, drafiles.ini **User Action**: Dictation, Correction **Transfer time**: Copies to session folder if the master voice_container has space.	1.3 MB/minute <------	**Transfer time**: Never. Files are deleted after being copied; aco.ini and drafiles.ini are recreated at zero-length	Conserve archive size on network
Custom commands created on client PC: Mycmds.dat **User Action**: Changes to some Options on the local PC **Transfer time**: Copied when a User Profile is closed or saved.	66 K <---->	**Transfer time**: Copied when a User Profile opens on the local PC and the version number on the server is different from the version number on the server	
.INI file changes on client PC: options.ini,	< 1 k <---->	**Transfer time**: Copied	

Files copied to the Master Roaming User Profile	Transfer Direction & Data Amount	Files copied to the Local Roaming User Profile	Administrative Setting to enable for Transfer
soptions.ini, itnoptions.ini **User Action**: Changes to some Options on the local PC **Transfer time**: Copied at User Profile close, Options dialog close when the timestamp on the local file has changed		to local cache on when a User Profile opens and merged into the voc if the version number is different on the server	
History of changes to the vocabulary: Vocdelta.dat **User Action**: Adding words, changing word properties **Transfer time**: Merged to master copy when a User Profile is saved or opened. When vocabularies are copied, vocdelta.dat is reset to zero in the master copy for that vocabulary	500 KB max. (12 bytes/word) <---->	**Transfer time**: Copied when a User Profile opens or the Options dialog opens if the server version is different from the client version	Merge contents of vocdelta.dat into network user profile when file is full
Log file: Dragon.log **User Action**: Any use of Dragon **Transfer time**: Copied if the Administrative option is set.	< 1 MB <------	**Transfer time**: Never	Copy Dragon log to network

Enabling the Roaming feature on each computer where a user will dictate

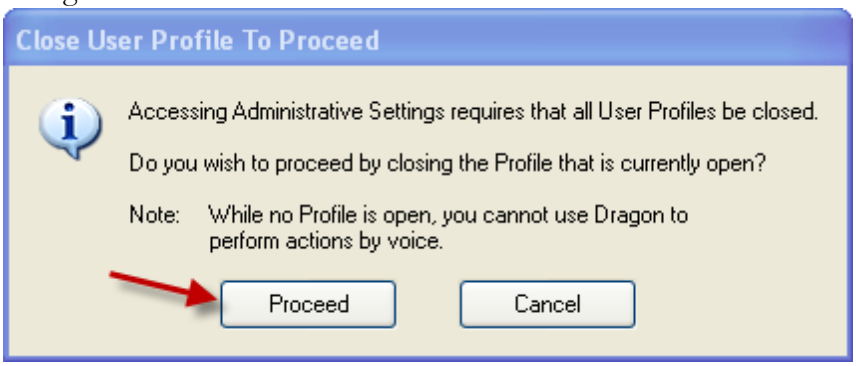
After you have set up the network location for the Master Roaming User Profiles and installed or upgrading Dragon on the computers in your network, you must enable the Roaming feature on each computer where the user will dictate using a Roaming User Profile.

Step 1: Start Dragon

You must start Dragon to enable the Roaming feature.

Step 2: If already Dragon is running, select Administrative Settings

If Dragon is already running, on the DragonBar, select **Tools** > **Administrative Settings** and click **Proceed**. This action closes all open User Profiles and displays the Administrative Settings dialog box.



- If the ***Open User Profile*** or ***Profile Creation wizard*** dialog box appears when you start *Dragon*, click ***Cancel***.
- If a User Profile opens automatically (*Dragon* does this if there is only one User Profile available), select ***Profile > Close User Profile*** on the ***DragonBar***.

Step 3: Turn on the Roaming feature

After closing any open User Profiles:

1. If Dragon is running, from the ***DragonBar*** menu, select ***Tools*** > ***Administrative Settings***. This action displays the Administrative Settings dialog box.

   Note: You do not have to be running *Dragon* to act as an administrator of the product. Instead of opening the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box from the ***DragonBar*** menus, you can open the dialog box from the command line by selecting ***Start*** > ***Run***, then entering the following command in the ***Open*** text box (include a space between ***natspeak.exe*** and the ***/SetAdministrativeOptions*** option that follows it):

   ```
   "C:\Program
   ```

```
Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program\natspeak.exe"

/SetAdministrativeOptions
```

2. On the ***Roaming*** tab, check ***Enable***.
3. Click ***Apply*** to save the changes and keep the dialog box open.

Note: With the Roaming feature enabled, the ***Open User Profile*** dialog box later displays only User Profiles in the Roaming User Profile storage locations. To let the users open both local (non-roaming) and Roaming User Profiles, check the ***Allow non-roaming user profiles to be opened*** option in the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box. Clearing this option prevents users from dictating with a non-roaming (local) User Profile by mistake, but you should check it now if you want to ensure you can open existing local User Profiles so that you can convert them to Roaming User Profiles.

Step 4: Set the location of Master Roaming User Profiles

On each computer where you plan to have users dictating as a Roaming User Profiles, you must tell that installation of *Dragon* where the Master Roaming User Profiles are located.

After selecting ***Enable*** on the ***Roaming*** tab:

1. Click the ***Add*** button. The Roaming User Network Location dialog box displays. You use the ***Roaming User Network Location*** dialog box to define the network location of the master Roaming User Profiles. The location you pick must be accessible to all computers on the network that you want available for dictation with *Dragon*.
2. Set the ***Display Name*** to the way the name of the directory should display in other dialog boxes. The display name later appears in the ***Roaming*** tab of the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog and the ***Location of user profile*** text box of both the ***Open User Profile*** and the ***Manage User Profiles*** dialog boxes.
3. Set the ***Network Location***. See the types of locations that the Roaming feature supports in Creating a network storage location for Master Roaming User Profiles.
4. If you are using a web server to store Master Roaming User Profiles, click the ***HTTP Settings*** and ***SSL Settings*** (if you are using HTTPS) button to set information about your HTTP and HTTPS connection and proceed with HTTP Settings and SSL Settings for further information. After entering the ***HTTP*** and ***SSL Settings***, use the ***Test Connection*** button to make sure your settings are correct. For help troubleshooting a problem with the connection, see Testing and troubleshooting an HTTP connection .
5. Click ***OK*** in the ***Roaming User Network Location*** dialog box.

For more information on setting the location of the master Roaming User Profiles, see Roaming User Network Location.

> **Note:** You cannot create a non-Roaming User Profile on an HTTP connection. You can only create Roaming User Profiles on an HTTP connection when the Roaming feature is enabled.

Step 5: Set location of Local Roaming User Profiles

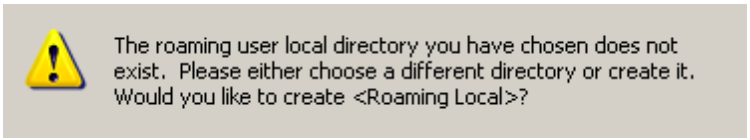
When a user opens a Master Roaming User Profile, *Dragon* transfers a copy of that User Profile to the local computer. That local copy is called the Local Roaming User Profile. This is the location on the computer where changes made during a dictation session, such as corrections or new acoustic data, are stored before they are synchronized with the master Roaming User Profile.

You can set this location, called ***<Roaming Local>***, from the Administrative Settings dialog box. Nuance recommends leaving this option at the default setting.

Note: the location of <Roaming Local> is per-PC and cannot be changed to a user-specific location.

<Roaming Local>

To accept the default ***<Roaming Local>*** location (which Nuance recommends), click ***OK*** on the Administrative Settings dialog box. You will be prompted to create the default directory if it does not already exist. When you see the following message, click **Yes**.



The default location of ***<Roaming Local>*** is:

- `XP: C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\RoamingUsers\<display name>\`
- `Vista: C:\Users\All Users\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\RoamingUsers\<display name>\`

See Dragon file structure for information on the default location of the RoamingUsers directory for Dragon 11 or greater on Windows 7.

The <display name> is the name you defined for the Master Roaming User Profile location. You can have multiple network storage locations for your Master Roaming User Profiles and each has its own corresponding directory for Local Roaming User Profiles.

Changing the default location for <Roaming Local>

1. Use the ***Browse for Folder*** dialog box to open a location where you want to store the local Roaming User Profile. This is the location on the computer where changes made during a dictation session, such as corrections or new acoustic data are stored before they are synchronized with the master Roaming User Profile.
2. If the directory does not currently exist, click ***Make New Folder*** and type a name for the new folder. The new directory can have any name, but calling it something meaningful, such as *Local Roaming User Profiles*, will make the folder easier to find in the future.
3. Click ***OK***.

Step 6: Set Roaming feature options

The ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box also contains several options that affect how the Roaming feature works. You select the options that indicate how you want a Roaming User Profile to function at each Roaming User Profile location. For a list of the options to choose from, refer to Selecting Roaming User Profile options.

Notes:

- Once you set up an installation of *Dragon* to use the Roaming feature, users on that computer can only open Roaming User Profiles; they cannot open any locally created User Profiles unless you choose the ***"Allow non-roaming user profiles to be opened"*** option. For a list of the options to choose from, refer to Selecting Roaming User Profile options.
- If a user is dictating with a Roaming User Profile, the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer Scheduler*** is disabled on the local user's computer. You must run the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** on the computer where your Master Roaming User Profiles are located or on an administrator's workstation. For more information, see Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer with a Roaming User Profile.

Administrative Settings: Roaming tab

You use the ***Roaming*** tab of the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box to set up the Roaming feature. You must set up the Roaming feature on each computer where you want users to dictate with a Roaming User Profile.

When Roaming is enabled in Administrative Settings by default the Open User Profiles dialog box displays large numbers of User Profiles quickly. They can also be organized into subfolders. See "Creating subfolders for Roaming User Profiles" in the Dragon Help for more information.

Enable

Select ***Enable*** to activate the Roaming feature and the Roaming User Profile options.

Network Directories

To set the location of the master Roaming User Profile(s):

1. Click the ***Add*** button. You use the ***Roaming User Network Location*** dialog box to define the network location of the master Roaming User Profiles. The location you pick must be accessible to all computers on the network that you want available for dictation with *Dragon*.
2. Set the ***Display Name*** and the ***Address*** under ***Network Location***. The Roaming feature supports the following types of locations:
    - Mapped Drive—the format is: <*drive letter*>**:**<*folder name*>. For example, **y:\roaming**.
    - UNC Path—the format is: *****servername******sharename******path******filename*.
    - HTTP (http:)—the format is: **http://***myserver*.com/<name_of_virtualdirectory> where <name_of_virtualdirectory> is the name of the virtual directory set up by an administrator during setup of the IIS or Apache web site. For HTTP locations, click the HTTP Settings button to set information specific to your HTTP connection. You can also test your connection to the HTTP server from the HTTP Settings dialog box.
    - HTTP with SSL (https:)—the format is**: https://***myserver*.com/<name_of_virtualdirectory> where <name_of_virtualdirectory> is the name of the virtual directory set up by an administrator during setup of the IIS or Apache web site. For HTTP with SSL locations, click the SSL Settings button to set information specific to your HTTP with SSL connection. You can also test your connection to the HTTP with SSL server from the SSL Settings dialog box.

Local directory (for cache)

When a user opens a Master Roaming User Profile, *Dragon* transfers a copy of that user profile to the local computer. The local copy is called the Local Roaming User Profile.

You can change the setting of this location, always called **<Roaming Local>**.

The default location of <Roaming Local> on Windows XP is:
`Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\N-`

uance\NaturallySpeaking11\RoamingUsers\<display name>\<username>

See Dragon file structure for information on the default location of the RoamingUsers directory for Dragon 11 or greater on Windows Vista and Windows 7.

The <display name> is a name you assigned as a Master Roaming User Profiles location. You can have multiple network storage locations for your Master Roaming User Profiles.

The <username> is the name of an individual Master Roaming User Profile. There is a separate directory for each user profile.

Click the ***Browse*** button to find or create a new location.

Check Boxes for Roaming User options

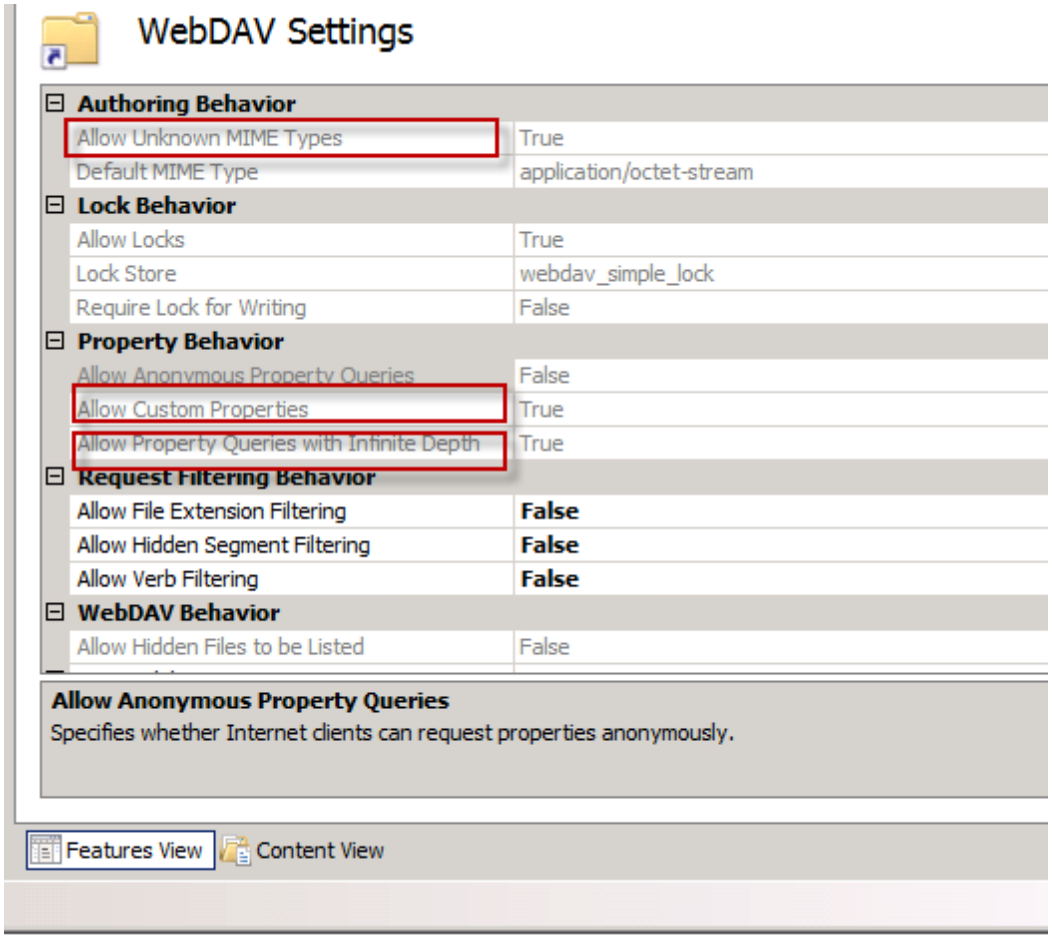
The check boxes and other components below the ***Local directory*** are the ***Roaming User options***. You can also configure the Open User Profiles dialog box to display the Classic Open User Profiles dialog if desired. See Selecting Roaming User Profile options. for details.

Restore Defaults

Returns the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box to the state it had when you first installed *Dragon*. Note that the default is to have the Roaming feature turned off.

Notes: For use of WebDAV

- After you install Internet Information Services and WebDAV, you need to use the Internet Information Services Manager tool to set the "Allow Unknown MIME Types", "Allow Custom Properties", and "Allow Property Queries with Infinite Depth" settings to true. For example, in IIS 7:



- For more information, see Configuring Internet Information Services and WebDAV for HTTP Roaming.
- If you connected to your Roaming User Profile Master Directory over HTTP and you find that not all your User Profiles are listed in the **Open User Profile** dialog box, or after creating a Roaming User Profile you cannot open it again, or the Open User Profile dialog box does not display all the vocabularies and acoustic models for your User Profiles, make sure that you:
    - Add all file extensions within your Master Roaming User Profile directories and sub-directories to the Registered MIME types list of your IIS server. You could also add a wildcard (.*) MIME-type. For more information on adding a wildcard (.*) MIME-type, see http://www.microsoft.com/technet/prodtechnol/WindowsServer2003/Library/IIS/cd3e6b8e-b497-4b8c-b552-83a2c180cd32.mspx?mfr=true.
    - Check that no files in your User Profile directory are locked, password protected, or otherwise access-restricted by your server permissions.

Administrative Settings: Roaming User Network Location

You use the ***Roaming User Network Location*** dialog box to define the network location of the master Roaming User Profiles.

The location you pick must be accessible to all computers where users will dictate using a Roaming User Profile.

Display Name

Sets the directory name displayed in the following locations:

- The ***Roaming*** tab of the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box
- The ***Location of user profile*** drop-down list in the ***Open User Profile*** dialog box.

  Note: With the Roaming feature enabled, the ***Open User Profile*** dialog box displays only User Profiles in the Roaming User Profile locations. To let the users open both local (non-roaming) and Roaming User Profiles, select the ***Allow non-roaming user profiles to be opened*** option on the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box. Clearing this option prevents users from dictating with a non-roaming (local) User Profile by accident. For more information, see Enabling the Roaming feature on each computer where a user will dictate.
- The ***Location of user profile*** drop-down list in the ***Manage User Profiles*** dialog box.

Network Location—Address

On each computer where you plan to have users dictating as a Roaming User Profiles, you must tell that installation of *Dragon* where the Master Roaming User Profiles are located.

The Roaming feature supports the following types of locations:

Mapped Drives and UNC Paths

Mapped drives connect to a shared network folder that has a drive letter assigned to it.

UNC paths connect to a shared network folder using the Universal Naming Convention (UNC) to locate a user profile. The UNC is a way to identify a shared file on a computer or network without having to know the storage device it is on. The UNC path format is: *servername**sharename**path**filename*.

To use a mapped drive or UNC path:

1. Under ***Network Location***, enter the address of the mapped drive or UNC path.
   You can click Browse to browse for the location of the mapped drive or UNC path. This displays the Browse for Folder dialog box. You can also create a new directory on the mapped drive or UNC path by clicking the Make New Folder button.
2. Click **OK** when you are done.

Intranet/Internet connections

The Intranet/Internet connection supports both HTTP and HTTP over an encrypted Secure Sockets Layer (SSL).

To use an Intranet/Internet connection:

1. Under ***Network Location***, enter the URL address of your HTTP or HTTPS server where your master Roaming User Profiles are located.
2. Click
   - ***HTTP Settings...***to display the ***HTTP Settings*** dialog box, where you can set information specific to your HTTP connection like Authentication, Firewall, and Proxy Server information. You can also test your connection to the HTTP server from this dialog box. For more information, see HTTP Settings.
   - ***SSL Settings...***to display the ***SSL Settings*** dialog box, where you can set information specific to your HTTPS (SSL) connection. You can also test your connection to the HTTPS server from this dialog box. For more information, see SSL Settings.

Note: You cannot create a non-Roaming User Profile on an HTTP or HTTPS connection. You can create only Roaming User Profiles on an HTTP or HTTPS connection and only when the Roaming feature is enabled.

Setting up HTTP Connection: HTTP Settings

You use the ***HTTP Settings*** dialog box to define and configure the connection to your web (HTTP) server. Enter information about your connection in the following sections and text boxes of the dialog box:

Authentication

Passwords

Defines how a user that uses a Roaming User Profile enters the server username and password. This username/password is to the server, not a local login:

- ***Prompt for User and Password***: Select if local users will be prompted for a username/password when they connect to the HTTP server.
- ***User/password***: Sets the default username/password needed to connect to the HTTP server. Be sure to put the domain name followed by a backslash in front of the user login name; for example, `Nuance\JWyman`.

Authentication Type

Sets the type of authentication used on the HTTP server you specified as the ***Address*** in the ***Roaming User Network Location*** dialog box. Select the type that indicates how your server is configured:

- ***Basic***: Choose if the server is configured for Basic authentication, where the username and password are passed over the network as clear text
- ***Digest***: Choose if the server is configured for Digest authentication, where the passwords are never transmitted across the internet in unencrypted form. Digest is not supported for IIS. Note: Digest authentication through a proxy server with Internet Information Server (IIS) 6.0 is not supported.

Note: For security reasons, be sure that anonymous logins are disabled on the HTTP or HTTPS server.

Connection

Follow Redirects

If you are storing the Master Roaming User Profiles on a server that redirects incoming connections to another location, you can define how *Dragon* handles these redirects:

- ***Never***: redirects are never followed, but ignored.
- ***Always***: redirects are always followed.
- ***Same Scheme Only***: only redirects using the same scheme as the client request are permitted.

Keep Connection Alive

This setting tells the client and server to keep the connection alive after the current session ends.

Firewall and Proxy Servers

Use Proxy Server

Select ***Use Proxy Server*** if you are connecting to your HTTP server through a proxy server.

Type

Select the type of firewall used on the HTTP server from the drop-down list:

- ***HTTP Proxy***: Select for a proxy server that specializes in HTML (web page) transactions.
- ***Tunnel***: Select if you are connecting to the server with tunneling software.
- ***SOCKS4***: Select for a SOCKS4 protocol that relays TCP sessions at a firewall host to allow application users transparent access across the firewall. SOCKS4 doesn't support authentication, UDP proxy. SOCKS4 clients require full Domain Name Service (DNS).
- ***SOCKS5***: Select for a SOCKS5 protocol that relays TCP sessions at a firewall host to allow application users transparent access across the firewall. SOCKS5 supports multiple authentication methods. SOCKS5 clients use the SOCKS5 server to perform the DNS lookup.

Server

Enter the server name provided by your network administrator.

Port

Enter the port number needed to connect to the proxy server or firewall.

User

Enter any username needed to log in to the proxy server or firewall.

Password

Enter any password needed to log in to the proxy server or firewall.

Firewall Data or Proxy Authorization

Enter any special authentication string provided by your network administrator.

Timeouts

Lock

Set to the number of seconds the server should wait before breaking the lock on any open Master Roaming User Profiles. Setting the lock to ***0*** uses the default setting from the server. Specifying another time overrides the server default. The administrator is responsible for breaking this type of lock.

A network locks prevent anyone from opening a Master Roaming User Profile that someone else has already opened. While this process does not take a long time, network problems can cause a lock to become “stuck” and not release when the opening process is completed. When this

happens, the next time you try to open that user profile, you see a message informing you of the lock.

The Administrator has to break the lock.

Connection

Number of seconds before *Dragon* should close the connection to the server either when the connection is idle or after the connection has been open for that duration.

Type

Sets when the connection timeout in the previous text box applies:

- ***Inactivity***: Closes the connection after the Roaming User Profile is inactive for the specified time.
- ***Absolute***: Closes the connection after the specified time independent of any Roaming User Profile network activity. Use this option with caution, as it could close the connection during synchronization.

Test Connection

Once you have filled in the information, you can click the ***Test Connection*** button to test the connection to the HTTP server.

Restore Defaults

Restores the default settings.

After you click ***OK***, you return to the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box.

Setting up secure web server connection: SSL Settings

You use the ***SSL Settings*** dialog box to define and configure the connection to your secure web (HTTPS) server. Enter information about your connection in the following sections and text boxes of the dialog box:

Certificate Store

Here you indicate the type of certificate that provides server identity, certificate, and public key information to clients that try to establish a connection:

Certificate Store Type

Select the certificate store type used for the client certificate on the local computer:

- ***User (default)***: For Windows, choose if the certificate store is a certificate store owned by the current user. For Java, choose if the certificate store is the name of a JKS (Java Key Store) file. If the provider is OpenSSL, choose if the certificate store is a file that contains the PEM encoded certificate and private key.
- ***Machine***: Choose if the certificate store is a machine store (not available in Java or when provider is OpenSSL).
- ***PFX file***: Choose if the certificate store is the name of a Private Key Server or PFX (PKCS12) file containing certificates. If the provider is OpenSSL, the file may contain only one certificate and private key.
- ***PFX Blob***: Choose if the certificate store is a string (binary or base64 encoded) representing a certificate store in PFX (PKCS12) format.
- ***PEM Key***: Choose if the certificate store is a string or file name that contains a Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) encoded certificate and private key. This store type is currently not supported in Java.

Certificate Store

The name of the certificate store for the client certificate on the local computer:

The storage location is called the certificate store. A certificate store will often have numerous certificates, possibly issued from a number of a different certification authorities:

- ***MY***: A certificate store holding personal certificates with their associated private keys.
- ***CA***: A certificate store holding Certifying Authority (CA) certificates.
- ***ROOT***: A certificate store holding ROOT certificates.
- ***SPC***: A certificate store holding Software Publisher Certificate (SPC) certificates.
- ***Other***: Any other Certificate Store not listed above.

Notes:

- If you select ***PFX file*** for the ***Certificate Store Type***, for the ***Certificate Store*** select ***Other*** and enter the name of the file in the associated text box below it.

- If you select ***PFX Blob*** for the ***Certificate Store Type***, for the ***Certificate Store*** select ***Other*** and enter the binary contents of a PFX file (for example, the PKCS12) in the associated text box below it.
- If you are using OpenSSL, for the ***Certificate Store*** select ***Other*** and enter the name of the file containing a certificate and a private key in the associated text box.

Certificate Store Password

The password for the ***Certificate Store*** on the local computer if one is required.

Open SSL

Select ***Using OpenSSL*** if the HTTPS server uses ***OpenSSL*** as a Certificate Authority. OpenSSL is a free non-commercial implementation of SSL.

When you select ***Using OpenSSL***, you must provide:

- ***Cipher List***: A string that controls the ciphers to be used by SSL. The cipher list consists of one or more cipher strings separated by colons.
- ***Certificate Authority File***: Name of the file containing the list of certificate authorities (CAs) trusted by your application. The file set by this property should contain a list of CA certificates in PEM format.
- ***CA Directory***: Path to a directory containing CA certificates. The path set by this property should point to a directory containing CA certificates in PEM format.

General

Use this section to enable/disable the supported security protocols on the HTTPS server.

- ***TLS1***: Version 1 of the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol.
- ***SSL3***: Version 3 of the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol.
- ***SSL2***: Version 2 of the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol.
- ***PCT1***: Version 1 of the Private Communications Transport (PCT) protocol.

Notes:

- Although a number of sites still support SSL2, Nuance recommends that you disable it because of potential security vulnerabilities.
- If you select ***Using OpenSSL***, this functionality is provided by the ***Cipher List***.

Test Connection

Once you have filled in the information, you can click the ***Test Connection*** button to test the connection to the HTTPS (SSL) server.

Restore Defaults

Restores the default settings.

After you click ***OK***, you return to the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box.

Testing and troubleshooting an HTTP connection

Once you have supplied all the necessary information needed to connect to your HTTP server, press the ***Test Connection*** button. The ***Test Connection*** button tests the connection to your HTTP server based on the information you supplied in the Roaming User Network Location and HTTP Settings dialog boxes.

Troubleshooting test connections

The table below lists the possible messages you might receive after pressing the ***Test Connection*** button.

Message	Solution
Connection test successful!	▪ None—test successful.
Could not connect to the network location.	▪ Check spelling and syntax of the HTTP address in the HTTP Settings dialog. ▪ Check your local network for problems.
Could not copy a file to the network location	▪ Check create and write privileges on the server ▪ WebDav Server not installed or active. For more information, see Configuring Internet Information Services and WebDAV for HTTP Roaming.
Could not create a directory on the network location	▪ Check the create directory privileges on the server for the Master Roaming directory. ▪ Check the privileges for creating sub-directories under the Master Roaming directory.
Could not delete a file from the network location	▪ Check permissions on the Master Roaming directory. The user must have read, write, and modify privileges ▪ Check that privileges are inherited in the sub-directories.
Could not delete a directory from the network location	▪ Check permissions on the Master Roaming directory. The user must have read, write, and modify privileges ▪ Check that privileges are inherited in the sub-directories.
Could not copy files into a directory created on the network location	▪ Check permissions on the Master Roaming directory. The user must have read, write, and modify privileges. ▪ Check for authentication time-out on your server. ▪ Check your local network for problems.
Could not list the contents of a directory created on the network location	▪ Check permissions on the Master Roaming directory. The user must have read, write, and modify privileges ▪ Check that privileges are inherited in the sub-directories.
Contents of newly created directory TempDir were incorrect	▪ Caused by an incomplete directory listing. Try again. If the problem persists, check the condition of your network.

Message	Solution
Could not copy a file from the network location	▪ Check permissions on the Local Master Roaming directory. ▪ Check that the Local Master Roaming directory exists. ▪ MIME types not set to *.* (the file is .txt).
Could not get the size of a newly created directory on the network location.	▪ Apache: Make sure DavDepthInfinity directive is set to "on" for Master Roaming directory.
Could not rename a file on the network location	▪ Check permissions on the Master Roaming directory. The user must have read, write, and modify privileges ▪ Check that privileges are inherited in the sub-directories.
Could not rename a directory on the network location	▪ Check permissions on the Master Roaming directory. The user must have read, write, and modify privileges ▪ Check that privileges are inherited in the sub-directories.
Could not copy a directory within the network location	▪ Check permissions on the Master Roaming directory. The user must have read, write, and modify privileges ▪ Check that privileges are inherited in the sub-directories.

Setting and selecting Roaming User Profile options

The ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box also contains several options that you can choose from to indicate how you want a Roaming User Profile to function at each Roaming User Profile location.

These options can effect how much data is transferred across your network when the Master and Local Roaming User Profiles are synchronized. For more information, see Estimating Network traffic caused by synchronization and How Dragon Synchronizes Master and Local Roaming User Profiles.

Roaming User Profile options on the Administrative Settings dialog box

Display Classic Open User Profiles dialog

Enable this option to display the Classic **Open User Profiles** dialog box. The setting configures the **Open User Profiles** dialog box to display only folders that contain actual Dragon Medical User Profiles in the **Location of User Profiles** box.

Note:

For faster performance at large sites with Roaming User Profile directories, Nuance recommends using the default appearance for the **Open User Profiles** dialog box. Displaying the Classic **Open User Profiles** dialog box takes longer because Dragon Medical first verifies that directories contain valid Dragon Medical User Profiles. Directory structures do not display with the Classic setting.

Allow non-Roaming User Profiles to be opened

Select this box to permit the user to open non-Roaming (local) User Profiles. Nuance recommends clearing this option to prevent anyone from dictating with a non-Roaming (local) user profile by accident. You may want to set this option temporarily in order to convert non-roaming (local) User Profiles to Roaming User Profiles, and then clear it when you are done.

Merge contents of vocdelta.dat into network user profile when file is full

Select this box to copy the contents of the local ***vocdelta.dat*** file to the master Roaming User Profile without running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer.

If you do not set this option and if you have not run the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer for a long time, the user will see a message when the vocdelta.dat file becomes full. If you do not run the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer regularly, you should set this option to prevent end users from seeing this message.

Vocdelta.dat is the file used to store vocabulary changes in the Master Roaming User Profile. It is updated whenever a Local Roaming User Profile is closed, and it is used to update the Local

Roaming User Profile with vocabulary changes every time that user profile is opened. When you run the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on the Master Roaming User Profile, Dragon incorporates the contents of vocdelta.dat into the vocabulary (.voc) file and clears the content of vocdelta.dat.

If you check this setting, Dragon monitors the size of the ***vocdelta.dat*** file. When the ***vocdelta.dat*** file reaches 90% of it's maximum size (500 KB), *Dragon* incorporates the contents of the vocdelta.dat file into the vocabulary (.voc) file and clears vocdelta.dat

This operation occurs when the user opens the local Roaming User Profile. This operation can take a long time because the vocabulary file must be transferred over the network twice. Subsequently, opening the local Roaming User Profile on another workstation can also take a long time because the entire vocabulary file must be copied from the master to the local Roaming User Profile.

Selecting this option will transfer at maximum 500 KB, or 12 bytes/word across the network at synchronization if the Roaming and Local copies are different..

Access network at user profile open/close only

Select this box to synchronize changes made to the local Roaming User Profile to the Master Roaming User Profile only when a local Roaming User Profile opens or closes. If this box is not selected, then these local changes are immediately transferred to the Master Roaming User Profile. The only changes affected by this setting are the changes a user makes locally from the Options dialog box, therefore this setting is highly unlikely to have a perceptible impact on Dragon's performance.

At synchronization, setting this option will copy approximately

- 18 MB of vocabulary files (*.voc).
- 240 MB of acoustic archive files create for each dictation session (acarchive.nwv and acarchive.enwv).
  Note: These files are only copied from the Local to the Roaming User Profile; they are never copied from the Roaming User Profile to the local User Profile.

These file will synchronize across the network when:

- Vocabulary files - when the Local user modifies the vocabulary with information from the **Learn from specific documents**, **Learn from sent e-mails**, or Vocabulary Optimizer dialogs or when the Roaming and Local copies are different.
- Acoustic archive files - these files will be copied to session folder if it exists. Once the master voice_container limit is reached, nothing more is copied.

Ask before breaking locks on network user profiles (recommended for UNC and mapped drives)

Select this box to keep the option of maintaining or breaking a network lock when opening a Roaming User Profile. Normally, network locks prevent anyone from opening a Roaming User Profile at the same time someone else is opening that user profile. While this process does not take a long time, network problems can cause a lock to become "stuck" and not release when the opening process is completed. When this happens, the next time anyone tries to open that user profile,

Dragon displays a message stating that the user profile is locked and giving them the option of overriding it. If you do not want this message displaying and always want to break a network lock in this situation, you can clear this option to prevent the message from appearing. Because the presence of a lock can indicate a problem that needs to be addressed, Nuance recommends that you enable this option.

Notes:

- This option is valid for users connecting to the Master Roaming User Profile location using a mapped drive or UNC drive, but is not supported for users connecting over HTTP.
- Be careful when in breaking a locked Roaming User Profile. For example, if you break a lock when another user is writing to the Master Roaming User Profile, breaking the lock may corrupt the Master Roaming User Profiles.
- If a user opens a Roaming User Profile while the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer is running on the Master Roaming User Profile, the user will see a message but can continue.

Set audio levels on each machine (recommended)

Select this box to run the ***Check your microphone*** option from the ***Accuracy Center*** window before your first session with a Roaming User Profile. This includes the ***Volume Check*** and the microphone ***Quality Check***. Check this option if your users are dictating on different computers or on a single computer, like a laptop, in many different locations. When a user changes computers or locations, the audio setup data can vary depending on differences in the microphone and sound card, as well as differences in ambient sound levels of each Roaming User Profile location. In situations where *Dragon* detects a significant difference between operating systems, sound cards, microphones, or other hardware, the program will prompt you to run ***Check your microphone*** even if you do not have this option selected.

Save acoustic information

A user selects the **Save acoustic information** option to make sure that their acoustic information is saved along with their local User Profile. By saving the acoustic information, the user ensures that any corrections they make will be available after they close and re-open the User Profile. This option also makes sure that these corrections will be synchronized between the Local and Master Roaming User Profile if the user also enables the **Always copy acoustic information to network** option.

This option is turned on by default

Copy Dragon Log to Network

Select this box to copy the Dragon.log file from the local workstation to the master Roaming User Profile location whenever the program synchronizes the local and master Roaming User Profile. Dragon.log contains information that can help to diagnose problems that your users might encounter using *Dragon*.

Note: The *Dragon*.log file will not be copied once the maximum size is reached in the ***Disk space reserved for network archive*** option.

Selecting this option can increase how long it takes to close a Roaming User Profile. It can also limit the usefulness of the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer because it reduces the

amount of acoustic data that can be stored in the network archive. Nuance recommends that you not set this option unless requested by Nuance Technical Support.

Selecting this option will transfer 1 MB or less of data across the network at synchronization. These files are only copied from the Local Roaming User Profile to the Master Roaming User Profile; they are never copied from the Master Roaming User Profile to the Local Roaming User Profile.

Always copy acoustic information to network

Select this box to copy the user profile's acoustic model (.usr and .sig files) to the Master Roaming User Profile location.

If you chose not to copy the user profile's acoustic information to the network, updates to the acoustic model that you make on one computer (for example by correcting and training words) will not be available on other computers used by that particular Roaming User Profile until you run the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** on the Master Roaming User Profile location and the Local and Master Roaming User Profiles synchronize. Therefore, if you do not run the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** on the Master Roaming User Profiles regularly, you should set this option.

By always copying the acoustic information to the Master Roaming User Profile location, you ensure these accuracy improvements will be available when the Master Roaming User Profile is opened from another location. However, setting this option can increase the amount of time it takes to close a Roaming User Profile.

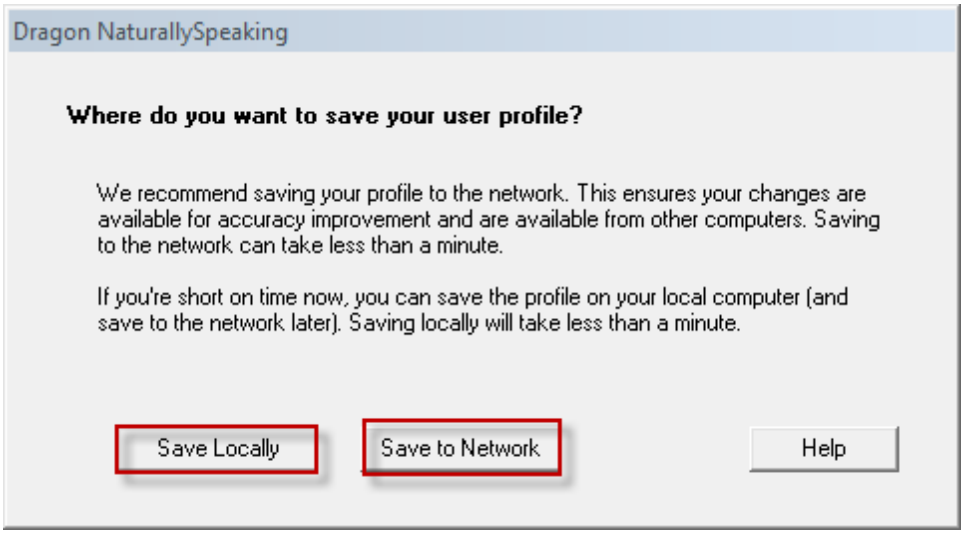
In Dragon 11 or greater , a user can set the **Save Acoustic information** option to control if Dragon saves the .usr and .sig files on each computer they dictate on.
See "Controlling updates to the acoustic components of a User Profile" in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

The transfer of acoustic information based on this option's setting is not limited by setting the ***Disk space reserved for network archive*** option.

Setting this option will copy approximately 15 MB across the network at synchronization if the Roaming and Local copies are different.

Prompt before saving to network location

Select the **Prompt before saving to network location** option to display a dialog box that lets you choose where to save your User Profile. Dragon displays the dialog box when you attempt to close Dragon, close a User Profile, or shut down the operating system. The dialog box displays an estimate of the time required to save the profile to the local cache or the master location. This option is turned off by default.



To save the User Profile to the local cache, in the dialog box, select **Save Locally**. If you are on a slow network, you can save the User Profile to the local cache to avoid waiting for the profile to synchronize with the master profile in the master location.

To save the User Profile to the master location on the network, in the dialog box, select **Save to Network**. Nuance recommends that you save a User Profile to the master location for accuracy improvement and to ensure that updates to the profile are available on other computers.

Conserve archive size on network

Select this box to prevent copying of ***.DRA*** files (files that contain the acoustic data from the latest dictation session) to the Master Roaming User Profile location when the program synchronizes the Local and Master Roaming User Profiles. Leaving this box unchecked allows the local ***.DRA*** files to synchronize with the Master Roaming User Profile, which makes the ***.DRA*** files available to the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** when it is run on the Master Roaming User Profile locations and provides increased accuracy.

However, because ***.DRA*** files can be large, if you experience excessive network slowdowns, checking this option may solve the problem by eliminating the copying of these files each time the Master and Local Roaming User Profiles synchronize. You can still run the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** on the Master Roaming User Profile, but since it will not have the ***.DRA*** files to process, the accuracy gains will be less.

Note: The ***.DRA*** files will not be copied once the maximum size is reached in the ***Disk space reserved for network archive*** option.

At synchronization, setting this option will copy approximately 1.3 MB for each minute of dictation saved in the .DRA files. These files are only copied from the Local Roaming User Profile to the Master Roaming User Profile; they are never copied from the Master Roaming User Profile to the Local Roaming User Profile.

Disk space reserved for network archive

Use this option to specify the maximum size of the directory containing the acoustic data (the .dra and the log files) available to the ***Acoustic Optimizer***. By default the archive size is 500 MB per

dictation source. To conserve space, you can reduce the default size and select the ***Conserve archive size on network*** option.

Creating a Roaming User Profile on the local computer

There are two ways to create a Roaming User Profile:

- Train a new Roaming User Profile
- Convert a non-roaming local User Profile into a Roaming User Profile

To open or create a Roaming User Profile, your local installation of *Dragon* must be configured for Roaming User Profiles. For more information, see Enabling the Roaming feature on each computer where a user will dictate.

Notes

- If you use a variety of microphones or input devices with your Roaming User Profile, see the topic: Using multiple dictation sources with a single user profile.
- If you modify a master Roaming User Profile while you have a local Roaming User Profile open on a computer that is not currently connected to the network (for example, a laptop at a remote location), the changes to the master Roaming User Profile will overwrite any changes you make to the local Roaming User Profile when you synchronize the local and master Roaming User Profiles.
- When a user that is using a Roaming User Profile exits *Dragon*, switches User Profiles, closes a User Profile, or saves a User Profile, *Dragon* saves changes to the Local Roaming User Profile and then synchronizes these changes with the Master Roaming User Profile on the network. For more information, see How Dragon Synchronizes Master and Local Roaming User Profiles

Creating and training a new Roaming User Profile

To create and train a new Roaming User Profile:

1. To display the Open User Profile dialog box, select ***Profile*** > ***Open User Profile*** on the ***Drag-onBar***.

   Note: When the Roaming feature is enabled, users can create only Roaming User Profiles. The ***Location of user profiles*** field displays only the Roaming User Profile locations you defined in the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box. To let the users create both local (non-roaming) and Roaming User Profiles, select the ***Allow non-Roaming User profiles to be opened*** option on the ***Roaming*** tab of the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box. Clearing this option prevents User Profiles from dictating with a non-roaming local User Profile by accident. For more information, see Enabling the Roaming feature on each computer where a user will dictate.

   If you allow users to open both non-roaming local and Roaming User Profiles, be sure they select the correct location from the ***Location of user profiles*** field.

   If there are multiple roaming profile locations, make sure each user selects the correct location from the ***Location of user profiles*** field.
2. Click ***New*** and begin training the User Profile as you would any other User Profile.
3. When you are finished training the User Profile, the program saves the User Profiles into the master Roaming User Profile location specified in the ***Location of user profiles*** field.

Converting a non-roaming local User Profile into a Roaming User Profile

You can convert an existing non-roaming local user profile to a Roaming User Profile from the ***Manage User Profiles*** dialog box. Converting a non-roaming local User Profile copies that user profile to the Master Roaming User Profile location.

To convert a non-Roaming User Profile to a Roaming User Profile:

1. Select ***Profile*** > ***Manage User Profiles*** from the ***DragonBar***. This action displays the ***Manager User Profiles*** dialog box.
2. In the ***Location of user profile*** drop-down list at the bottom of the dialog box, select the non-roaming local location of your User Profiles. Now the list under ***User Profiles*** should include all the non-roaming local User Profiles that you can convert to Master Roaming User Profiles.
3. Select the non-roaming local User Profiles you want to convert to a Master Roaming User Profile.
4. Click the ***Advanced*** button and then select ***Save to Roaming*** from the menu that pops up. The ***Save to Roaming*** dialog box appears.
5. Under **Select Roaming Master Location to save the user**, select the appropriate Master Roaming User Profile location from the drop-down list. In the **Choose subdirectory if wanted** field, you can select a subdirectory within the Roaming Master location. When finished, click ***OK***. A Master Roaming User Profile location appears in this list only if it is currently available to the local computer.
6. Repeat the process for any other non-roaming local User Profiles you want to convert to Master Roaming User Profiles.

Dictating with a Roaming User Profile

You dictate with a Roaming User Profile the same way you would with any other User Profile. For specific information about working with a Roaming User Profile, refer to the following topics:

- Opening a Roaming User Profile
- Using multiple dictation sources with a single user profile
- Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer for Roaming User Profiles
- Synchronizing Master and Local Roaming User Profiles

Opening a Roaming User Profile

When the Roaming feature is enabled, you can only open Roaming User Profiles (unless you set an option allowing speakers to open both Roaming and Local User Profiles).

To open a Roaming User Profile:

1. On the ***DragonBar***, select ***Profile*** > ***Open User Profile***.
2. On the ***Open User Profile*** dialog box, select a User Profile from the list, and click ***Open***. If you do not see the User Profile you are looking for, press F5 to refresh the list of User Profile.

Notes:

- If you allow users to select both non-roaming local and Roaming User Profiles, make sure they select the correct location from the ***Location of user profiles*** drop-down list.
- When the Roaming feature is enabled, you can only open Roaming User Profiles. The ***Location of user profiles*** drop down list displays only the Roaming User Profile locations you defined in the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box. To let the users open both local (non-roaming) and Roaming User Profiles, select the ***Allow non-Roaming User profiles to be opened*** option in the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box. Clearing this option prevents users from dictating with a non-roaming local User Profile by accident. For more information, see Enabling the Roaming feature on each computer where a user will dictate.
- If you connect to your Roaming User Profile Master Directory over HTTP or HTTP with SSL, and you find that the ***Open User Profile*** dialog box does not display all the vocabularies and acoustic models for your User Profiles, make sure that:
  - The ***.INI*** extensions is registered in MIME types (***ini.png***) list of your IIS server.

    Add all file extensions within your Master Roaming User Profile directories and sub-directories to the Registered MIME types list of your IIS server. You could also add a wildcard (.*) MIME-type. For more information on adding a wildcard (.*) MIME-type, see: http://www.microsoft.com/technet/prodtechnol/WindowsServer2003/Library/IIS/cd3e6b8e-b497-4b8c-b552-83a2c180cd32.mspx?mfr=true
  - The user's ***topics.ini*** and ***acoustics.ini*** files are not locked, password protected, or otherwise access restricted by your server permissions.

Using multiple dictation sources with a single User Profile

It is possible to have a variety of dictation sources (audio input devices) for a single set of User Profiles so that the speaker can deploy various microphones or portable recording devices. This ability is especially useful with the Roaming feature. By allowing multiple dictation sources, you can still have the same User Profiles for each location regardless of the microphone type.

To add a new dictation source to a user profile

1. In the ***Open User Profile*** dialog box, select the User Profile to dictate with the new dictation source.
2. Click the ***Source*** button and then click ***New***. The ***New Dictation Source*** dialog box appears.
3. Select a new input device for dictation from the list on ***the New Dictation Source*** dialog box. You can choose from among different microphone or recorder types.
4. Click ***OK***. You return to the ***Open User Profile*** dialog box.
5. Select the user profile you just created and click ***Open***. If you have not previously trained the user profile with the new dictation source, the ***Profile Creation wizard*** appears and you can begin training.

Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer for Roaming User Profiles

When the ***Roaming*** feature is enabled on a workstation, that workstation cannot run the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** or the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer Scheduler*** because the optimizer or scheduler can only be run on the Master Roaming User Profile. Later, any optimizations done by the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** are copied to each Local Roaming User Profile when synchronization occurs.

The system administrator is responsible for running the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** on the network location of the Master Roaming User Profiles. The administrator can install *Dragon* on the computer where the Master Roaming User Profiles are located or an administrator's computer that has network access to the Master Roaming User Profiles and run the ***Scheduler*** for the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer***. If possible, the administrator's workstation should be co-located with the server because a large amount of data needs to be transferred between the server and the workstation running the optimizer.

Note: You must have Windows Administrator privileges on the computer where you are running the ***Scheduler*** for the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer***.

Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on a multi-core computer

If a Roaming User Profile is created and used on a multi-core computer with the ***Roaming*** feature enabled, when an administrator runs the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on that profile on a single-core computer, all accuracy improvements may not be applied to the profile. If an administrator runs the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer for a Roaming User Profile on a single-core computer, when a user opens the profile on a multi-core computer, only the first acoustic model will load.

To make sure that corrections and accuracy improvements that users make are applied to their Roaming User Profile, an administrator should run the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on Roaming User Profiles only on a multi-core computer.

Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on a User Profile with two acoustic models

If the computer that a user dictates on meets certain system requirements, Dragon 11 or greater can use two acoustic models (instead of one) with a User Profile. Using two acoustic models

instead of one increases recognition and dictation accuracy. Acoustic models that can be added in pairs to a User Profile are called Two-pass models.

See Using multiple acoustic models with a User Profile for more information.

To run the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer to optimize Roaming User Profiles

1. Be sure that a copy of *Dragon* is installed on the computer where you plan to run the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer***. Also be sure that the ***Roaming*** feature is not enabled.
2. On the Windows ***Start*** menu, select ***Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5***> ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking Tools*** > ***Scheduler for Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** to start the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer Scheduler***.
3. Access the master directory of the Roaming User Profiles you want to optimize: select **File** > ***Set Speaker Directory*** from the menu of the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer Scheduler*** window. In the ***Set User Profile Directory*** dialog box, either enter the path of the directory or click the ***Browse*** button. If the User Profiles you want to optimize are located in multiple directories, you can change directories to locate the additional User Profiles.
4. Select the User Profile(s) you want to optimize and set a schedule for running the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer***. For specific instructions, click the ***Help*** button in the window.

Controlling user access to other user's profiles

If you have multiple Dragon users on an end-user workstation, those users will have multiple User Profiles to choose from in Dragon's Open User Profile dialog box.

If you use a shared directory for User Profiles, whether they are roaming or non-roaming, you may be concerned about the ability of a user to see and/or open another user's file as well as their ability to open the correct file. There are several ways to address this concern:

- Many of Nuance's customers address this concern simply through user training. Each user should be aware that if they open another user's file and try to use it, their accuracy will be poor and user-specific customizations will not be available. Therefore, each user has an incentive to use only their own file. However, this fact doesn't prevent a malicious user from damaging another user's file.
- If users always log into Windows with a unique Windows user ID, you can use Windows file permissions to control access to the files. Typically, you do this by granting Full Control or Read/Write/Modify access to the shared directory, but do not allow this permission to propagate to sub-directories. That way, each user becomes the creator owner of any Dragon User Profile that he or she creates. Users can still see all of the Dragon User Profiles in the Open User Profile dialog box, but if they try to select another user's profile a message will appear saying that they do not have permission to access that profile. Apply similar file permissions to the local copy of each Roaming User Profile; the default location for local copies is under
  `C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\ApplicationData\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Roaming Users`
- If users log in using a shared Windows user ID, the best way to control access is through HTTP Roaming. In this configuration, you set up a web server running either IIS or Apache and with the WebDAV file system enabled. On each workstation, you specify a URL on the web server as the Roaming User Profile location. When a user launches Dragon, before displaying the Open User Profile dialog it prompts for a user name and password, which it uses to authenticate against the web server.

  You can use file permissions on the web server to specify which User Profiles are accessible to each account on the web server. File security is a function of the web server and the WebDAV software.

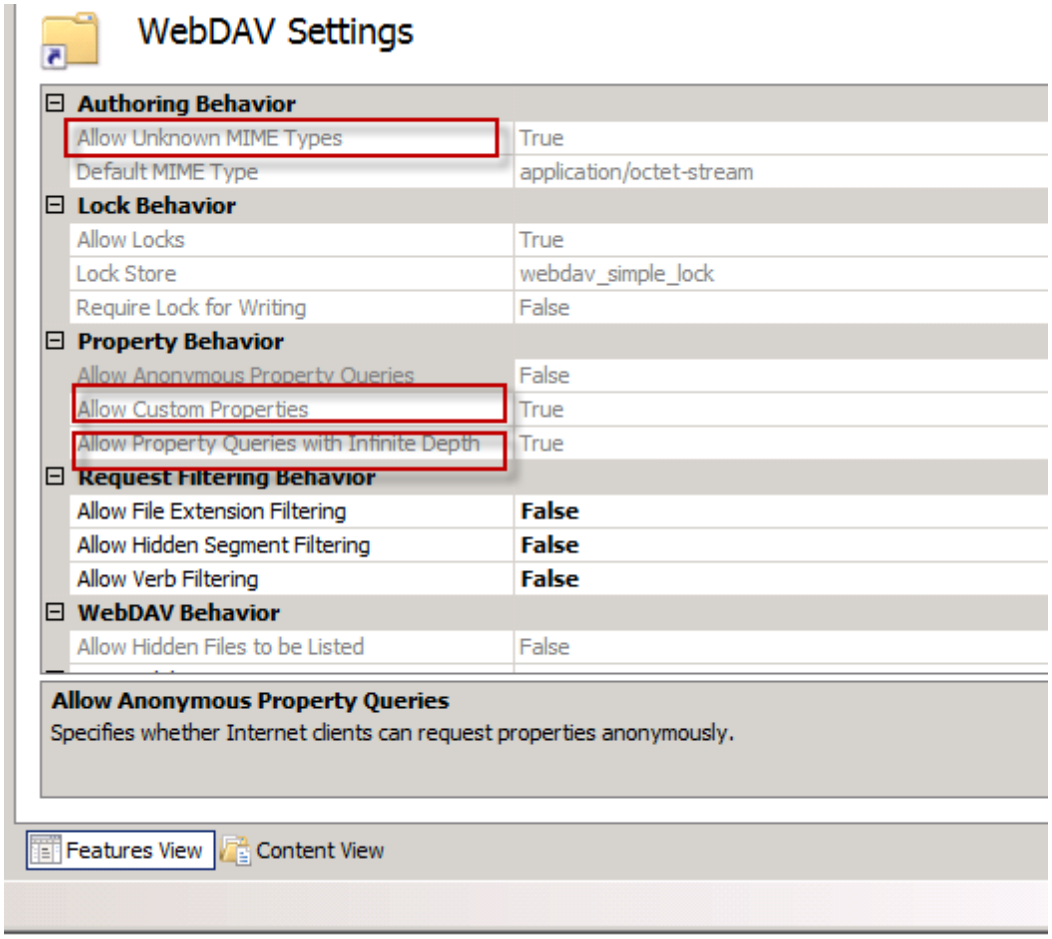
Making it easier for users to select their User Profiles

As described above, the Dragon Open User Profile dialog shows a list of all of the User Profiles in a shared directory (unless you are using HTTP Roaming to limit access to User Profiles). If there are more User Profiles than will fit on one screen, you can train users to go directly to a specific User Profile by typing the first few letters of its name.

In Dragon 11 or greater , you can display and view groups of User Profiles in a tree-style structure. See "Open User Profiles dialog box optimized for Roaming" in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

Notes: For use of WebDAV

- After you install Internet Information Services and WebDAV, you need to use the Internet Information Services Manager tool to set the "Allow Unknown MIME Types", "Allow Custom Properties", and "Allow Property Queries with Infinite Depth" settings to true. For example, in IIS 7:



- For more information, see Configuring Internet Information Services and WebDAV for HTTP Roaming.
- If you connected to your Roaming User Profile Master Directory over HTTP and you find that the Open User Profile dialog box does not display all the vocabularies and acoustic models for your User Profiles, make sure that you:
    - Add all file extensions within your Master Roaming User Profile directories and sub-directories to the Registered MIME types list of your IIS server. You could also add a wildcard (.*) MIME-type. For more information on adding a wildcard (.*) MIME-type, see http://www.microsoft.com/technet/prodtechnol/WindowsServer2003/Library/IIS/cd3e6b8e-b497-4b8c-b552-83a2c180cd32.mspx?mfr=true.

- Check that no files in your User Profile directory are locked, password protected, or otherwise access-restricted by your server permissions.

Configuring Internet Information Services and WebDAV for HTTP Roaming

Here we discuss how to configure Internet Information Services (IIS) and Dragon Professional and Medical to allow you to use WebDAV shares as http roaming users profile locations.

You must perform two steps to use IIS and WebDAV for Dragon HTTP Roaming:

1. Configuring Internet Information Services and WebDAV
2. Configuring Dragon internet roaming

Configuring Internet Information Services and WebDAV

To run WebDAV, you must install Internet Information Services (IIS) version 6 or greater on a server operating system such as Windows 2003 Server or Windows Server 2008.

In this section we discuss installing and configuring WebDAV on both IIS 6.0 and IIS 7.0.

Installing and configuring WebDAV on Internet Information Services 6.0

Internet Information Services 6.0 - Install WebDAV

Perform the following steps after you install IIS 6.0

1. In Windows Server 2003, to install WebDAV on the IIS 6 server.
2. In Control Panel, open **Add or Remove Programs** .
3. Run the **Windows Components Wizard**.
4. Navigate to **Application Server** > **Internet Information Services** > **World Wide Web Service**
5. In the World Wide Web Service, dialog box, select **WebDAV Publishing**.
6. Click **OK**.
7. In the Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager dialog box, select **Web Service Extensions.**
8. Make sure the status for the **WebDAV** item is set to **Allowed**.

Internet Information Services 6.0 - Configuring WebDAV

1. Create a virtual directory that points to the Roaming User directory. For more information, see http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/zwk103ab.aspx
2. Enable Basic Authentication for the Roaming User directory. For more information, see: http://www.microsoft.com/technet/prodtechnol/WindowsServer2003/Library/IIS/9b619620-4f88-488b-8243-e6bc7caf61ad.mspx?mfr=true
3. Do not enter a value for **default domain.** In the Dragon Roaming configuration settings, when you specify a username without specifying a domain or computer name, the domain of the computer is used as the default domain.
4. For DNS, add the “wildcard MIME mapping" to the virtual directory. For instructions, see http://support.microsoft.com/kb/326965
5. In the IIS Manager, select **Default Web Site**.
6. Double-click **WebDAV Authoring Rules**.
7. Select **WebDAV Settings**.
8. In the **WebDAV Settings** page, under **Property Behavior**,set the **Allow Property Queries with Infinite Depth** property to **True**.

9. Make sure that the files in your Roaming User Profile directory are not locked, password protected, or otherwise restricted for access by server permissions.

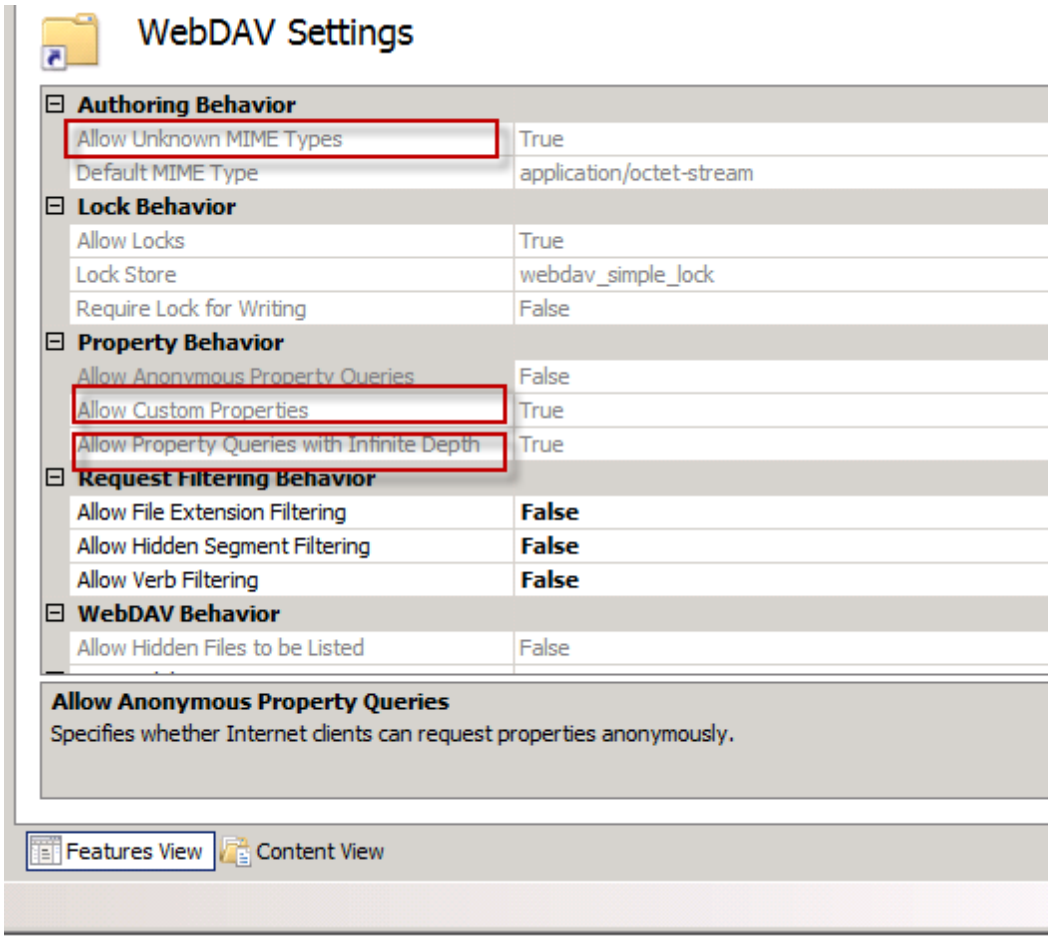
Installing and configuring WebDAV on Internet Information Services 7.0

Internet Information Services 7.0 - Install WebDAV

1. Install WebDAV on the IIS 7 server. For more information, see http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc431377.aspx

Internet Information Services 7.0 - Configuring WebDAV

1. Create a virtual directory that points to the Roaming User directory. For more information, see http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb763173.aspx
2. Enable Basic Authentication for the Roaming User directory. For more information, see: http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc733010(WS.10).aspx
3. In the IIS Manager, select **Default Web Site** in the left pane.
4. In the main view, double-click **WebDAV Authoring Rules**.
5. Select **WebDAV Settings**.
6. In the WebDAV Settings page, under Authoring Behavior, set the **Allow Unknown MIME Types** property to **True**.
7. Under Property Behavior, set the **Allow Custom Properties** and **Allow Property Queries with Infinite Depth** properties to **True**.



8. Click **Apply** to save the changes.
9. Make sure that the files in your Roaming User Profile directory are not locked, password protected, or otherwise restricted for access by server permissions.

Configuring Dragon internet roaming

Perform the following steps to configure Dragon internet roaming on all workstations.

1. Start Dragon.
2. Open the Administrative Settings dialog. On the Dragon Bar, select **Tools** > **Administrative Settings**.
3. In the Roaming tab, select **Enable**.
4. Click the **Add** button to add a new network location.
5. Set the Display Name and the Network Location. The Roaming User Network Location dialog box displays examples of what you can enter in the **Address** field.
   - For HTTP locations, you can click the **HTTP Settings** button to set information specific to your HTTP connection like Authentication, Firewall, and Proxy Server information. Nuance strongly recommends that you test your connection to the HTTP server from the HTTP Settings dialog box.

Upgrading Roaming User Profiles: Overview

This section describes how to upgrade Roaming User Profiles from *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* or *Dragon Medical* 9.x or 10.x to Dragon 11 or greater .

Since the Local Roaming User Profile is a copy of a subset of the user data taken from the master Roaming User Profile, an administrator cannot directly upgrade the Local Roaming User Profile when they upgrade the local *Dragon* installation from Dragon 9.x or 10.x to Dragon 11 or greater .

See "Upgrading User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater " in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

Notes:

- Upgrading a set of Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater leaves the Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles unchanged. Leaving the Dragon 9.x or 10.x files intact allows the users in the network to run Dragon 9.x or 10.x while the administrator plans the upgrade.
- You can upgrade from a variety of Dragon products to Dragon 11 or greater . If you have custom vocabularies from other versions or editions of Dragon, you must recreate the custom vocabularies in Dragon Medical 11 or greater . See 'Upgrading to Dragon 11 or greater ' in What you should know before upgrading from a previous version for details.
- Plan to upgrade the master Roaming User Profiles at a time when User Profiles are not in use, for example during the night or on a weekend.
- Even though the Dragon 11 or greater *User Profile Upgrade Wizard* supports both mapped drives and UNC paths, Nuance strongly recommends that administrators upgrade the Master Roaming User Profiles on a drive on a computer where Dragon 11 or greater is locally installed. Nuance does not recommend that administrators upgrade the Master Roaming User Profiles across a network to either a mapped drive or UNC path; upgrading over a network will take a undetermined length of time. In addition, the *User Profile Upgrade Wizard* does not support upgrading User Profiles over an HTTP connection.
- If upgrading from Dragon version 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11 or greater , version 8.x or earlier custom words and commands can be re-used in Dragon 11 or greater :

  1. In Dragon 8.x or earlier, export the custom words and commands
  2. In Dragon 11 or greater , create a new User Profile
  3. In Dragon 11 or greater , import the custom words and commands

  See the Dragon Help for information on exporting and importing custom words and commands.

Step 1: Preparing to upgrade Roaming User Profiles

To upgrade Master Roaming User Profiles from a previous version of Dragon, Nuance recommends that an administrator install Dragon 11 or greater directly on the network computer

where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located and upgrade those Master Roaming User Profiles directly to Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles.

If an administrator is unable to install Dragon where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located, Nuance recommends that the administrator:

- Install Dragon 11 or greater on a separate computer where the administrator will perform the upgrades.
- Copy the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles from the network location to the computer where Dragon 11 or greater is installed.
- Upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles on the computer where Dragon 11 or greater is installed.
- Copy the upgraded Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles to a network accessible directory on the original network location.

For more information, see Preparing to upgrade Roaming User Profiles.

Step 2: Upgrading the User Profiles

An administrator must separately upgrade the master Roaming User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater using the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard***.

After an administrator upgrades the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles, they can then proceed to upgrade end-user systems that deploy the Roaming feature.

For more information, see Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles

Step 3: Upgrade the end-user systems

After an administrator upgrades the master Roaming User Profiles, they can then proceed to upgrade end-user systems that deploy the Roaming feature.

For more information, see Upgrading end-user systems.

Preparing to upgrade Roaming User Profiles

Step 1: Install Dragon 11 or greater on the computer where you upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles

Nuance recommends that administrators install Dragon 11 or greater on the computer where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located. If that is not possible, Nuance recommends that administrators install Dragon 11 or greater on a separate computer where they will perform the upgrades.

For more information on installing, see Installing Dragon on a single computer.

Notes:

- If during the installation or upgrade, you see the ***Upgrade existing speech files to work with this installation*** prompt, be sure to leave this option unchecked. You can manually running the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard*** in a later step.
- If you are unable to install Dragon where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located, Nuance recommends that you install Dragon 11 or greater on a separate computer where you perform the upgrades. For more information, see Upgrading Roaming User Profiles: Overview.
- You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported
- If upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11 or greater , version 8.x or earlier custom words and commands can be re-used in Dragon 11 or greater . See the Dragon Help for information on exporting and importing custom words and commands:
  i. In Dragon 8.x or earlier, export the custom words and commands
  ii. In Dragon 11 or greater , create a new User Profile.
  iii. In Dragon 11 or greater , import the custom words and commands

Step 2: On the Dragon 9.x or 10.x end-user systems that use the Roaming feature

On the end-user systems where the users dictate using the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Roaming feature, save and close any open User Profiles on each *Dragon* 9.x or 10.x system that uses the Roaming feature.

Note: If there is no time when all the Roaming User Profiles are not in use (for example, in a hospital where some physicians use Dragon during a night shift), administrators can upgrade different groups of Roaming User Profiles at different times.

Step 3: On the central network storage location for the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles

1. (Optional) Back up the master Roaming User Profiles to a separate location, either by using any system backup utility that is implemented at your facility or by using the Dragon The ***Manage User Profiles*** *dialog.*

Note: You do not need to back up the Roaming User Profiles because the upgrade retains the Dragon 9.x or 10.x User Profiles in a directory that is separate from the Dragon 11 or greater User Profiles.

2. Create a new directory on the shared network drive to store the upgraded Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles. Although you can store the upgraded User Profiles in the same location as the current User Profiles — this would make two versions of each User Profile visible to the end user and lead to confusion — Nuance recommend creating a location that is different from the location that stores the current (Dragon 9.x or 10.x) User Profiles.

Step 4: Copy the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles to the Dragon 11 or greater client computer

If you install Dragon 11 or greater on the computer where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located, then proceed to Step 5 below.

If Dragon 11 or greater is not installed on the computer where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located, perform the following steps on the Dragon 11 or greater client computer:

1. Create a directory to store all the Master Roaming User Profiles you plan to upgrade.
2. Copy the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles from the network location to the directory.

Step 5: On the administrator system where you plan to upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles

1. Start *Dragon* and make sure the Roaming feature is off.

   To turn off the Roaming feature:

   i. Close any open User Profiles.

   ii. Click ***Administrative Settings*** on the ***DragonBar Tools*** menu. This action displays the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box.

   iii. On the ***Roaming*** tab, make sure ***Enable*** is not selected.

2. Close Dragon.
3. Follow the instructions in the next section, Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles.

See "Upgrading User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater " in Dragon - What's New for administrators for more information.

Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles

You must use the User Profile Upgrade Wizard to upgrade Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles to Dragon 11 or greater .

Before you proceed with the tasks in this topic, complete the procedure in Preparing to upgrade Roaming User Profiles.

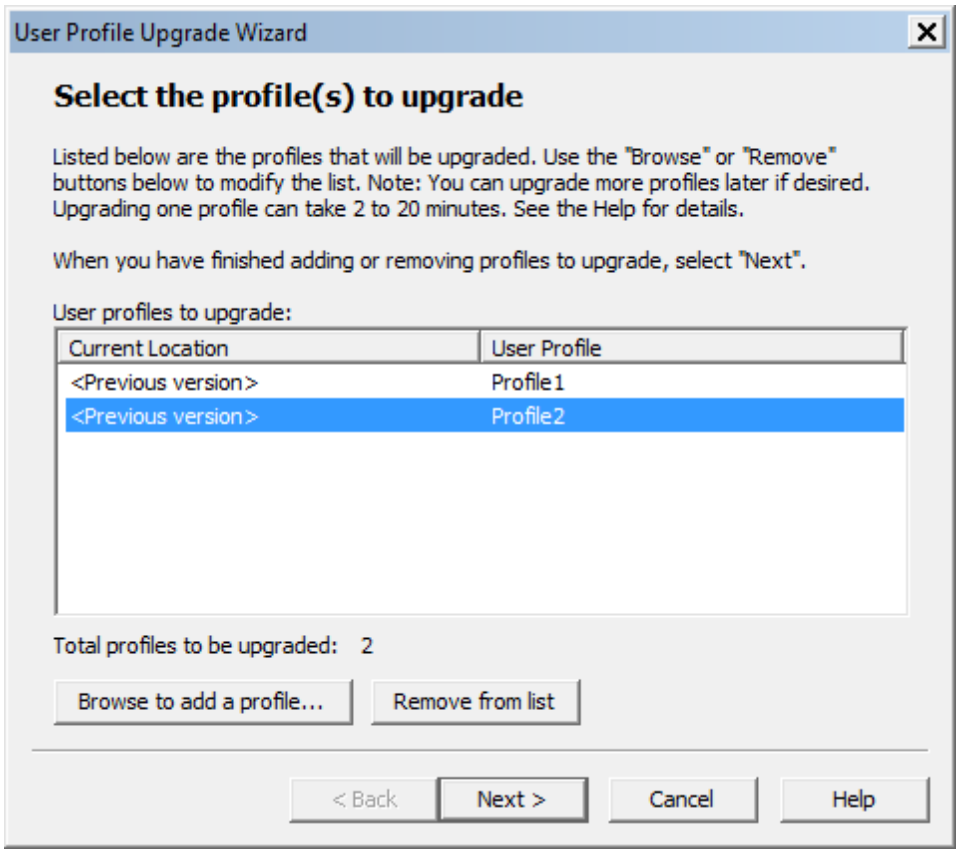
After you upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles and optionally copy them back to their network location, you can proceed to upgrade your end-user systems that use the Roaming feature. For more information, see Upgrading end-user systems.

You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported

Step 1: Upgrade the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles

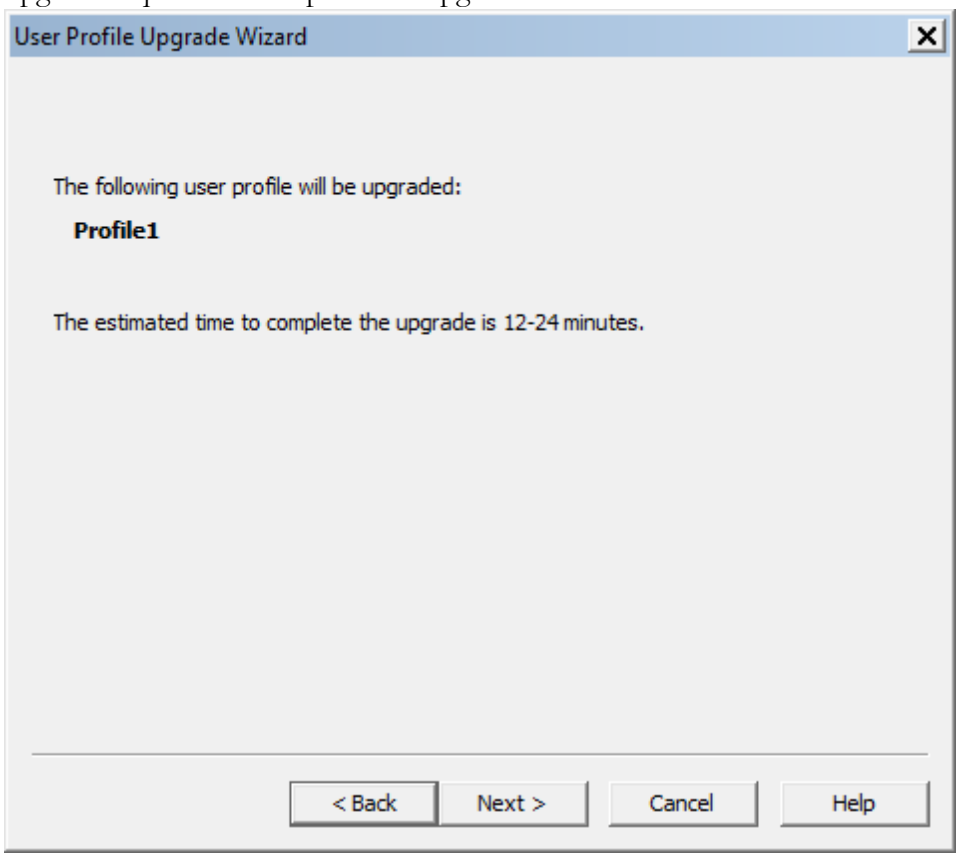
On the computer with the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming files and where Dragon 11 or greater is installed:

1. Select ***Start*** > ***Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking Tools*** > ***Upgrade User Profiles***.
2. On the **Select the profile(s) to upgrade** page, click **Browse to add a profile**... to select the location of the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles. The **Select the profile(s) to upgrade** page now displays a list of User Profiles in the selected directory:



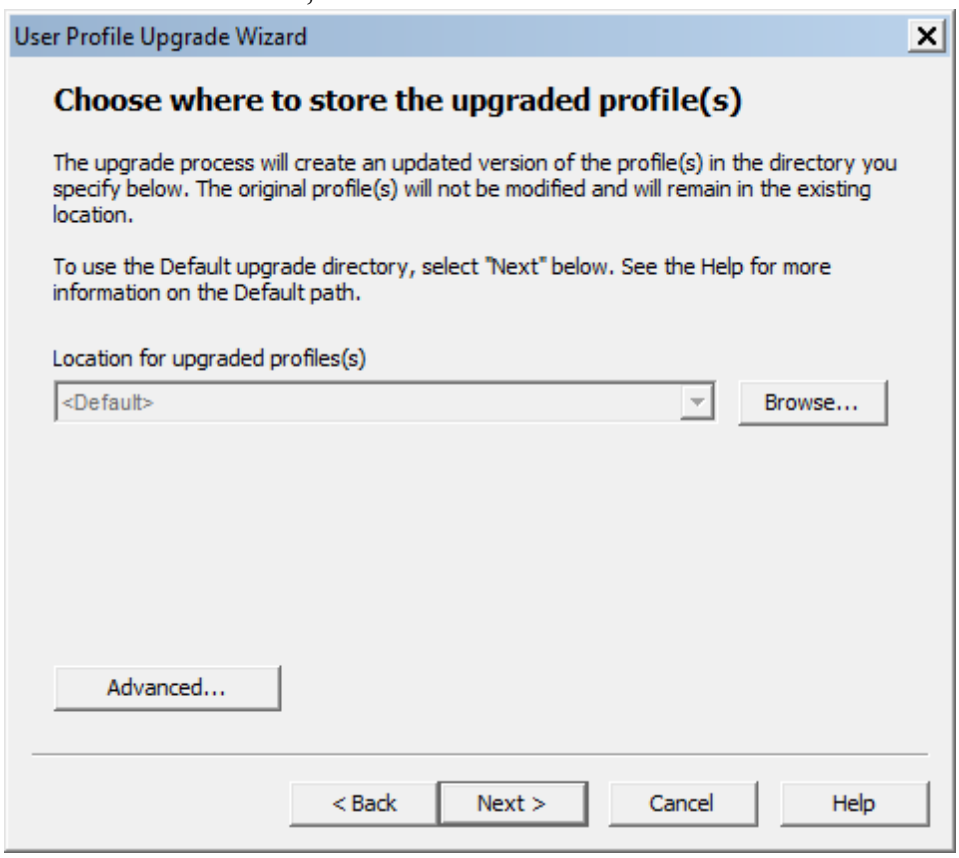
Continue to add User Profiles from other local locations or use the **Remove from list** button to remove specific User Profiles. Click **Next** to continue.

3. If you choose to upgrade only one User Profile, the wizard displays the number of minutes the upgrade requires to complete the upgrade.



4. If you upgrade a UK User Profile, the wizard displays a page that lets you select a region for the profile.
5. On the **Choose where to store the upgraded profile(s)** page, in the **Location for upgraded profile(s)** text box, choose the local location you previously created to contain the upgraded Dragon 11 or greater master Roaming User Profiles. If a location is not visible, click **Browse**,

find the correct location, and click **Next**.



6. The **Begin profile upgrading** page displays the number of User Profiles that the wizard is prepared to upgrade.
   Click **Begin upgrading** to start the upgrade process. The upgrade process can take 2-3 minutes or more per User Profile, depending on the speed of the computer system and the speed of the network. Click **Stop** at any time to interrupt this process. The upgrade process creates new master Roaming User Profiles in the destination you selected.
7. Click ***Finish*** to complete the upgrading process and exit the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard***.

The **User Profile Upgrade Wizard** names each Dragon 11 or greater master Roaming User Profile as follows: `<name> (v11)`. For example, Dragon copies and upgrades a Dragon 10.x Master Roaming User Profile with a filename of *roaminguser1* to *roaminguser1 (v11)*. Dragon does not change the name of the Dragon 10.x Master Roaming User Profile.

Do no store the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Roaming User Profiles in the same directory as the upgraded Dragon 11 or greater Roaming User Profiles. The ***Open User Profile*** dialog box displays all the Dragon 9.x and 10.x and 11.x profiles. A Dragon user may not be sure of the profile they should select for dictation.

Step 2: Clean up the Dragon 9.x or 10.x locations for master Roaming User Profiles (optional)

When the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard*** modifies the Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles, it create a copy of the upgraded User Profile and does not change the original profiles. This ensures the original profiles are available in case someone requires them.

An administrator can optionally rename or remove the Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles through the ***Manage User Profiles*** dialog box.

Step 3: Copy the Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles to their network location (Optional)

If you were unable to install Dragon 11 or greater where you store the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles, and you instead copy them to a different computer with Dragon 11 or greater installed, you must now copy the Dragon 11 or greater Master Roaming User Profiles back to the new network directory. This is the directory you created on their original network location.

You can skip this step if you installed Dragon 11 or greater on the computer where the Dragon 9.x or 10.x Master Roaming User Profiles are located and you upgraded those Master Roaming User Profiles directly to Dragon 11 or greater .

Step 4: Upgrade end-user systems to Dragon 11 or greater

After you upgrade the master Roaming User Profiles, you can upgrade the end-user systems that use the Roaming feature.

You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported.

For more information, see Upgrading end-user systems.

Upgrading end-user systems

After you upgrade the master Roaming User Profiles, you can upgrade the end-user systems that use the Roaming feature.

Before proceeding with this section, make sure you perform the procedure in Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles.

Note: You can only upgrade from Dragon 9.x or greater to Dragon 11.5. Upgrading from Dragon 8.x or earlier to Dragon 11.5 is not supported.

Step 1: Upgrade Dragon 9.x or 10.x systems that use the Roaming feature

Since the ***User Profile Upgrade Wizard*** does not change or move the Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles, your Dragon 9.x or 10.x systems can continue to use the Roaming feature until you upgrade to Dragon 11 or greater .

To upgrade a Dragon 9.x or 10.x system to Dragon 11 or greater , follow the installation instructions under Installing Dragon on a single computer .

Notes:

- When prompted, choose to remove the Dragon 9.x or 10.x *Dragon* installation. If you choose not to remove the previous installation, you cannot continue to upgrade. You do not need to uninstall Dragon 11 to upgrade to Dragon 11.5.

Step 2: Enable the Roaming feature on the Dragon systems

When you upgrade to Dragon 11 or greater , the Roaming feature is off by default.

To turn on the Roaming feature, perform the following steps on each Dragon 11 or greater client computer.:

1. Start *Dragon*.
2. Close all User Profiles.
3. Click ***Administrative Settings*** on the ***DragonBar Tools*** menu. This displays the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box.
4. On the ***Roaming*** tab, select ***Enable***.
5. The ***Network Directories*** list displays the network location of the Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profiles.

   If you created a new network directory for the Dragon 11 or greater master Roaming User Profiles, you can either click the ***Add*** button to add the new network location or select a listed directory and then click ***Edit*** to change the path to the new location. When you have finished, click ***OK*** to close the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box. You should also remove any Dragon 9.x or 10.x master Roaming User Profile directories that are not in use.

6. Select ***Profile*** > ***Open User Profile*** on the ***DragonBar***. This action displays the ***Open User Profile*** dialog box. If you allow users to select both non-roaming local and Roaming User Profiles, make sure they select the correct location (the Dragon 11 or greater Roaming User Profile location) from the ***Location of user profile*** field.
7. Select a User Profile and click ***Open***.

Note: If you did not upgrade the Roaming User Profiles and store them in the new master Roaming User Profile directory, when you click ***Open***, the ***User profile needs to be upgraded*** dialog box appears. Since you cannot upgrade Roaming User Profiles locally, you should click ***Cancel*** and return to Upgrading master Roaming User Profiles. If you click **OK** instead of **Cancel**, you receive a message stating **You cannot upgrade a roaming user** because you cannot upgrade Roaming User Profiles on a workstation where the Roaming feature is on.

Chapter 7: Customizing and optimizing Vocabularies

This section contains information on how you can add words to a vocabulary, train words in a vocabulary, and optimize language models.

Customizing Vocabularies with the Vocabulary Tool **270**

Voctool command line examples **283**

Definition: The language model **285**

About language model slots **286**

Storing language model information **286**

Customizing Vocabularies with the Vocabulary Tool

You use the *Dragon* ***Vocabulary Tool*** to customize a vocabulary by adding new words and by optimizing the language model. The ***Vocabulary Tool*** is only available in VAR and Legal editions of Dragon.

This section of the *Administrator Guide* Help describes the ***Vocabulary Tool Wizard*** and includes the following topics:

- Starting Voctool — Starting the ***Voctool*** UI and command line.
- Step 1: Introduction— The type of information available that can be modified on the introduction screen.
- Step 2: Choosing Documents — Selecting documents for the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to analyze.
- Step 3: Choosing Word Lists — Selecting word lists for analysis.
- Step 4: Analysis Settings — Specifying how the *Dragon* ***Vocabulary Tool*** analyzes the documents and word list files you chose.
- Step 5: Analyzing Files — Confirming the file list; stopping and resuming the analysis.
- Step 6: Previewing New Words — Reviewing new words, their frequency, etc.; clearing, editing, saving, and training words from the word list.
- Step 7: Training Added Words — Selecting the words to train.
- Step 8: Build the Language Model — Building a new language model with the information you collect.
- Summary Page — Displaying information about the newly-built language model.
- Voctool command line switches — Listing command line switches.

Starting Voctool

There are two ways to start ***Voctool***:

- Click **Start** > **All Programs** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5*** > **Dragon NaturallySpeaking Tools** > **Voctool**.
- You can run the ***Vocabulary Tool*** using MS-DOS commands. To view a list of command-line switches for running the ***Vocabulary Tool***, type ***voctool.exe /?*** at the prompt inside a command-prompt window. See Voctool command line switches for a list of switches. By default, ***voctool*** is located in:
  `C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program`

Notes

When you start the ***Vocabulary Tool***, you use the ***Introduction*** page to select a User Profile and vocabulary. Before you run the ***Vocabulary Tool***, you can click the ***Change User/Vocabulary*** button to change the user profile. If you try to change the user profile or vocabulary while the ***Vocabulary Tool*** is running, the tool stops and discards any changes it made.

Voctool: Introduction

You can use the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to customize a vocabulary by adding new words and optimizing the language model.

You can use the ***Introduction*** page in the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to find and modify the following information:

User

The name of the user profile that the ***Vocabulary Tool*** modifies.

Vocabulary

The vocabulary type you apply when you create a User Profile.

The Change User/Vocabulary button

You click this button to open the ***Select User*** dialog box and choose a different user profile from a list of available user profiles.

Using the Introduction page to add words to a vocabulary

1. Select one of the following two options to add new words to the vocabulary:
   - Use the **Add new words from documents and adapt to writing style** option to instruct the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to examine the documents you choose in the Choosing Documents page. In general, you should select documents that reflect the preferred writing style and vocabulary of the person that uses the modified User Profiles for dictation.
   - Use the **Add new words from word list files** option to instruct the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to examine the files you choose in the Choosing Word Lists page. When you choose this option, the ***Vocabulary Tool*** only add words and does not analyze word frequency or otherwise adapt the vocabulary to a particular writing style.
2. Click **Next**.

Notes

- If you plan to create a User Profile with an empty vocabulary, you must first run the Voctool on the empty vocabulary, and specify the enrollment text you plan to use for the User Profile. For more information, see "Customizing vocabularies with the Vocabulary Tool".

  If you do not first run the Voctool, efenroll produces an error similar to the following:
  "Unable to start enrollment. Error # 0x80004005
  Error description : No results could be used for training"

- Do not change the current user profile or the vocabulary when you run the ***Vocabulary Tool***. If you do try to change the user profile or vocabulary, the ***Vocabulary Tool*** stops running and does not save any changes it made.
- You can use MS-DOS commands to run the ***Vocabulary Tool*** from a command line. To view a list of command-line switches for the ***Vocabulary Tool***, on a command line, type ***voctool.exe /?***.

Voctool:Choosing Documents

You use the ***Choose Documents*** page of the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to select documents for the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to analyze. The ***Vocabulary Tool*** identifies words in a document that are not in the current vocabulary. The tool analyzes the frequency and order of the words in the samples to understand the writing style of the author of the document.

You can modify the list of documents that display on this page, then click ***Next*** to proceed with the wizard.

The following information and buttons appear on this page:

The document list

The document list is a list of documents that the Vocabulary Tool will process. If no documents appear in the list, click the ***Add Folder*** or ***Add Document*** button to find and add a folder or a document. You can use the button to the right of the document list to add and remove documents or folders from the list.

The Add Folder button

You click the ***Add Folder*** button to open the ***Browse for Folder*** dialog box and select a folder of documents to display in the documents list. You can click the ***Add Folder*** button as many times as necessary to add additional folders of documents to the list.

The Add Document button

You click the ***Add Document*** button to open the ***Add Documents*** dialog box and select documents from a folder to display in the documents list. You can press the **CTRL** key and select multiple documents at once. You can also press the **SHIFT** key and select a range of documents by clicking the first and last documents in a range of documents. You can click the ***Add Documents*** button as many times as necessary to select different documents to add to the list.

The Remove Document button

You select documents and click the ***Remove Document*** button to remove documents from the document list. You can press the **CTRL** key and select multiple documents at once. You can also press the **SHIFT** key and select a range of documents by clicking the first and last documents in a range of documents.

The View Document button

You press the **View Document** button to view a document in its native application. For example, if you select a document that has a .doc file extension, when you press the **View Document** button, Dragon starts Microsoft Word to display the document.

In order to view a document in its native application, the native application must be installed on the same computer as Dragon.

The Save List button

You click the **Save List** button to open the ***Save Document List as File*** dialog box and save the current list of documents as a **.txt** file in a folder. The text file contains the names of each file and the full path to each file. The ***Vocabulary Tool*** can process the following types of files:

- Microsoft Word (*.DOC)
- Corel WordPerfect (*.WPD)
- ASCII Text (*.TXT)
- Rich Text Format (*.RTF)
- HyperText (*.HTM, *.HTML, *.SHTM, and *.SHTML)

If your computer does not have access to an application that can open a particular type of file, the ***Vocabulary Tool*** will not be able to process the document.

The Load List button

You click the ***Load List*** button to open the ***Load Document List from File*** dialog box and load a file that contains a list of documents. This is the file you create using the ***Save List*** button. If you attempt to load a file that does not contain an appropriate file list, an error message displays and the contents of the file do not appear in the document list.

Note: Only process documents that contain valid text and that reflect the writing style of the user. Otherwise, the documents may damage the vocabulary or decrease the recognition accuracy of *Dragon* by building a Language Model from examples that do not reflect the dictation style of the user.

Voctool:Choosing Word Lists

You use the ***Choosing Word Lists*** page of the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to select word lists for the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to analyze. The ***Vocabulary Tool*** can identify if a word is in the current vocabulary.

A word list is an ASCII text document that contains words or shorts phrases to add to a vocabulary. Each word or phrase should be on a separate line. You can use a backslash (\) to separate the written form of a word from the spoken form of a word. For example: "& Co.\and Company"

The following information and buttons appear on this page:

Word Lists

A list of files that contain the word lists that the ***Vocabulary Tool*** can process. You can use the buttons on the right of the word lists to add or remove files from the list. You can select ***Export custom word and phrase list*** on the ***Vocabulary*** menu of the ***DragonBar*** to create a word list file from a current *Dragon* User Profile.

The Add Word List button

You click the ***Add Word*** button to open the ***Add Word List Files*** dialog box and to select file names to display in the documents list. You can press the **CTRL** key and select multiple files at once. You can also press the **SHIFT** key and select a range of files by clicking the first and last files in a range of files. You can click the ***Add Word List*** button as many times as necessary to select different folders that contain files to add to the document list.

The Remove Word List button

You click the **Remove Word List** button to remove a file or set of files from the documents list. You can press the **CTRL** key and select multiple documents at once. You can also press the **SHIFT** key and select a range of files by clicking the first and last files in a range of files.

Note: Only process documents that contain valid text and that reflect the writing style of the user. Otherwise, the documents may damage the vocabulary or decrease the recognition accuracy of *Dragon* by building a Language Model from examples that do not reflect the dictation style of the user.

Voctool:Analysis Settings

You use the ***Analyze Settings*** page in the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to configure how the ***Vocabulary Tool*** analyzes documents and word list files. You use the Choosing Documents page or the Choosing Word Lists page in the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to select documents and word list files.

You can change the following settings:

The Vocabulary Tool: Find unknown words

You use the ***Find unknown words*** option to have the ***Vocabulary Tool*** find words that are not already in the vocabulary. This option is only available if the ***Vocabulary Tool*** is analyzing documents and not word lists.

The Vocabulary Tool: Find known words with unknown capitalization

You use the ***Find known words with unknown capitalization*** option to have the ***Vocabulary Tool*** find words that are in the vocabulary but with a different capitalization. Only use the ***Find known words with unknown capitalization*** option with word lists that you want to add to a vocabulary. Otherwise, you might add words to a vocabulary unintentionally.

The Vocabulary Tool: Enable word frequency counting

The ***Enable word frequency counting*** option only displays when you select ***Add new words from documents***.

You use the ***Enable word frequency counting*** option to let *Dragon* count how many times a new word appears in your documents and display that number in the ***Vocabulary Tool*** after *Dragon* analyzes the documents. Dragon counts up to **100** occurrences of a word.

Note: If you are analyzing a large set of text, you should disable frequency counting to improve performance.

The Vocabulary Tool: Preview the list of unknown words

You use the ***Preview the list of unknown words*** option to make the ***Vocabulary Tool*** open the Preview New Words page and display unknown words and known words with unique capitalization. A ***Preview New Words*** page appears where you can modify the list and select specific words that the ***Vocabulary Tool*** found.

The Vocabulary Tool: Add all unknown words without previewing them

You use the **Add all unknown words without previewing them** option to have the ***Vocabulary Tool*** skip the ***Preview New Words*** page. The ***Vocabulary Tool*** then adds all the unknown words and the known words with unique capitalization to the vocabulary without letting you modify the list.

Voctool: Analyzing Files

You use the ***Analyzing Files*** page of the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to analyze the documents and word list files you choose in the Choosing Documents page or the Choosing Word Lists page.

The ***Analyzing Files*** page contains the following information and controls:

The File list

The file list is a scrollable list that displays the files or documents that the ***Vocabulary Tool*** is processing.

- A check mark next to a file name indicates that the ***Vocabulary Tool*** successfully analyzed the file.
- An **X** mark next to a file name indicates that the ***Vocabulary Tool*** did not successfully complete its analysis of a file. The ***Vocabulary Tool*** may not complete its analysis of a file if a user presses the **Stop** button or if an error occurs while the tool is reading the contents of a file.
- An hourglass symbol next to a file name indicates that the ***Vocabulary Tool*** is currently analyzing the file.

When the ***Vocabulary Tool*** finishes analyzing all the files in the file list, a message displays below the file list with information about the number of documents the ***Vocabulary Tool*** analyzed.

The Stop button and the Resume button

You click ***Stop*** to stop the ***Vocabulary Tool*** from processing a file.

You click ***Resume*** to have the ***Vocabulary Tool*** restart the analysis of a file.

The Progress bar

During the ***Vocabulary Tool***'s analysis of a file, the Progress bar displays how much of the file has been analyzed.

Voctool: Preview New Words

You can use the ***Preview New Words*** page of the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to view the list of words that the ***Vocabulary Tool*** identifies as either not in the current vocabulary or as having a unique capitalization.

The following information and buttons appear on this page:

Word

You can scroll the Word list and use the check box to the left of a word to tell the ***Vocabulary Tool*** to add or not add the word to the vocabulary. Check this option to add a word to a vocabulary. Uncheck this option to not add a word to a vocabulary.

Frequency

Frequency indicates how many times a word appears in the documents the ***Vocabulary Tool*** analyzes. This information appears only if you select the ***Enable word frequency counting*** option on the ***Introduction*** page of the ***Vocabulary Tool***. Dragon counts up to **100** occurrences of a word.

Check All

Click the **Check All** button to check all the words in the ***Word*** list.

Clear All

Click the **Clear All** button to clear all the words in the ***Word*** list.

Edit

You can select a word in the list and click the Edit button to open the ***Edit Word*** dialog box and change the written form and spoken form of a word. The ***Edit Word*** dialog box also displays the context and frequency with which the word appears in the document the ***Vocabulary Tool*** analyzes.

Save

You can click the **Save** button to open the Windows ***Save As*** dialog box and save the contents of the ***Word*** list as a file. Use the dialog box to provide a name and a location for the file. You can use this file with the ***Vocabulary Tool*** at a later time to modify the vocabulary of other User Profiles.

Train added words

You can select the **Train added words** option to open the Training Added Words page of the ***Vocabulary Tool*** and train selected words and fine tune *Dragon's* recognition of your pronunciation.

The **Train added words** feature is only available when you run the ***Vocabulary Tool*** as part of a normal installation of *Dragon*.

Voctool: Training Added Words

You can use the ***Training Added Words*** page of the Vocabulary Tool wizard to train *Dragon* to better recognize your pronunciation.

This feature is available only when you run the **Vocabulary Tool** as part of a normal installation of Dragon.

The following information and buttons appear on this screen:

Word

The ***Word*** list contains the words you selected on the Preview New Words screen. Select the words you want to train from this list. A check mark in the box to the left of the word indicates that you want to train that word.

Check All

Click the **Check All** button to select all the words in the ***Word*** list.

Clear All

Click the **Clear All** button to deselect all the words in the ***Word*** list.

Train

You can click the **Train** button to open the ***Train*** dialog box where you can train *Dragon* to recognize your pronunciation of the words you selected. If you have selected more than one word to train, the ***Train*** dialog box display the words in the order that they appear in the list.

NOTE

Only the person that will dictate with the User Profile you are modifying can perform the training. If that person is unavailable for this ***Vocabulary Tool*** session, then training can also occur during a *Dragon* session. See "Training individual words and phrases" in the Dragon Help for more information.

Voctool: Language Model Build Settings

You can use the ***Language Model Build Settings*** page of the ***Vocabulary Tool*** wizard to build a new language model with the information the tool gathers. You also use this page to provide *Dragon* with the location and maximum size of the new vocabulary.

The following settings appear on this page:

Build language model

You can use the **Build language model** option to have the ***Vocabulary Tool*** build a new language model that contains the words and other information you provide to the tool in other pages of the ***Vocabulary Tool***.

Language Model locator

If you are building a language model for a Solution Series version of *Dragon,* you can select either the Middle or the User slot as a location for a language model.

Existing Model built by:

You can use the **Existing Model built by** option to specify the version of the ***Vocabulary Builder*** that created the previous Language Model. This information only appears if the user profile you are building a language model for has an existing language model.

Preserve existing model

This option only appears if the user profile you are building a language model for has an existing language model. Selecting ***Yes*** merges the new language model with the current one. Selecting ***No*** builds a new language model to replace the existing one. Normally, you should accept the recommended value, which can vary depending on the location of the language model and the version of *Dragon*. The recommendations for the Solution Series of *Dragon* are:

- For *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* Solution Series, middle slot, the recommendation is ***No***.
- For *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* Solution Series, user slot, the recommendation is ***Yes***.

Voctool: Summary page

The ***Summary*** page of the ***Vocabulary Tool*** wizard displays information about the newly built language model. After you review the information on this page, click ***Finish*** to exit the wizard.

The following information appears on this page:

Details

The details box contains the following information:

User

The name of the User Profile the ***Vocabulary Tool*** modifies.

Vocabulary

The base vocabulary type of the User Profile.

Language

The language of the vocabulary, including any specific variation of that language, such as United States English.

Additional information

The following information may also appear:

- The number of documents the ***Vocabulary Tool*** analyzed.
- The names of the documents or word lists that the ***Vocabulary Tool*** processed.
- The number of unknown words that the ***Vocabulary Tool*** found.
- The number of words the ***Vocabulary Tool*** added.
- Whether the ***Vocabulary Tool*** saved the previous language model or built a new language model, and if it did, which language model location was used.
- Any warnings or any non-critical errors that might have occurred during processing

Save speech files

You can select the **Save speech files** option to save the new User Profile and make it available for future *Dragon* sessions.

Voctool command line switches

When you start the ***Voctool*** from the command line, you must first switch to the follow directory:

```
C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program
```

Then type the following syntax:

voctool.exe *switches*

where *switches* is one or more (or a combination of) the following:

Switch	Required with /S	Purpose
/S	NA	Silent mode - do not display a GUI and do not display messages on the screen when you run ***voctool***.
/U <user>	Yes.	User name - indicate the user profile whose vocabulary you are running the ***voctool*** on. ***voctool*** requires that you use this switch when you use **/S**.
/V <vocabulary>	Yes, for an existing vocabulary.	Vocabulary name - ***voctool*** requires that you use this switch if the vocabulary exists; otherwise use **/VN** to create a new vocabulary.
/VN <vocabulary>	Yes, if vocabulary does not yet exist.	Create a new vocabulary if one doesn't exist for this user profile. ***voctool*** uses the empty new vocabulary as the base vocabulary. Use this switch if the vocabulary does not yet exist; otherwise, if the vocabulary exists, use **/V** to use the current vocabulary name. If you are using a version of *Dragon* that does not have base vocabularies, you must include **/VB** to indicate the base vocabulary alongside **/VN.**

Switch	Required with /S	Purpose
/VB <base vocabulary>	No.	Use in conjunction with **/VN** to indicate the name of the base vocabulary.
<doc file>	Yes, either this doc, /WI with a word list, or /WLI with a list of word lists.	Input document.
/DI <doc list file>	No.	A list of input documents - a list of documents to retrieve words from for the vocabulary.
/DO <doc list file>	No.	A list of output documents - a list of documents to export words from the vocabulary to.
/WI <word list file>	Yes, either this option, <doc file>, or /WLI with a list of word lists.	An input predefined word list.
/WLI <wordlists list file>	Yes, either this option, <doc file>, or /WI with a list of words.	An input file that lists predefined word lists.
/WO <word list file>	No.	An output list of added /new words in the vocabulary to the file indicated.
/WLO <word list file>	No.	Output list of added words from both predefined word lists and documents along with word frequency.
/AW[C][<n>]	No.	Add unknown words to a vocabulary: C=add known words with unknown capitalization. n=the minimum number of times that a word must appear in a document. If a word appears the minimum number of times, add the word to the vocabulary.
/LM-	No.	Do not build language model - include the minus sign at the end of /LM.
/LM[M|U][N|I]	No.	The Build language model: M=Middle Slot* (default) U=User Slot* N=Non-incremental (default) I=Incremental
/LMSIZE <size>	No.	The size of the Middle Slot language model - one of (0.5, 1, 2, 3[default], 4, or 5).*
/NS	No.	Do not save changes to the vocabulary. Applies only in Silent mode.
/Summary <file>	No.	Write summary of session actions to a file.
/?	No.	Displays this list of options.

*For more information on language model slots, see Storing language model information.

To see some examples of running voctool.exe on the command line, see Voctool command line examples.

Voctool command line examples

The following are examples of how to use the Voctool from the command line:

Example 1

To use Voctool to add a set of new words to the General vocabulary of a user profile named Katarina Phelps, you would first copy the file that contains the words (***NewWords.txt***) to the ***Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program*** directory, then type the following on the command line:

```
voctool.exe /S /U "Katarina Phelps" /V "General - Large" /WI NewWords.txt
/AW /Summary voc_actions.txt
```

The **/AW** option is required to add the new "unknown" words to the vocabulary.

The ***voc_actions.txt*** file contains a summary of the actions that Voctool performs.

```
Dragon Vocabulary Tool Version x.xx

User:               Katarina Phelps
Vocabulary:         General - Large
Language:           0x409 - English (United States)

Processed 1 word list file(s):
        NewWords.txt

7 unknown word(s) found.
7 word(s) added.

Language model was not built.
No errors occurred.
No warnings occurred.
```

Example 2

In this example, we perform all of the actions from Example 1 and also build the language model using the new words. On the command line, we include the **/LM** option to build the language model. To have Voctool store the language model in the Middle slot, you would add **M** after **/LM**; to store the language model in the User slot, you would add **U** after **/LM**.

You can instruct Voctool to have the language model include all previous changes (called non-incremental) by adding an **N** after **/LM** or have the language model include only the most recent changes (called incremental) by adding an **I** after **/LM**.

If you include **/LM** on the command line and do not specify a particular slot to build the language model in or do not specify the type of build to do, Voctool builds the language model non-incrementally and stores it in the Middle slot.

To build the language model in an incremental fashion and store it in the User slot, type the following on the command line:

```
voctool.exe /S /U "Katarina Phelps" /V "General - Large" /WI NewWords.txt
/AW /LM U I /Summary voc_actions.txt
```

Example 3

To use Voctool to add a list of drug names to the vocabulary of a medical provider named Jackson Stone, you would first copy the file that contains the drug names (***DrugNames.txt***) to the ***Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program*** directory, then type the following on the command line:

```
voctool.exe /S /U "Jackson Stone" /V "Internal Medicine - Large"
 /WI DrugNames.txt /AW /Summary actions.txt
```

Be sure to use the full name of the vocabulary, including "- Large" in this case.

The ***actions.txt*** file contains a summary of the actions that Voctool performs:

```
Dragon Vocabulary Tool Version x.xx

User:               Jackson Stone
Vocabulary:         Internal Medicine - Large
Language:           0x409 - English (United States)

Processed 1 word list file(s):
        DrugNames.txt

7 unknown word(s) found.
7 word(s) added.

Language model was not built.
No errors occurred.
No warnings occurred.
```

Definition: The language model

In addition to a word list, a vocabulary has a language model that contains statistical information. The statistics help predict which words are most likely to occur in the context of a user's speech. This information includes:

- unigram probability: The likelihood that a word occurs in text compared to other words in the same vocabulary. For example, if the verb **write** is more likely to occur in text compared with the name **Wright**, then **write** will have a higher unigram probability.
- bigram and trigram probabilities: The likelihood that a two-word or three-word sequence occurs in text. For example, if the bigram **Mr. Wright** is more likely than **Mr. write**, then the language model should favor **Mr. Wright** even though **write** has a higher unigram probability than **Wright**. In this context the bigram/trigram probability outweighs the unigram probability.

About language model slots

A vocabulary includes three slots for storing language model information. Not all vocabularies contain information in each slot.

- **base slot** - Stores the base language model that ships with Dragon. You cannot modify the information in the base slot.
- **middle slot** - Can contain a custom language model based on a significant amount of data, developed for a target group of users. The only way to modify the middle slot is by using the ***Vocabulary Tool***.
- **user slot** - Can contain a language model based on a relatively small amount of data for use by at most a few users. Individual users can modify the user slot using the Vocabulary Builder feature of Dragon. You can also modify the user slot using the ***Vocabulary Tool***.

Storing language model information

A vocabulary stores language model information in three slots. Not every vocabulary contains information in each slot.

Slot	Description
base	Stores the base language model that ships with *Dragon*. You cannot modify the information in the base slot.
middle	Can contain a custom language model based on a significant amount of data, developed for a target group of users. The only way you can modify the custom slot is by using the ***Vocabulary Tool***.
user	Can contain a language model based on a relatively small amount of data for use by at most a few users. Individual users can modify the user slot using the ***Vocabulary Builder*** feature of *Dragon*. You can also modify the user slot using the ***Vocabulary Tool***.

In the Professional editions of *Dragon* NaturallySpeaking, you can use vocabularies with a middle slot language model that you modify with the ***Vocabulary Tool***.

Chapter 8: Customizing a User Profile

This section contains information on how you can add or remove the custom words, vocabularies, and commands for a User Profile.

Adding words, commands, or vocabularies to User Profiles **288**

Using the Data Distribution Tool **288**

Creating the Data Distribution Directory **289**

The Nsadmin utility for new words, vocabularies, and commands **296**

Using paths with the nsadmin utility **304**

Adding words, commands, or vocabularies to User Profiles

You use the **nsadmin** utility or the **Data Distribution Tool** to make new words, customized vocabularies, or new commands available to all User Profiles on a particular installation of *Dragon*. Both the ***nsadmin*** utility and ***Data Distribution Tool*** can work across a network. .

The ***nsadmin*** utility lets you use the command line to make new words, commands, and vocabularies available to users. The ***nsadmin*** utility can perform only one action at a time. However, you can create a batch file or script that can perform multiple ***nsadmin*** operations on a computer.

The ***Data Distribution Tool*** lets you use a GUI to interact with the ***nsadmin*** utility and make new words, commands, and vocabularies available to users.

Note: You can use the ***Voctool*** to customize a vocabulary by adding new words or optimizing the language model for a particular User Profile. For more information, see the ***Voctool*** Help.

Using the Data Distribution Tool

With the Dragon Professional, Legal, and Medical editions, you can use the ***Data Distribution Tool*** to interactively make new words, customized vocabularies, or custom commands available to all users on a particular installation of *Dragon*.

You run the ***Data Distribution Tool*** on each installation of *Dragon* where you want the new words or vocabularies to be available to *Dragon* users.

This section describes:

- Creating the Data Distribution Directory
- Starting the Data Distribution Tool
- Adding and removing custom words
- Adding and removing custom vocabularies
- Adding and removing custom commands

You can also run the ***nsadmin*** utility from the command line. For more information, see The Nsadmin utility for new words, vocabularies, and commands.

Creating the Data Distribution Directory

You create a data distribution directory to store word lists, commands, or both, that you plan to distribute to multiple users of Dragon NaturallySpeaking or Dragon Medical,

When word lists and commands are in the data distribution directory, as soon as a person opens their User Profiles, *Dragon* automatically imports words and commands from the data distribution directory into the User Profiles. This occurs regardless of the location of the computer the user dictates on.

You can use the ***Data Distribution Tool*** to put words and commands into a data distribution directory. For more information, see Starting the Data Distribution Tool.

Note: In Windows XP, the default installation of *Dragon* places custom words for existing *Dragon* User Profiles in:
`C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\Dragon NaturallySpeaking11\custom.`

See Dragon file structure for information on default locations on Windows Vista and Windows 7.

Create a data distribution directory in a location other than the default location

Repeat the following steps for each workstation that should share the distributed words or commands.

1. In *Dragon*, close all open User Profiles.
2. On the network, create a directory and give all users that dictate with *Dragon* access to the directory. Grant read access to providers that dictate. Grant write access only to administrators.
3. If *Dragon* is running, on the ***DragonBar***, select ***Tools*** > ***Administrative Settings***. When the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box opens, proceed to Step 6.
4. If *Dragon* is not running, select ***Start*** > ***Run***. When the ***Run*** dialog box opens, in the ***Open*** text box, type the following, making sure to put a space between ***natspeak.exe*** and the ***/SetDefaultAdministrativeOptions*** option:
   `C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program\natspeak.exe" /SetDefaultAdministrativeOptions`

   (The quotation marks are required because ***Program Files*** contains a space. Your path might not require quotation marks.)
5. Click ***OK***.
6. When the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box opens, if the User Profile opens automatically, click ***Cancel*** to close the User Profile or go to the ***DragonBar*** and select ***Profile*** > ***Close User Profile***.
7. Click the ***Miscellaneous*** tab.

8. In the ***Data distribution location*** text box, click ***Change...*** and browse to a location where you want *Dragon* to store custom words and commands.
9. Click ***OK***.
10. Click ***Apply*** to save the changes.
11. Click ***OK*** to close the dialog box.

You can now use the ***Data Distribution Tool*** or the ***nsadmin*** command line utility to put new words and commands into the data distribution directory. For more information, see Starting the Data Distribution Tool or Starting the nsadmin command line utility.

Starting the Data Distribution Tool

You can use the ***Data Distribution Tool*** to make new words, customized vocabularies, or new commands available to all *Dragon* users on a particular installation of *Dragon*.

You can run the ***Data Distribution Tool*** on a local computer or through a network connection. The tool supports both mapped drives and UNC paths.

Before you use the ***Data Distribution Tool***, you must create a data distribution directory. For more information, see Creating the Data Distribution Directory.

Start the Data Distribution Tool

A default installation of *Dragon* stores custom commands for *Dragon* User Profiles in:

- **Windows XP:**
  `\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\Dragon NaturallySpeaking11\Custom\<language>`.
- **Windows Vista and Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008:**
  `\ProgramData\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Data\enx\Custom\<language>`

1. Select ***Start*** > ***All Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5***> ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking Tools*** > ***Data Distribution Tool.***
2. Select one of the following options:
   - Add or remove base vocabularies
   - Add or remove shared commands
   - Add or remove word to share across vocabularies
3. Click ***Next***.
4. Click the ***Advanced*** button to set the location where the local installation of *Dragon* stores customized words and commands.

Adding and removing custom words

You can use the ***Data Distribution Tool*** to make new words available to all users on a particular installation of *Dragon*.

Before you use the ***Data Distribution Tool***, you must create a data distribution directory. For more information, see Creating the Data Distribution Directory.

You must first either create a text file or export words from an existing user's installation of *Dragon* before you can distribute the words (for example, a list of new drug names) to a different installation of *Dragon*.

After you use the ***nsadmin*** utility to import the custom words, you must close your User Profiles, re-open the User Profiles, and save them for the changes to become available.

Create a text file that contains custom words

Perform one of the following two actions before you distribute a set of custom words to a particular installation of *Dragon*:

Create a text file that contains custom words

1. Create a text file.
2. In the text file, add each word or phrase that you want to add to the vocabulary. Make sure each word or phrase uses correct spelling and is on a separate line.
   - To add a multiple-word phrase, such as "Mayberry Tribune", type it on one line.
   - To include a spoken form of a word, type the word followed by a backslash (\) and the spoken form of a word. For example, to have *Dragon* enter "Robert F. Kennedy"when you say "RFK", type Robert F. Kennedy\RFK in the text file.

Create a text file that contains custom words

1. If you have *Dragon* available on another computer, you can use it to create custom words and export the words to a ***.txt*** file. For more information, see the main *Dragon* Help file.

Add custom words to a shared location

When you use ***nsadmin***, you can enter paths as complete local paths, relative paths, mapped network drives, a UNC path, or the path to removable media such as a CD-ROM or ZIP drive. For more information, see Using paths with nsadmin.

You must create a ***.txt*** file (***newwords.txt*** in the following examples) that contains custom words before you perform the following steps. For more information, see "Create a text file that contains custom words" above.

1. If you have not already created it, create the data distribution directory. For more information, see Creating the Data Distribution Directory.
2. On each computer that a user uses for dictation, map a network drive to the location of the data distribution directory. As an alternative, you may reference the network UNC address of the location of the ***nsadmin*** utility.
3. Start the ***Data Distribution Tool***. For more information, see Starting the Data Distribution Tool.

4. In the ***Data Distribution Tool***, make the appropriate selections to add the list of words to the data distribution directory. For more information, see Use the Data Distribution Tool to add custom words.

Use the Data Distribution Tool to add custom words

If you add custom words to a ***Commands Only*** vocabulary, when you upgrade a User Profile, the upgrade process does not retain the custom words. In general, you should not add custom words to a ***Commands Only*** vocabulary.

1. On the ***Data Distribution Tool***, select ***Add or remove words to share across vocabularies.***
2. (optional) To choose a location for the custom words on the local computer, click **Advanced.** In the **Custom directory** text box of the **Advanced Settings** dialog box, type the path to the new location for the custom words. If you do not take this step, Dragon copies the files to the following default location (in Windows XP):
   `\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\Dragon NaturallySpeaking11\Custom\enx`

   See Dragon file structure for information on default locations on Windows Vista and other operating systems.
3. Click ***Next.***
4. Associate a language with the custom words.
5. Click ***Next***.
6. When the list of files appears, use the ***Import*** button to select the ***.txt*** files that contain custom words. To view the content of a file, select the file and click ***View***. To remove a file from the list of files, select the file and click ***Remove***. To remove all files from the list, click ***Remove All***.

   Note: Once you add a text file that contains custom words to the data distribution directory, and a user opens the profile, you cannot use the ***Remove*** and ***Remove All*** buttons to remove the custom words.

7. Click ***Next***. The ***Data Distribution Tool*** displays a log of the operations it performs.
8. Click ***Finish*** to re-display the first page of the ***Data Distribution Tool*** or click ***Cancel*** to exit.

Adding and removing custom vocabularies

You can use the ***Data Distribution Tool*** to make a customized vocabulary available to all users on a particular installation of *Dragon*. For example, you can use ***the Data Distribution Tool*** to copy a user profile's vocabulary and set it as the base vocabulary on any installation of *Dragon*. After you add a base vocabulary to an installation of *Dragon*, new User Profiles you create can use that vocabulary.

Notes

- The default installation of *Dragon* places vocabularies for existing *Dragon* User Profiles here (in Windows XP). See Dragon file structure for information on Windows Vista and other operating systems.
  `\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\users\<user_name>\current`
- Vocabulary files end with the ***.voc*** extension.
- You cannot use a custom vocabulary created in Dragon Medical 10.x or earlier with Dragon Medical 11 or greater . You must recreate the custom vocabulary in Dragon Medical 11 or greater . If you have a custom vocabulary from a Nuance VAR, you should contact the VAR to obtain a new version of the vocabulary.
- If you create a User Profile on a dual core computer that uses a custom vocabulary, make sure that the User Profile uses the BestMatch IV speech model (BestMatch IV has the greatest recognition accuracy on dual-core systems with more than 2 GB of RAM). To check this, select the Advance button on the Create User Profile screen of the Creating a Profile wizard and make sure that BestMatch IV is selected.

Prepare to use the Data Distribution Tool to add a vocabulary

1. If you have not already created it, create the data distribution directory. For more information, see Creating the Data Distribution Directory.
2. On each computer that a user uses for dictation, map a network drive to the network location of the data distribution directory.
3. Start the ***Data Distribution Tool***. For more information, see Starting the Data Distribution Tool.
4. In the ***Data Distribution Tool***, add the vocabulary to the data distribution directory. For more information, see "Use the Data Distribution Tool to add a vocabulary" below.

Use the Data Distribution Tool to add a vocabulary

1. In the ***Data Distribution Tool***, select ***Add or remove base vocabulary.***
2. Click ***Next***.
3. Click ***Add*** to add a ***Base Vocabulary***. *Dragon* displays the ***Add Base Vocabulary*** dialog.
4. In the ***Add Base Vocabulary*** dialog box:
   - Give the vocabulary a name. The name should describe the content of the vocabulary, such as ***Astronomy*** or ***Marketing***.
   - Select the location of the vocabulary, either a mapped drive or a UNC address.
   - Give the vocabulary a unique numeric ID. Use a value greater than ***9000*** for the topic ID parameter.
5. Click ***OK***.

The next time you open a User Profile, *Dragon* automatically updates the user profile's vocabulary.

Use the Data Distribution Tool to add an exported vocabulary

You can use the ***Data Distribution Tool*** to distribute a vocabulary that you create using a separate installation of *Dragon*. A *Dragon* vocabulary that you export saves as a group of files.

One of the exported files has a ***.top*** file extension, the other files have ***.to**** file extensions, where ***** is an integer.

1. In a command prompt, provide the path to the file with the ***.top*** file extension as an argument to the ***nsadmin*** utility. Do NOT include the ***.top*** file extension on the command line.

The following command adds the ***myvoc*** exported topic (**myvoc.top**) as a new base vocabulary:

```
<PATH>\nsadmin /vocabulary D:\MyDocuments\myvoc "US English | Large |
Nuance" 9005
```

Use the Data Distribution Tool to remove a base vocabulary

1. In the ***Data Distribution Tool***, select ***Add or remove base vocabulary.***
2. Click ***Next***. *Dragon* displays the existing base vocabularies by ID and username.
3. Select the vocabulary to delete.
4. Click ***Remove*** and then click ***Next***. The ***Data Distribution Tool*** displays a message when the vocabulary is deleted.
5. Click ***Finish*** to close the ***Data Distribution Tool*** or click your browser's back button to re-display the screen.

Adding and removing custom commands

Custom commands are voice commands that you can create and modify to enter text, insert graphics, or activate menus and keystrokes in any application. You can use the ***MyCommands Editor*** to create custom commands or the ***Command Browser*** to modify custom commands.

You can use the ***Data Distribution Tool*** to copy a set of custom commands to the data distribution directory and make the set of custom commands available to all users at a particular installation of *Dragon*.

Before you use the ***Data Distribution Tool***, you must have already created a data distribution directory, as explained in Creating the Data Distribution Directory.

Notes:

- The default installation of *Dragon* places custom commands for existing *Dragon* User Profiles here (in Windows XP). See Dragon file structure for information on Windows Vista and other

operating systems.
`\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Custom\<language>`

- After you import the custom commands to *Dragon*, for the changes to become available to those User Profiles, you must close your User Profiles, then re-open and save the User Profiles.
- You can enter a path as a complete local path, a relative path, a mapped network drive, a UNC path, or the path to removable media, such as a DVD, CD, or ZIP drive. For more information, see Using paths with nsadmin.

Prepare to use the Data Distribution Tool to export custom commands

1. In *Dragon*, create custom commands.
2. Use the ***Command Browser*** to export the custom commands to a ***.dat*** file, for example, ***New-Commands.dat***.
3. If you have not already created it, create the data distribution directory. For more information, see Creating the Data Distribution Directory.
4. On each computer that a user uses for dictation, use the ***Data Distribution Tool*** to add the ***.dat*** file to the data distribution directory. For more information, see Adding custom commands.

Use the Data Distribution Tool to add custom commands

1. Start the ***Data Distribution Tool***. For more information, see Starting the Data Distribution Tool.
2. In the ***Data Distribution Tool***, select ***Add or remove shared commands .***
3. Click ***Next***.
4. Select the languages for the User Profiles that you will add custom words to.
5. Click ***Next***.
6. Use the ***Import*** button to select the ***.dat*** files that contain the custom commands to add. Place the .dat files into the ***New shared commands*** list in the upper half of the dialog box. You can modify the list by selecting particular file names and using the ***Remove*** and ***Remove All*** buttons.
7. Click ***Next***. The ***Data Distribution Tool*** displays a log of all the operations it performs.
8. Click ***Finish*** to re-display the ***Data Distribution Tool*** main screen or click ***Cancel*** to exit.

The next time you open a User Profile, *Dragon* updates the commands in the associated User Profiles.

Use the Data Distribution Tool to remove shared commands

1. In the ***Data Distribution Tool,*** select ***Add or remove shared commands.***
2. Click ***Next***.
3. Select the languages for the User Profiles that you will remove words from.
4. Click ***Next***.
5. In the ***Existing shared commands*** list, select the command.
6. Click ***Remove***.
7. Click ***Next***. The ***Data Distribution Tool*** displays a log of all operations it performs.
8. Click ***Finish*** to re-display the ***Data Distribution Tool*** main screen or click ***Cancel*** to exit.

The Nsadmin utility for new words, vocabularies, and commands

Dragon Professional, *Dragon* Legal, and *Dragon* Medical include the ***nsadmin*** utility. The ***nsadmin*** utility is a command line utility that lets you make new words, customized vocabularies, and new commands available to all users on a particular installation of *Dragon*.

The ***nsadmin*** utility performs only one operation at a time. You can write a batch file or script to execute multiple ***nsadmin*** operations on each computer.

For step-by-step instructions on using the ***nsadmin*** utility, see the following topics:

- Creating the Data Distribution Directory
- Starting the nsadmin command line utility
- Adding custom words from a command line
- Adding and removing custom vocabularies from a command line
- Adding custom commands from a command line

You can use the ***Data Distribution Tool*** to run the ***nsadmin*** utility from a GUI. For more information, see Starting the Data Distribution Tool.

Starting the nsadmin command line utility

You can use the ***nsadmin*** utility on a command line to make new words, vocabularies, or commands available to users.

The ***nsadmin*** utility performs only one operation at a time. However, you can write a batch file or script to execute multiple ***nsadmin*** operations on a computer. You can place the network location of new words or vocabularies in a script and run the script from a client computer to copy the new functionality to the computer.

You can find the ***nsadmin.exe*** file in the ***\Program*** directory under the parent *Dragon* installation directory. The default installation directory for *Dragon* is `C:\Program Files\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Program`.

The ***nsadmin*** utility supports both mapped drives and UNC paths. For more information, see Using paths with nsadmin.

Before you can use the ***nsadmin*** utility, you must create a data distribution directory. For more information, see Creating the Data Distribution Directory.

Start the nsadmin utility

- Select ***Start*** > ***All Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5***> ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking Tools*** > ***NSAdmin*** .

The ***nsadmin*** utility starts in a DOS window and lists the ***nsadmin*** syntax.

Display help information for the nsadmin utility

1. From a command prompt, type **nsadmin/?**

Command line syntax for the nsadmin utility

The ***nsadmin.exe*** utility uses the following syntax.

```
nsadmin <operation> <parameters> [options]
```

Commands and parameters	Description
/commands <src_filename>	Adds a command file to the local installation of *Dragon*.
/words <src_filename>	Adds a list of new words to the local installation of *Dragon*.
/vocabulary delete <topic ID>	Deletes the base vocabulary specified by <topic ID>.
Options	
/language enx | fra | deu | ita | esp | nld	Specifies an installed language that you want to add words, commands, or a vocabulary to. The default value is "enx".
/?	Displays the command syntax.

Commands and parameters	Description
/overwrite yes | no | ask	Specifies overwrite rules if a file exists with the same name as the file you are adding. The default value is ***ask***.

Adding custom words from a command line

You can use the ***nsadmin*** utility to make new words available to all User Profiles on a particular installation of *Dragon*.

You must first either create a text file or export words from an existing User Profile's installation of *Dragon* before you can distribute the words (for example, a list of new drug names) to a different installation of *Dragon*.

After you use the ***nsadmin*** utility to import the custom words, for the changes to become available, you must close your User Profiles, re-open the User Profiles, and save them.

Create a text file that contains custom words

Perform one of the following two actions before you distribute a set of custom words to a particular installation of *Dragon*:

Create a text file that contains custom words

1. Create a text file.
2. In the text file, add each word of phrase that you want to add to the vocabulary. Make sure each word or phrase uses correct spelling and is a on a separate line.
   - To add a multiple-word phrase, such "Mayberry Tribune", type it on one line.
   - To include a spoken form of a word, type the word followed by a backslash (\) and the spoken form of a word. For example, to have *Dragon* enter "Robert F. Kennedy"when you say "RFK", type Robert F. Kennedy\RFK in the text file.

Export words from a Dragon installation

If you have *Dragon* available on another computer, you can use it to create custom words and export the words to a ***.txt*** file. For more information, see the main *Dragon* Help file.

Add custom words to a shared location

When you use ***nsadmin*** utility, you can enter paths as complete local paths, relative paths, mapped network drives, a UNC path, or the path to removable media such as a CD-ROM or ZIP drive. For more information, see Using paths with nsadmin.

Perform the following steps after you create a text file that contains custom words or after you export words from an installation of *Dragon*:

1. If you have not already created it, create the data distribution directory. For more information, see *Creating the Data Distribution Directory* on page 289.

2. On each computer that a user uses for dictation, map a network drive to the location of the data distribution directory. As an alternative, you may reference the network UNC address of the location of the ***nsadmin*** utility.
3. In a command prompt, type a command to add the custom words from the **.txt** file. The following command copies the NewWords.txt file to the following directory:
   `C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Custom\enx\NewWords.txt.`

   <PATH>\nsadmin /words G:\NsAdmin\NewWords.txt

The next time you open a User Profile, *Dragon* automatically updates the User Profile's words to include the words from the **.txt** file.

Use the command line to overwrite a custom word file

1. Use the ***/overwrite*** option to overwrite an existing custom word file. In Windows XP, if the custom word file already exists in the ***\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Custom\enx*** directory, *Dragon* overwrites it without prompting you. See Dragon file structure for information on default locations on Windows Vista and Windows 7.

The following command overwrites the ***NewWords.txt*** *custom word file:*

```
<PATH>\nsadmin /words G:\NsAdmin\NewWords.txt /overwrite=yes
```

Note:

If you add custom words to a ***Commands Only*** vocabulary, ***Dragon*** does not retain those words if you upgrade the User Profile at a later date. In general, you should not add custom words to a ***Commands Only*** vocabulary.

Adding and removing custom vocabularies from a command line

You can use the ***nsadmin*** to make a customized vocabulary available to all users on a particular installation of *Dragon*. For example, you can use the ***nsadmin*** utility to copy a User Profile's vocabulary and set it as the base vocabulary on any installation of *Dragon*. After you add a base vocabulary to an installation of *Dragon*, new User Profiles you create can use that vocabulary.

The ***nsadmin*** command uses the following syntax:

```
<PATH>\nsadmin /vocabulary <directory> "<language or dialect> | <model name> | <category>" <topic_ID>
```

Parameters	Description
<language or dialect>	Links a vocabulary to a language. For example, ***US English*** or ***UK English*** for an English install The language or dialect must exist in the version of *Dragon* on the computer.

Parameters	Description
<model_name>	Specifies the size of the vocabulary you are importing.
<category>	Describes the content of the vocabulary, for example, ***Astronomy*** or ***Marketing***.
<topic_ID>	Sets an ID for a topic.

The following ***nsadmin*** command copies the model name (Large), the category (Nuance), and the topic ID (9005) to the ***models.ini*** file and copies the contents of the ***myvoc*** directory to `\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\Dragon NaturallySpeaking11\Custom\enx\Custom9005\.`

```
<PATH>\nsadmin /vocabulary G:\NsAdmin\myvoc "US English | Large | Nuance" 9005
```

Notes:

- The default installation of *Dragon* installs vocabularies for existing *Dragon* User Profiles in the following directory (in Windows XP). See Dragon file structure for information on default locations on Windows Vista and other operating systems.
  `\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\users\<user_name>\current`
- Vocabulary files have a ****.voc*** file extension.
- You cannot use a custom vocabulary created in Dragon Medical 10.x or earlier with Dragon Medical 11 or greater . You must recreate the custom vocabulary in Dragon Medical 11 or greater . If you have a custom vocabulary from a Nuance VAR, you should contact the VAR to obtain a new version of the vocabulary.
- You can use Voctool to customize a vocabulary. For more information on Voctool, see Customizing Vocabularies with the Dragon Vocabulary Tool (Voctool).
- If you create a User Profile on a dual core computer that uses a custom vocabulary, make sure that the User Profile uses the BestMatch IV speech model (BestMatch IV has the greatest recognition accuracy on dual-core systems with more than 2 GB of RAM). To check this, select the Advance button on the Create User Profile screen of the Creating a Profile wizard and make sure that BestMatch IV is selected.

Prepare to use the command line to add a vocabulary

1. If you have not already created it, create the data distribution directory. For more information, see Creating the Data Distribution Directory.
2. On each computer that a user uses for dictation, in a command prompt, start the ***nsadmin*** utility and use it to add the vocabulary to the data distribution directory. Make sure to reference the network UNC address of the computer in the command. Use the following syntax for the command:

```
<PATH>\nsadmin /vocabulary <directory> "<language or dialect> | <model name> | <category>" <topic_ID>
```

The next time you open a User Profile, *Dragon* automatically updates the user profile's vocabularies. For more information on using the ***nsadmin*** utility, see Starting the nsadmin command line utility.

Use the command line to overwrite a vocabulary

1. Use the ***/overwrite*** option to overwrite an existing vocabulary file. If the vocabulary file already exists in ***\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\Dragon NaturallySpeaking11\Custom\enx\Custom9005***, *Dragon* overwrites it without prompting you.

The following command overwrites the ***myvoc*** topic:

```
<PATH>\nsadmin /vocabulary G:\NsAdmin\myvoc "US English | Large |
Nuance" 9005 /overwrite=yes
```

Use the command line to add an exported vocabulary

You can use the ***nsadmin*** utility to distribute a vocabulary that you create using a separate installation of *Dragon*. A *Dragon* vocabulary that you export saves as a group of files.

One of the exported files has a ***.top*** file extension, the other files have ***.to**** file extensions, where ***** is an integer.

1. In a command prompt, provide the path to the file with the ***.top*** file extension as an argument to the ***nsadmin*** utility. Do NOT include the ***.top*** file extension on the command line.

The following command adds the ***myvoc*** exported topic (**myvoc.top**) as a new base vocabulary:

```
<PATH>\nsadmin /vocabulary D:\MyDocuments\myvoc "US English | Large |
Nuance" 9005
```

Use the command line to remove a base vocabulary

1. On each client computer, in a command prompt, enter a command to delete the vocabulary and the corresponding entry in ***models.ini***. You cannot use vocabularies that are based on a base vocabulary you delete. Use the following syntax:

```
<PATH>\nsadmin /vocabulary delete <topic_ID>
```

The following ***nsadmin*** utility command deletes a vocabulary with a topic id of 9005:

```
<PATH>\nsadmin /vocabulary delete 9005
```

Adding custom commands from a command line

Custom commands are voice commands that you can create and modify to enter text, insert graphics, or activate menus and keystrokes in any application. You can use the ***MyCommands Editor*** to create custom commands or the ***Command Browser*** to modify custom commands.

You can use the ***nsadmin*** utility to copy a set of custom commands to the data distribution directory and make the set of custom commands available to all users of a particular installation of *Dragon*

Before you use the ***nsadmin*** utility, you must have already created a data distribution directory, as explained in Creating the Data Distribution Directory.

Notes:

- The default installation of *Dragon* places custom commands for existing *Dragon* User Profiles here:
  `\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Custom\<language>`
- After you import the custom commands to *Dragon*, for the changes to become available to those User Profiles, you must close your User Profiles, then re-open the User Profiles, and save the User Profiles.
- You can enter a path as a complete local path, a relative path, a mapped network drive, a UNC path, or the path to removable media, such as a DVD, CD, or ZIP drive. For more information, see Using paths with nsadmin.

Use the command line to add custom commands

1. In Dragon, create custom commands.
2. Use the ***Command Browser*** to export the custom commands to a ***.dat*** file, for example, ***NewCommands.dat***.
3. If you have not already created it, create the data distribution directory. For more information, see Creating the Data Distribution Directory.
4. On each computer that a user uses for dictation, in a command prompt, type a command line using the following syntax, to add the custom commands from the ***.dat*** file. In the command, reference the network address of the data distribution directory in the command:

```
<PATH>\nsadmin /commands G:\NsAdmin\NewCommands.dat
```

The next time you open a User Profile, *Dragon* updates the commands in the User Profiles for the user.

Use the command line to add custom commands to a language other than English

Use the ***/language*** option to associate commands with a non-English language.

The following command associates the ***NewCommands.dat*** file with the language of French.

```
<PATH>\nsadmin /commands G:\NsAdmin\NewCommands.dat /language=fra
```

Use the command line to overwrite a custom command file

Use the ***/overwrite*** option to overwrite an existing command file.

The following command overwrites the ***NewCommands.dat*** file if it already exists in the **G:\NsAdmin** directory. **Dragon** overwrites the file without prompting you.

```
<PATH>\nsadmin /commands G:\NsAdmin\NewCommands.dat /overwrite=yes
```

Using paths with the nsadmin utility

When you use the ***nsadmin*** utility, you can use a path that is a complete local path, a relative path, a mapped network drive, a UNC path, or the path to removable media, such as a DVD, CD, or ZIP drive. If a path name includes spaces, you must enclose the path name in quotation marks.

When you are running the ***nsadmin*** utility from a directory other than the one ***nsadmin*** resides in, you must provide the full path to the ***nsadmin.exe*** program on the command line.

The following command copies the ***NewCommands.dat*** file to the following directory: `<drive>:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\N-uance\NaturallySpeaking11\Custom\enx\NewCommands.dat`.

```
<PATH>\nsadmin /commands \\HostComputer\NsAdmin\NewCommands.dat
```

Chapter 9: Maintaining a Dragon installation

This section contains information on the tools and procedures you can use to maintain Dragon installations, including User Profiles and vocabularies. You can also view information on resources that can help you trouble shoot issues that may occur in Dragon.

Maintaining Installations **306**

Using Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer and Scheduler Tools **307**

Removing One or More Optimization Schedules **310**

Exporting and Importing User Profiles **311**

Handling Dragon Error Messages **312**

Working with the Usability Log **313**

Accessing the Dragon Knowledge Database **314**

Hardware Compatibility List **315**

Managing user administrative privileges **316**

Maintaining Installations

There are several actions you can take to maintain your *Dragon* installations:

- Run the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** and schedule the ***Optimizer*** to run automatically (see Using Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer and Scheduler Tools).
- Export User Profiles from one computer and import them to another as outlined in Exporting and Importing User Profiles.
- Work with the ***Dragon.log*** file to determine the cause of error messages (see Handling Dragon Error Messages).
- Work with a Usability log file—create a usability log (***DgnUsability.log***) by pressing the ***Advanced*** button on the ***Data*** tab of the ***Options*** dialog box. For more information, see Working with the Usability Log.
- Work with the *Dragon* knowledge base as outlined under Accessing Dragon Knowledge Database.
- Work with the hardware compatibility list (see Hardware Compatibility List)
- Manage who has administrative privileges (see Managing Who Has Administrative Privileges).

Using Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer and Scheduler Tools

You run ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer Scheduler*** to:

- Choose to optimize the acoustic files for the user profile
- Choose to optimize the language model for the user profile
- Schedule one or both types of optimization to occur on a particular day or time at particular intervals
- Enable or disable the scheduled optimizations
- Separate procedures exist for running the optimization on a Non-Roaming User Profile (see Running Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on Non-Roaming User Profiles) or a Roaming User Profile (see *Running Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on Roaming User Profiles* on page 308).

Running Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on Non-Roaming User Profiles

An open local user cannot run the optimizer tools on User Profiles. Only an administrator can run the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** or the associated ***Scheduler*** tools. You must have Windows Administrator privileges (at the operating system level) on the computer where you are running the ***Scheduler***. If you want to optimize a Roaming User Profile on the computer where you are running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer, disable roaming and browse to the Master Roaming User Profile location as if it were local.

As system administrator, you are responsible for running the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** on the network location of the Master Roaming User Profiles. You can install *Dragon* on the computer where the Master Roaming User Profiles are located or on any computer that has network access to the Master Roaming User Profiles, then run the ***Scheduler***. Later, any optimizations that result from running these tools are copied to the Local Roaming User Profile when *Dragon* synchronizes it with the Master Roaming User Profile.

You can run the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** from the Windows Start menu without opening a User Profile, or you can run it from the ***DragonBar*** using the ***Tools*** menu when a User Profile is open as indicated here.

Select ***Start*** > ***All Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5***> ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking Tools*** > ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer Scheduler***.

Running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on a multi-core computer

If a non-Roaming User Profile with a BestMatch IV speech model is created and used on a multi-core computer, when an administrator runs the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on that profile on a single-core computer, all accuracy improvements may not be applied to the profile.

The Acoustic model will revert to a single model. When a user opens the profile on a multi-core computer, only the first acoustic model will load.

To increase the accuracy of the User Profile, select Audio > Launch Accuracy Tuning from the DragonBar.

To make sure that corrections and accuracy improvements that users make are applied to their non-Roaming User Profile, a user should run the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on non-Roaming User Profiles only on a multi-core computer.

To run the acoustic and language model optimizers on non-Roaming User Profiles:

1. On the DragonBar, select Profile > Open User Profile.
2. In the Open User Profile dialog box, select a User Profile to run the optimization on and click Open.
3. On the DragonBar, select Help > Improve my accuracy. The Accuracy Center opens.
4. Click **Launch Accuracy Tuning now**. The Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer dialog box opens.
5. If the user has not dictated and corrected recognized text since the last time the optimizer was run, you receive this message: ***There is no new data in the acoustic archive. Acoustic Optimizer does not need to be rerun***. Click ***OK*** and the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** opens with the Perform Acoustic Optimization option grayed out.
6. Check the types of optimization you want to perform, ***Perform Acoustic Optimization*** (to optimize the acoustic files of the user profile), ***Perform Language Model Optimization*** (to optimize the language model of the user profile), or both.
7. Click ***Go*** to start the process. The process may take some time to complete. When the process completes, you receive a message notifying you that it has completed.
8. Click ***Done***.
9. When asked if you would like to save your User Profiles click ***Yes*** to return to the ***Accuracy Center***. Click ***Exit*** in the ***Accuracy Center*** dialog box.

Running Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer on Roaming User Profiles

To run the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer*** on Roaming User Profiles:

1. Be sure that a copy of *Dragon* is installed on the computer where you plan to run the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer***.
2. Select ***Start*** > ***All Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5***> ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking Tools*** > ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer Scheduler***. The ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer Scheduler*** dialog box opens.

3. To access the master directory of the Roaming User Profiles you want to optimize, in the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer Scheduler*** dialog box, select ***File*** > ***Set User Directory***. The ***Set a Directory Containing User Files*** dialog box opens.
4. On the ***Set a Directory Containing User Files*** dialog box, either enter the path to the directory or click the ***Browse*** button and browse to the location of the ***Master Roaming User Profiles***, then click ***OK***. If the User Profiles you want to optimize are located in multiple directories, you can later repeat the steps outlined here and change this directory to locate the additional User Profiles.
5. In the tree of User Profiles, select the user profile you want to optimize. Notice that if you expand that user profile in the tree, you see one or more dictation sources under the ***Acoustic Optimization*** tasks in the tree. You also see the vocabulary of the User Profile under the ***Language Model Optimization*** tasks.
   OR
   Select ***File*** > ***New Task***. The Windows user name and password dialog box opens. To set a schedule for running the ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer***, either double-click on the dictation source or the language model under that User Profile.
6. Before you proceed, enter your Windows user name and password. If you are logged in to a domain, you must insert the domain name in front of your user name; for example, ***HospitalDB\RSessions*** for the ***HospitalDB*** domain.
7. Click ***OK***. The ***Select Frequency*** dialog box opens.
8. Under ***Optimization***, select ***Perform Acoustic Optimization***, ***Perform Language Model Optimization***, or both.
9. Under ***User Information***, you can either select another User Profile from the ***User Name*** drop-down list or, to select multiple User Profiles, click the ***Multiple Users*** button to open the ***Select User Profiles*** dialog box.
   In the ***Select User Profiles*** dialog box, use the ***Add>*** and ***<Remove*** buttons to put the User Profiles you want to run optimization on in the Selected users in this task list to the right. Or you can click ***Add All>>*** or ***<<Remove All*** to add or remove all User Profiles from the list.

   You can also move a user profile up and down in the list by selecting a name and clicking the ***Move Up*** or ***Move Down*** button. When you are satisfied with the list, click ***OK*** to proceed.
10. If you selected multiple User Profiles in the previous step, skip this step. Otherwise, in the ***Dictation Source*** text box, select an audio input device from the drop-down list and in the ***Vocabulary*** text box, select a vocabulary from the drop-down list.
11. Under ***Select Frequency and Start Date & Time***, select how often and at what time you want the optimization to run, as well as the first date it should run.
12. At the bottom of the dialog, click the ***Enabled*** (schedule task runs at specified time) check box to enable the optimization.
13. Click ***Apply*** to apply the changes.
14. Click ***OK*** to close the ***Select Frequency*** dialog box. The ***Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer Scheduler*** dialog box displays a list of the events scheduled in the right pane of its dialog box. You can create more than one optimization schedule for a single user profile. When you do, both optimization events appear in the schedule list.
15. Click ***Files*** > ***Exit*** to close the acoustic and language model optimizer scheduler

Removing One or More Optimization Schedules

To remove one or more scheduled optimizations from the scheduler:

1. Select the schedule you want to remove. You can select multiple schedules by holding the CTRL key while clicking a schedule.
2. Press the ***Delete*** key on your keyboard or select ***Options*** > ***Delete Selected Tasks*** on the toolbar.
3. Click ***OK*** when you are asked to confirm the deletion.

Exporting and Importing User Profiles

You can export User Profiles on one computer and import them for use on another.

When you export a user profile to a new location, any custom words added to a Local Roaming User Profile do not accompany the User Profiles unless you first run the ***Learn from specific documents*** wizard in the ***Accuracy Center*** .

Exporting User Profiles

To export User Profiles from *Dragon*:

1. On the ***DragonBar***, select ***Profile*** > ***Manage User Profiles***.
2. The ***Manage User Profiles*** dialog box opens.
3. Select the user profile in the list that you want to export.
4. Click the ***Advanced*** button and select ***Export*** from the menu that appears.
5. When the ***Browse For Folder*** dialog box opens, navigate to the folder where you want to store the exported user profile (or create a new folder by clicking the ***Make New Folder*** button) and click ***OK***.
6. When a dialog box opens displaying a message indicating the export was successful, click ***OK***.
7. Repeat steps 3 through 6 for each set of User Profiles you want to export.
8. Click ***Close*** to close the ***Manage User Profiles*** dialog box.
9. In the operating system, navigate to the directory where you exported the User Profiles. In that directory you find a separate folder for each exported user profile, labeled with the user name.

Importing User Profiles

To import User Profiles into *Dragon* that you previously exported on a different computer:

1. On the ***DragonBar***, select ***Profile*** > ***Manage User Profiles***. The ***Manage User Profiles*** dialog box opens.
2. Click the ***Advanced*** button and select ***Import*** from the menu.
3. When the ***Browse For Folder*** dialog box opens, navigate to the folder to retrieve a set of exported User Profiles from.
4. Select the folder in that directory that has the name of the User Profile to import and click ***OK***.
5. If the user profile already exists a ***User already exists dialog box*** opens and asks you to choose how to proceed: ***Overwrite the existing user*** or ***Import the user with an alternate name***. If you choose to import the User Profile and assign it another name, enter the name in the text box provided and click ***OK.***
6. Repeat steps 2 through 5 for each user whose User Profiles you want to import.
7. Click ***Close*** to close the ***Manage User Profiles*** dialog box.

Handling Dragon Error Messages

When Dragon displays an error message:

1. Read the message carefully. It may give you enough information to determine what to do.
2. If you dictated text into your document, click ***Close*** to close the error message box and then save your document.
3. Do not save your User Profiles.
4. Copy the error message log file (***Dragon.log***) to a safe place. To locate this file, click ***Start*** > ***Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5***> ***Show Dragon Log***. In Windows XP, this file is normally located in the `C:\Documents and Settings\<username>\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11` folder.
   In Windows Vista, Windows 7,and Windows Server 2008, the file is normally located in: C:\Users\<username>\AppData\Roaming\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11.
   Technical Support may ask you to send this file for further study.
5. Exit ***Dragon*** and start it again. In some cases it may be necessary to restart your computer.
6. Insert your *Dragon* DVD into your DVD reader, run the installation program again, and choose the ***Repair*** option on the first screen of the *Dragon* setup program. After setup finishes, reinstall any *Dragon* patches that were previously installed.
7. If the error message does not provide enough information to determine what to do, search our Web site for information on the error message. You may find a solution that can save you time and trouble:
   http://www.nuance.com/product-support/default.asp?lang=us&prod=dn

Working with the Usability Log

You can set up *Dragon* to create a usability log that logs all menu commands, toolbar buttons, and voice commands that you use during a dictation session.

To set up a usability log:

1. With a user profile open, on the ***DragonBar***, select ***Tools*** > ***Options***.
2. Click the ***Data*** tab.
3. Click the ***Advanced*** button.
4. When the ***Advanced*** dialog box opens, check the ***Create usability log*** check box and click ***OK*** to return to the ***Data*** tab.
5. Click ***Apply***and then click ***OK*** to close the ***Data*** tab of the ***Options*** dialog box.

Later, you can find the log under (in Windows XP) `C:\Documents and Settings\<username>\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11`.

See Dragon file structure for information on default locations on Windows Vista and other operating systems.

Accessing the Dragon Knowledge Database

Solutions to known problems with *Dragon* are provided at the Nuance Knowledge Base, located at http://nuance.custhelp.com/.

If there are problems using *Dragon* with Microsoft Word on Windows XP (for example if the program freezes or commands stop working in a Microsoft Office XP application), it may be that the Microsoft Word XP's built-in speech recognition is interfering with *Dragon*.

To locate and use the *Dragon* Knowledge Database:

Navigate to http://knowledgebase.Nuance.com/.

1. In the **Search by Product** drop-down list, select *Dragon NaturallySpeaking*.
2. In the **Search by Product** drop-down list, select *Dragon Medical*.
3. In the field that appears below the **Search by Product** field, select the Dragon version number.
4. In the next field that appears, select the Dragon edition.
5. In the **Refine by Category** drop-down list, select a category to further refine the search criteria.
6. In the **Search by Keyword** field, type the words that would be expected to be found in the pages that contain the answer. Do not use words such as "how", "why", "the", "in", or "on".
3. Beside the Search by Keyword field, click the magnifying glass to start the search.

Hardware Compatibility List

You can find a list of headsets and microphones compatible with *Dragon* at the Nuance Communications web site.

To find the hardware compatibility list:

1. Navigate to http://support.nuance.com/compatibility/default.asp
2. At the site, under ***Select a Product*** click on the product drop-down list and select *Dragon NaturallySpeaking*.
3. Click ***Continue***.
4. Under ***Select a device category*** click on the device category drop-down list and select the type of microphone or recorder. For instance, you can select ***Wireless Microphones*** to see the various types of Bluetooth microphones that are compatible.
5. Click ***Continue***.
6. A list of compatible hardware displays, along with a model, manufacturer, and accuracy scale ***Dragon Score***.
7. Click on the device name to open an Evaluation Report for the device that provides more detail. Each device is either ***Nuance Certified*** (meets highest standard), ***Nuance Authorized*** (provides satisfactory performance), or ***Reseller Endorsed*** (not necessarily tested by Nuance, but reported by resellers/VARs to provide satisfactory performance).

Managing user administrative privileges

Before You Give Windows Administrator Privileges

Before you decide to give a *Dragon* user Windows Administrator privileges on a laptop computer, note that you are giving that person access to the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box on that computer.

Determining Logged In User Has Admin Privileges

If the logged in user has Windows Administrator privileges, the following line appears in the ***Dragon.log*** file after he or she logs in:

```
09:33:10 LOG (MainWin): Windows user has administrative access to NatSpeak
```

Chapter 10: Working with Custom commands

This section contains information on how you can use tools in Dragon to control access to your custom commands.

Managing and Securing Custom Commands **318**

Using the Convert XML to DAT tool **319**

Using the MyCommands Protection Utility **321**

Managing and Securing Custom Commands

Make your custom commands more secure in two ways:

To make the tool available only in *Dragon*, convert any XML files of commands to DAT format. For details see Using the Convert XML to DAT tool.

To prevent any *Dragon* users from editing the commands, lock access to the file. For details see Using the MyCommands Protection Utility.

Using the Convert XML to DAT tool

You can use a text editor to open commands that are in XML format. To allow only *Dragon* users to access those command files, you can convert them from XML format to DAT format. *Dragon* uses ***.dat*** files to store commands.

You can use the **XML to DAT** tool (***mycmdsxml2dat.exe***) to extract user-defined *Dragon* commands from an XML file. The tool writes the commands to a ***.dat*** file. Use the ***nsadmin*** utility or the ***Data Distribution Tool*** to make the new***.dat*** files available to those other users.

Starting the Convert XML to DAT tool

- In Dragon NaturallySpeaking:

  Start > ***All Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking Tools*** > ***Convert XML to DAT***

The ***Convert XML to DAT*** tool starts in an MS-DOS window, listing the tool's syntax.

Convert XML to DAT syntax

Convert XML to DAT (***mycmdsxml2dat.exe***) uses the following syntax:

```
mycmdsxml2dat.exe <dat-file-path> <xml-file-path> [options]
```

Parameters	Type	Description
<dat-file-path>	Required	The full path to the local copy of the current user's .DAT file
<xml-file-path>	Required	The full path to the .XML file
-v	Optional	Validates the specified .xml file over the Internet with a Nuance DTD (Document Type Definition) file. Disabled by default.

Use the XML to DAT tool to convert data in an XML file

1. Create an XML file that contains the commands to use with *Dragon*.
2. On a command line, use ***mycmdsXML2DAT.exe*** to convert the XML file to DAT format.
3. Use the ***nsadmin*** utility or the ***Data Distribution Tool*** to copy the ***.dat*** file to the data distribution directory.

The next time you open a User Profile, *Dragon* incorporates the new commands from the ***.dat*** file into the User Profile.

For more information, see:

- Adding custom commands (nsadmin)
- Adding and removing custom commands (Data Distribution Tool)

Using the MyCommands Protection Utility

In *Dragon Medical* and *Dragon Legal*, when you export a set of custom ***Text-and-Graphics***, ***Step-by-Step***, ***Custom Command***, and/or ***Advanced Scripting*** commands into a ***.dat*** file, you can set the permissions on that file so that after a user imports them, that user can dictate the commands but cannot view their source code, edit their source code, or re-export the commands. As a result, the integrity of the commands remains intact.

To set the permissions on the ***.dat*** file of commands to protect the commands in this way:

1. Make a backup copy of the unprotected ***.dat*** file and store it in a secure location. You later use that file to edit the commands, because once you protect the ***.dat*** file that you are distributing, you cannot make the file available for editing again.
2. Select ***Start*** > ***Run*** and enter ***cmd*** into the ***Run*** dialog box.
3. Change directories to (In Windows XP) `<drive letter>:\Documents and Settings\<user name>\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Custom\<language>`

   See Dragon file structure for information on default location on Windows Vista and other operating systems.
4. Enter the following on the command line:
   `protectcmds.exe <dat-file-path> <vendor-name> [<vendor-contact-info>]`
5. Once you press return, after a user imports these commands, if that user attempts to edit any of them, the following message indicates that the commands cannot be edited:
   The command was protected by <vendor-name>***.***
   Please contact <vendor-contact-info> ***for more information.***

In the ***Command Browser***, the same message appears as the ***Preview Content*** in ***Script*** mode.

Once you have protected the file, you can put it into the ***Data Distribution*** directory for distribution to multiple User Profiles. For more information about distributing saved commands, refer to Creating the Data Distribution Directory, then refer to one of the following topics about distributing commands to multiple User Profiles by either:

- Using the ***Data Distribution Tool*** (Data Distribution Tool: Adding and removing custom commands)
- Using the ***nsadmin*** command line tool (nsadmin: Adding custom commands)

Chapter 11: Commands that perform actions based on the application state

This section contains information how to create and use structured commands that perform actions based on the state of the application.

Using Structured Commands **324**

Structured Command Samples **325**

Importing Sample Structured Commands **327**

Using Structured Commands

Dragon Medical Practice Edition, *Dragon NaturallySpeaking* Professional, *Dragon Medical*, and *Dragon Legal* include an extension to Text-and-Graphics commands that let you to set the values of variables in text blocks based on voice input.

You can create simple Text-and-Graphics commands with variables in the ***My Commands Editor*** without having to do extensive programming in Microsoft® VBA.

Application states

Structured commands let you control the action of a command based on the state of the application. For example, if you assign a state to each field in a form, the same command can perform different actions depending on which field is activated.

You can use ***Advanced Scripting*** methods to control the states within structured commands or to set the initial state from a non-structured command. You can also create structured commands that prompt the user to select values from a predefined list.

When the user speaks a command, the user is presented with a list of pre-defined values for the command. Once the user selects a value, the value is inserted into the correct location in the custom command.

Samples

Dragon includes several sample Text-and-Graphics commands with variables and sample structured commands. You can import the samples into *Dragon* to use them as templates for your own commands. The sample commands are fully commented.

For more information, see:

- Structured Commands Samples
- Importing Sample Commands

Methods

For more information on the methods used by the sample commands, refer to the following topics in the Main Help file:

- Global Methods
  - SetState
  - GetState
- EngineControl Methods
  - MyCommandsActiveState
  - PromptValue

Structured Command Samples

Dragon includes several sample ***Text-and-Graphics*** commands with variables and sample structured ***Advanced Scripting*** commands. You can import the samples into *Dragon* to use them as templates for your own commands. The sample commands are fully commented.

Sample location

The sample commands are installed in (Windows XP):

```
\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\N-
uance\NaturallySpeaking11\Data\Enx\samplecommands
```

See Dragon file structure for information on default locations on Windows Vista and other operating systems.

A shortcut to this directory is available on the Windows ***Start*** menu. To open this directory, click ***Start*** > ***Programs*** > ***Dragon NaturallySpeaking 11.5*** >***MyCommands Samples***.

A shortcut to this directory is available on the Windows ***Start*** menu. To open this directory, click ***Start*** > ***Programs*** > ***Dragon Medical 11.0*** >***MyCommands Samples***.

Importing Sample Commands

You can import the samples into *Dragon* to use them as templates for your own commands. For information, see Importing Sample Commands

Samples

The following samples are included with *Dragon*:

GroceryListSample_DragonPad

GroceryListSample_DragonPad.xml contains ***Advanced Scripting*** commands that simulate an on-line grocery order form in ***DragonPad***. It demonstrates how to set and change command states, activating and deactivating various state structured commands, and how to use the command prompt. The ***"Prepare Grocery List"*** voice command displays the first section of a grocery list in ***DragonPad*** and sets a command state. Each section of the grocery list is designed to have a separate state. The ***"What's Available"*** voice command prompts the user with a set of grocery list commands that are active in the given section.

GroceryListSample_WordPad

GroceryListSample_WordPad.xml contains ***Advanced Scripting*** commands similar to those of ***GroceryListSample_DragonPad.xml***. It demonstrates how to set and change command states and to use the command prompt in WordPad and uses a different coding style. The

"Prepare Grocery List" voice command starts the grocery list in WordPad, activate the initial grocery list state, and prompt the user with a set of grocery list commands that are active in the given state. To read more about this sample and its commands, refer to the code comments in the XML file.

SampleBoilerPlate_ColonCancer

SampleBoilerPlate_ColonCancer.xml contains ***Advanced Scripting*** commands that demonstrate how to use structured commands and the command prompt for boilerplate text. This sample is modeled after a colon cancer checklist and is designed to work in Microsoft Word 2003. The ***"Colon Cancer Checklist"*** voice command displays the boilerplate text and takes the user, field by field, through the checklist.

SampleBoilerPlate_EndoBiopsy

SampleBoilerPlate_EndoBiopsy.xml contains a single ***Advanced Scripting*** custom command that demonstrates how to set up boilerplate text and use the command prompt to guide users in filling the boilerplate text without using states. This sample is modeled after an endoscopic biopsy report and is designed to work in Microsoft Word 2003. The ***"Prepare Endoscopic Biopsy Gross Template"*** voice command displays the boilerplate text and takes the user, field by field, through the report.

SampleTGV_Restaurant

SampleTGV_Restaurant.xml contains ***Text-and-Graphics*** and ***Advanced Scripting*** commands that are used in ***DragonPad*** to simulate an ordering system for a Chinese and Japanese restaurant. This sample demonstrates how to set states for structured commands as well as how the same commands can be used to produce different results in different states. Either the ***"Chinese Restaurant"*** or ***"Japanese Restaurant"*** voice command starts the ordering system and activates the structured commands created for the given state. The ***"Exit Ordering System"*** voice command ends the ordering session.

SetStateSample

SetStateSample.xml contains simple ***Text-and-Graphics*** commands that demonstrate how to use variables and text formats and ***Advanced Scripting*** commands to set and unset a command state. This sample is designed to work in ***DragonPad*** with the initial command ***"Sample Set State".*** When the command executes, a command state is set for ***DragonPad*** and a simple exchange of greetings is simulated between the user and the system. The user speaks the greeting, such as. ***"Good Morning",*** and the system responds in bold red text. When the user says ***"Good-bye",*** the exchange is terminated and the command state is unset.

SampleInjuryReport

SampleInjuryReport.xml together with ***SampleInjuryReport.dot*** demonstrates how structured commands and Microsoft Word templates can be used together to create a voice-enabled form filling environment. The template is a mock injury report with several text and checkbox fields can be filled using the commands included in the XML file. You start a form filling session by speaking the ***"Edit Report"*** voice command in a new document based on the sample template. Both the template and the commands are designed to work in Microsoft Word 2003.

Importing Sample Structured Commands

You can import existing structured commands, such as the Structured Commands Samples, into *Dragon* to use as templates for your own commands. Use the following procedure to import the sample structured commands that are supplied with *Dragon*:

To import the sample structured commands:

1. On the ***DragonBar*** , select ***Tools*** > ***Command Browser*** to open the ***Command Browser*** window.
2. Click the ***Manage*** button on the ***Command Browser*** toolbar.
3. In the ***Manage*** area, click the ***Import*** button, and in the ***Import Commands*** window choose ***MyCommands XML files*** from the ***Files of type*** list.
4. Use the ***Import Commands*** window to browse to (in Windows XP) the following directory:***Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\Data\Enx\samplecommands***

   See Dragon file structure for information on default locations on Windows Vista and other operating systems.
5. Select one of the sample ***.XML*** files (for example, ***sampletgv_restaurant.xml***) and click ***Open***.
6. Click ***OK*** on the ***Import Commands*** validation dialog box and then click ***Import*** on the ***Import Commands*** window to import the commands contained in the file.
7. Click ***OK*** on the success message and return to the ***Manage*** area of the ***Command Browser***.

Note: The syntax of XML command files is defined by a document type definition (DTD) file that resides on the Nuance web site. When you import an XML command file, the application gives you the option of validating the syntax of the XML file against the DTD. The validation step is useful if you receive a XML command file from another person and want to check it for syntax errors prior to importing it.

To examine the sample code

1. Open the ***Command Browser*** and click the ***Manage*** button.
2. Expand and select the appropriate item (for example, ***"***<restaurant_type> ***Menu"***)
3. Click the ***To Script*** button and then click the ***Edit*** button.

The ***MyCommands Editor*** dialog box opens with the command you selected entered into it. You can examine and modify the command with the ***MyCommands Editor***.

Chapter 12: Configuring administrative features in Dragon

This section contains information how to use the Administrative options, in the Administrative Settings dialog box, to set and control many administrative features in Dragon.

Summaries of Administrative Settings Dialog Boxes **330**

Administrative Settings: Roaming tab **331**

Administrative Settings: Roaming User Network Location **334**

Administrative Settings: Miscellaneous tab **336**

Administrative Settings: Scheduled Tasks tab **340**

Summaries of Administrative Settings Dialog Boxes

The tabs in the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box are:

- Roaming
- Miscellaneous
- Scheduled Tasks

For more on each tab, see the corresponding topic below:

- Administrative Settings: Roaming tab
- Administrative Settings: Miscellaneous tab
- Administrative Settings: Scheduled Tasks tab

Administrative Settings: Roaming tab

You use the ***Roaming*** tab of the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box to set up the Roaming feature. You must set up the Roaming feature on each computer where you want users to dictate with a Roaming User Profile.

When Roaming is enabled in Administrative Settings by default the Open User Profiles dialog box displays large numbers of User Profiles quickly. They can also be organized into subfolders. See "Creating subfolders for Roaming User Profiles" in the Dragon Help for more information.

Enable

Select ***Enable*** to activate the Roaming feature and the Roaming User Profile options.

Network Directories

To set the location of the master Roaming User Profile(s):

1. Click the ***Add*** button. You use the ***Roaming User Network Location*** dialog box to define the network location of the master Roaming User Profiles. The location you pick must be accessible to all computers on the network that you want available for dictation with *Dragon*.
2. Set the ***Display Name*** and the ***Address*** under ***Network Location***. The Roaming feature supports the following types of locations:
    - Mapped Drive—the format is: <*drive letter*>**:**<*folder name*>. For example, **y:\roaming**.
    - UNC Path—the format is: *****servername******sharename******path******filename*.
    - HTTP (http:)—the format is: **http://***myserver*.com/<name_of_virtualdirectory> where <name_of_virtualdirectory> is the name of the virtual directory set up by an administrator during setup of the IIS or Apache web site. For HTTP locations, click the HTTP Settings button to set information specific to your HTTP connection. You can also test your connection to the HTTP server from the HTTP Settings dialog box.
    - HTTP with SSL (https:)—the format is**: https://***myserver*.com/<name_of_virtualdirectory> where <name_of_virtualdirectory> is the name of the virtual directory set up by an administrator during setup of the IIS or Apache web site. For HTTP with SSL locations, click the SSL Settings button to set information specific to your HTTP with SSL connection. You can also test your connection to the HTTP with SSL server from the SSL Settings dialog box.

Local directory (for cache)

When a user opens a Master Roaming User Profile, *Dragon* transfers a copy of that user profile to the local computer. The local copy is called the Local Roaming User Profile.

You can change the setting of this location, always called **<Roaming Local>**.

The default location of <Roaming Local> on Windows XP is:
`Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\N-`

uance\NaturallySpeaking11\RoamingUsers\<display name>\<username>

See Dragon file structure for information on the default location of the RoamingUsers directory for Dragon 11 or greater on Windows Vista and Windows 7.

The <display name> is a name you assigned as a Master Roaming User Profiles location. You can have multiple network storage locations for your Master Roaming User Profiles.

The <username> is the name of an individual Master Roaming User Profile. There is a separate directory for each user profile.

Click the ***Browse*** button to find or create a new location.

Check Boxes for Roaming User options

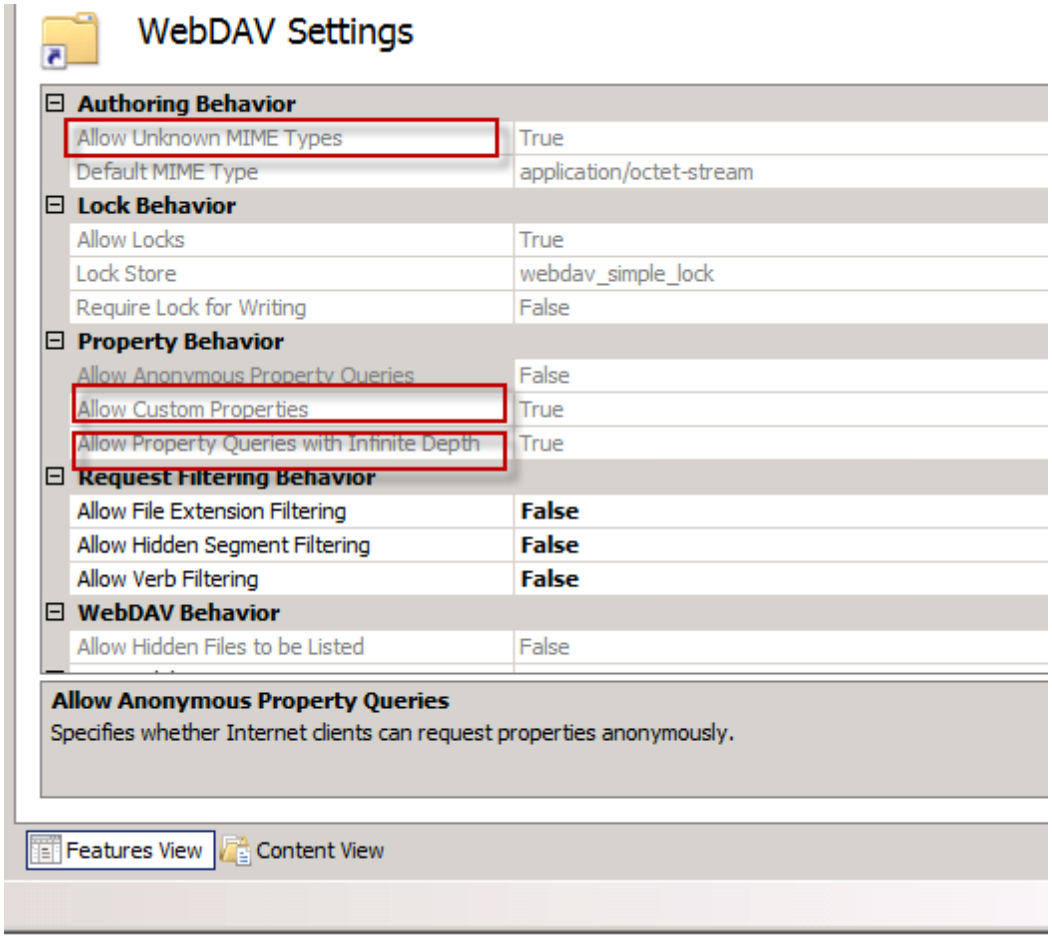
The check boxes and other components below the ***Local directory*** are the ***Roaming User options***. You can also configure the Open User Profiles dialog box to display the Classic Open User Profiles dialog if desired. See Selecting Roaming User Profile options. for details.

Restore Defaults

Returns the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box to the state it had when you first installed *Dragon*. Note that the default is to have the Roaming feature turned off.

Notes: For use of WebDAV

- After you install Internet Information Services and WebDAV, you need to use the Internet Information Services Manager tool to set the "Allow Unknown MIME Types", "Allow Custom Properties", and "Allow Property Queries with Infinite Depth" settings to true. For example, in IIS 7:



- For more information, see Configuring Internet Information Services and WebDAV for HTTP Roaming.
- If you connected to your Roaming User Profile Master Directory over HTTP and you find that not all your User Profiles are listed in the **Open User Profile** dialog box, or after creating a Roaming User Profile you cannot open it again, or the Open User Profile dialog box does not display all the vocabularies and acoustic models for your User Profiles, make sure that you:
    - Add all file extensions within your Master Roaming User Profile directories and sub-directories to the Registered MIME types list of your IIS server. You could also add a wildcard (.*) MIME-type. For more information on adding a wildcard (.*) MIME-type, see http://www.microsoft.com/technet/prodtechnol/WindowsServer2003/Library/IIS/cd3e6b8e-b497-4b8c-b552-83a2c180cd32.mspx?mfr=true.
    - Check that no files in your User Profile directory are locked, password protected, or otherwise access-restricted by your server permissions.

Administrative Settings: Roaming User Network Location

You use the ***Roaming User Network Location*** dialog box to define the network location of the master Roaming User Profiles.

The location you pick must be accessible to all computers where users will dictate using a Roaming User Profile.

Display Name

Sets the directory name displayed in the following locations:

- The ***Roaming*** tab of the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box
- The ***Location of user profile*** drop-down list in the ***Open User Profile*** dialog box.

  Note: With the Roaming feature enabled, the ***Open User Profile*** dialog box displays only User Profiles in the Roaming User Profile locations. To let the users open both local (non-roaming) and Roaming User Profiles, select the ***Allow non-roaming user profiles to be opened*** option on the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box. Clearing this option prevents users from dictating with a non-roaming (local) User Profile by accident. For more information, see Enabling the Roaming feature on each computer where a user will dictate.
- The ***Location of user profile*** drop-down list in the ***Manage User Profiles*** dialog box.

Network Location—Address

On each computer where you plan to have users dictating as a Roaming User Profiles, you must tell that installation of *Dragon* where the Master Roaming User Profiles are located.

The Roaming feature supports the following types of locations:

Mapped Drives and UNC Paths

Mapped drives connect to a shared network folder that has a drive letter assigned to it.

UNC paths connect to a shared network folder using the Universal Naming Convention (UNC) to locate a user profile. The UNC is a way to identify a shared file on a computer or network without having to know the storage device it is on. The UNC path format is: *servername**sharename**path**filename*.

To use a mapped drive or UNC path:

1. Under ***Network Location***, enter the address of the mapped drive or UNC path.
   You can click Browse to browse for the location of the mapped drive or UNC path. This displays the Browse for Folder dialog box. You can also create a new directory on the mapped drive or UNC path by clicking the Make New Folder button.
2. Click **OK** when you are done.

Intranet/Internet connections

The Intranet/Internet connection supports both HTTP and HTTP over an encrypted Secure Sockets Layer (SSL).

To use an Intranet/Internet connection:

1. Under ***Network Location***, enter the URL address of your HTTP or HTTPS server where your master Roaming User Profiles are located.
2. Click
   - ***HTTP Settings...***to display the ***HTTP Settings*** dialog box, where you can set information specific to your HTTP connection like Authentication, Firewall, and Proxy Server information. You can also test your connection to the HTTP server from this dialog box. For more information, see HTTP Settings.
   - ***SSL Settings...***to display the ***SSL Settings*** dialog box, where you can set information specific to your HTTPS (SSL) connection. You can also test your connection to the HTTPS server from this dialog box. For more information, see SSL Settings.

Note: You cannot create a non-Roaming User Profile on an HTTP or HTTPS connection. You can create only Roaming User Profiles on an HTTP or HTTPS connection and only when the Roaming feature is enabled.

Administrative Settings: Miscellaneous tab

The ***Miscellaneous*** tab of the ***Administrative settings*** dialog box contains the following options:

Check for product updates at startup

Automatically looks on the Nuance Web Dragon every time you start the program. Any change to this option does not take effect until you restart Dragon.

Backup location for user profiles

Shows the location where Dragon will save backup User Profiles.

- Click the ***Change*** button to open a dialog box where you can specify a new location.
- Click the ***Use Default*** button if you want Dragon to use each Windows user's My Documents folder.

You can change the ***Backup Location for User Profiles*** to any directory where Windows has both read and write permissions, including portable devices such as Zip drives and CD/DVD burners. If you change the location, backups for all User Profiles will be located in the same directory.

Data Distribution location

Shows the location where the local installation of Dragon stores customized words and commands.

- Click the ***Change*** button to open a dialog box where you can specify the location for this directory.
- Click the ***Use Default*** button to set the location to this default path:
  C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\custom

You can change the ***Data Distribution location*** to any directory where Windows has both read and write permissions, including portable devices such as Zip drives and CD/DVD burners.

For a default installation, custom words and commands are located in:

- Windows Vista and Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008:
  `C:\ProgramData\Nuance\NaturallySpeaking11\custom\<language>`
- Windows XP:
  `C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Nuance\Dragon 11\Custom\<language>`

Do not allow restricted users to add or modify commands

Select this check box to prevent restricted Windows users from adding or modifying *Dragon* commands. Selecting this option allows only users logged on with administrator privileges to add or modify commands. (Windows XP Professional).

Disable use of Macro Recorder Commands

Select this box to prevent users from using macro recorder commands. Users can still run the commands.

Disable use of Step-by-Step Commands

Select this box to prevent User Profiles from using step-by-step commands. Users can still run the commands.

Disable use of Advanced Scripting Commands

Select this box to prevent User Profiles from using advanced scripting commands. Users can still run the commands.

Do not allow restricted users to modify Vocabularies

Select this box to prevent restricted Windows users from modifying Dragon Vocabularies. Selecting this option allows only users logged on with administrator privileges to modify Vocabularies. (Windows XP Professional)

Record wave data between utterances

Select this option to capture all dictation, preserving all audio including any pauses, filler speech like "ums" and "ahs", extraneous noises, and anything else the speaker may do like cough or laugh.

Correction Only Mode (no dictation available)

Select this option to enable Correction Only Mode.

Correction Only Mode allows transcriptionists to play back a speaker's dictation without having their User Profile loaded. Note that dictation is disabled if you select this option.

Note: You must disable ***Correction Only*** mode before running the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer.

Disable Windows Advanced Text Services

Select this option to disable the Microsoft Alternative User Input Text Input Processor (CTFMon) to eliminate potential conflicts with Dragon.

Dragon installs an add-in to Microsoft Word that can conflict with add-ins installed by other applications. After installing *Dragon* on a Windows XP system, errors may start appearing when using Microsoft Word if the Microsoft Alternate User Input application (CTFMON.EXE) is also installed and running. The Microsoft Alternate User Input application supports advanced text services in Microsoft Office XP. These advanced text services include Microsoft speech, handwriting, and East Asian keyboard input services. You can disable the Microsoft Alternate User Input application during installation or later in the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box.

Note: This option does not appear on systems running Windows Vista, Windows 7, and Windows Server 2008.

Disable automatic acoustic model selection in the Acoustic Optimizer

Running the ***Acoustic Optimizer*** updates your User Profiles with accumulated acoustic data

from any corrections and additional training users may have done. Running Acoustic Optimization increases your overall accuracy. In the process of increasing your accuracy, Acoustic Optimization may select a different acoustic model for your User Profile. For example, if you chose a General accent during User Profile setup, Dragon may change it if your speech more closely matches another accent. For more information, see "About speech and acoustic models" in the Dragon Help.

Select this option to disable the Acoustic Optimizer from selecting a different acoustic model when run.

If you are using Dragon 11 or greater , see Using multiple acoustic models with a User Profile for information on acoustic model selection and User Profiles that use two acoustic models.

Encrypt patient health information

By default, this option is automatically selected in Dragon.

When users dictate, Dragon automatically saves interim Dragon Recorded Audio (**.DRA**) files it creates to process dictated audio and transcribed text. If the user corrects any of the dictated text, Dragon automatically stores interim files related to these corrections in **.enwv** files.

When this option is enabled, Dragon encrypts these interim **.DRA** and **.enwv** files before storing them in the local or Roaming User Profile directories to help ensure patient privacy. Due to the restrictions mandated by the HIPAA regulations, these encrypted **.DRA** and **.enwv** files can only be opened by Dragon for its internal use. That means these encrypted files cannot be opened in the non-Medical versions of Dragon, the Dragon NaturallySpeaking SDK Client (DSC) edition, or the Dragon NaturallySpeaking SDK Server (DSS) edition. In addition, these encrypted interim **.DRA** and **.enwv** files cannot be opened in DragonPad.

For more information on patient data encryption, refer to Helping with privacy of patient data

Note: Dragon does not encrypt **.DRA** files that the user explicitly saves. For example, if a user saves recorded dictation when saving a document (for example, in Word, WordPerfect, or DragonPad), these saved **.DRA** files are unencrypted.

Restore Defaults

Returns the ***Administrative Settings*** dialog box to the state it had when you first installed *Dragon*. Note that the default is to have the **Roaming** feature turned off.

Notes

- When the User Profile is closed, you cannot use Dragon to dictate or to perform actions by voice.
- On Windows XP you must have administrator privileges to change the Backup Location. Dragon will not let restricted users create backup files in directories reserved for the operating system (for example, the \Windows directory). When specifying a backup location, make sure that directory can be accessed by all users
- In some versions of Windows, such as Windows XP Pro, you must be logged on as the administrator before you can access this dialog box.
- In some situations, a user who does not have administrator privileges may have access to options on this dialog that they would not normally have.

- Dragon allows you to use the Universal Naming Convention (UNC) to locate a user profile. The UNC is a way to identify a shared file on a computer or network without having to know the storage device it is on. The format is: `\\servername\sharename\path\filename`.

Administrative Settings: Scheduled Tasks tab

The ***Scheduled Tasks*** tab of the ***Administrative settings*** dialog box allows you to schedule Accuracy Tuning and Data Collection for all User Profiles created with this installation of Dragon NaturallySpeaking.

Accuracy Tuning

Schedule Accuracy Tuning to help Dragon to learn from you and make your dictation more accurate. Accuracy Tuning runs the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer to update your User Profile with

- frequently dictated word sequences
- acoustic data from any corrections you make, including with the keyboard
- trained words
- commands used
- any additional training you perform

Enabled scheduled Accuracy Tuning

Check to turn on periodic scheduled acoustic model tuning for all users.

Clear this checkbox if you want to disable Accuracy Tuning for the User Profile. The setting is enabled by default.

Configure

Click ***Configure*** to open the **Select Frequency, Data Collection** tab and set the Data Collection schedule. You are immediately asked to log in with your Windows Administrator password to make a schedule change. After you log in, you can set one schedule for ***Acoustic*** model tuning and another for ***Language Model*** tuning by clicking the appropriate tab and choosing ***Daily***, ***Weekly***, or ***Monthly*** and the start date and time.

Data Collection

Enable Scheduled Data Collection—Check to allow Nuance to collect up to 500 MB of acoustic data and text from your dictation sessions. Once the data is collected, you have the option of sending it to Nuance to help improve the accuracy of future versions of Dragon Professional. No personal information is ever sent to Nuance and participation is voluntary.

- Click ***Configure*** to set the schedule for data collection. You are immediately asked to log in with your Windows Administrator password to make a schedule change. After you log in, you can choose ***Daily***, ***Weekly***, or ***Monthly*** and the start date and time.

Let the user choose when to run Accuracy Tuning and Data Collection—Check to give users access to this tab, effectively allowing them to change the schedules for Accuracy Tuning and Data Collection.

Restore Defaults

Click this button to restore the default values for Data Collection and Periodic Optimization.

Notes:

- When the User Profile is closed, you cannot use Dragon to dictate or to perform actions by voice.
- Scheduled Accuracy Tuning and Data Collection cannot run if Dragon is open, including if Dragon is running in QuickStart mode, if Dragon is left open with no User Profile loaded, or if Dragon is left open by another user in a separate Windows session on the same computer.
- Since Dragon uses a local system account to schedule periodic tasks, User Profiles placed on network shares will not be available for scheduled Accuracy Tuning and Data Collection unless special arrangements are made with the network administrator

For more information, see the following topics in the Dragon Help:

- "About the Acoustic and Language Model Optimizer" for information about Accuracy Tuning.
- "About Data Collection" for more information about Data Collection.
- The "Options dialog box Data tab" for more information on scheduling Scheduled Accuracy Tuning and Data Collection for the current Dragon User Profile.

Glossary

.DRA files (definition) 344
Accuracy Center (definition) 345
Accuracy Tuning (definition) 346
Acoustic Optimizer (definition) 347
Advanced Scripting (definition) 348
Commands-only Vocabulary (definition) 349
Command Browser (definition) 350
Correction menu (definition) 351
Command Mode (definition) 352
Correction-only mode (definition) 353
Data Distribution Tool (definition) 354
Dictation Box (definition) 355
Dictation Mode (definition) 356
Dictation Source (definition) 357
DragonPad (definition) 358
Hidden Mode (definition) 359
Language Model optimization (definition) 360
Language Model Optimizer (definition) 361
Normal Mode (definition) 362
Numbers mode (definition) 363
QuickStart (definition) 364
Recognition Modes (definition) 365
Roaming User (definition) 366

Spell Mode (definition) 367
User Profile (definition) 368

.DRA files (definition)

Dragon Recorded Audio (DRA) files. By default, Dragon automatically saves audio and text transcripts of your dictation in the DRA files.

Accuracy Center (definition)

Offers a central location for tools and information you can use to ensure recognition. The link in the description of each feature opens a topic describing that feature more completely. Say “display Accuracy Center” or click "Improve my accuracy" on the DragonBar Help menu.

Accuracy Tuning (definition)

A process Dragon can use to adapt to your usage. Once you have been dictating for a period of time, Dragon uses Accuracy Tuning to automatically refine your User Profile, analyzing your dictation, corrections, and any other acoustic training you have done. Accuracy Tuning uses two of Dragon's accuracy tools, the Acoustic Optimizer and the Language Model Optimizer.

Acoustic Optimizer (definition)

Looks for any corrections you have made or additional training you may have performed. Optimization enhances recognition accuracy and helps predict words most likely spoken in a given context by a speaker (the language model).

Advanced Scripting (definition)

Supports using programming languages such as Microsoft® VBA to create commands that can perform virtually any function on the computer with voice commands.

Commands-only Vocabulary (definition)

A restricted Vocabulary containing only words and phrases that Dragon recognizes as commands. Choose this way of dictation if you want to use Dragon only for command and control of programs and not for dictation.

Command Browser (definition)

A window showing voice commands that Dragon recognizes, including commands that are provided with the software as well as any commands that you or your system administrator might have added (custom commands). The Command Browser is the most comprehensive place to see the commands that are available in each application.

Correction menu (definition)

Shows Dragon's best guess for alternatives to words you dictated and selected. Choose the correct word from the Correction menu by saying "Choose" and the number next to your choice.

Command Mode (definition)

A restricted recognition mode that causes Dragon to interpret everything you say as a command and nothing is interpreted as dictated text. Say "Start Command Mode" or "Command Mode On".

Correction-only mode (definition)

Enables transcriptionists to play back a Dragon user's dictation without having their User Profile loaded. Note that dictation is disabled if you select this option.

Data Distribution Tool (definition)

Enables developers to interactively create new words, customized Vocabularies or commands, and to make them available to all User Profiles on a particular Dragon installation.

Dictation Box (definition)

Provides full support for dictating and editing text in non-standard windows. The Dictation Box supports voice commands like Delete, Correct, and Insert, and custom commands as well. When you are finished, the content is transferred to the non-standard window where your cursor was positioned when you opened the Dictation Box. The Dictation Box can operate in Hidden Mode (Medical, only), and can be anchored or unanchored.

Dictation Mode (definition)

A restricted recognition mode that causes Dragon to interpret everything you say as dictation and nothing is interpreted as a command. Dictation Mode can be helpful if you want to dictate as quickly as possible, or dictate without looking at the words Dragon transcribes. Say "Start Dictation Mode" or "Dictation Mode On".

Dictation Source (definition)

An audio input device or multiple devices associated with a User Profile. A user can select a headset microphone at one computer, an array microphone at another, and a portable recorder for transcription at several computers. This way, Dragon supports users who need to move, or "roam", from computer to computer regardless of the microphone type or differences in ambient noise.

DragonPad (definition)

Dragon's built-in word processor, optimized for dictation and includes basic text formatting features as well as the ability to save and print documents.

Hidden Mode (definition)

A recognition mode that causes Dragon to send all recognized text to the Dictation Box, which is active but does not display. All recognized text is added to the Dictation Box, regardless of the cursor location. Hidden Mode is often used by healthcare providers who are dictating medical reports to be sent to a medical transcriptionist/editor. Say "Start Hidden Mode" or "Start Hidden Mode".

Language Model optimization (definition)

Updates the language model of the current Vocabulary. Language Model Optimization uses text Dragon extracts from the .DRA files that are created when you correct words. Based on the speech data collected, Language Model Optimization applies modifications to the language model to reflect your word usage.

Language Model Optimizer (definition)

Performs Language Model Optimization from the Accuracy Center. Any Dragon user with administrator privileges can schedule Dragon to perform optimization periodically.

Normal Mode (definition)

Dragon's default mode of dictation. In Normal Mode, Dragon distinguishes dictation from words, numbers, and commands by analyzing what you say between pauses. Say "Start Normal Mode" or "Normal Mode On".

Numbers mode (definition)

A restricted recognition mode that causes Dragon to recognize only numbers, commands, and punctuation. If you are dictating only numbers (including currencies), working in this mode increases recognition accuracy. Say "Start Numbers Mode" or "Numbers Mode On".

QuickStart (definition)

Allows Dragon to load in the background when you start your computer or log in to your operating system, depending on your version of Windows. When Dragon is launched in QuickStart mode, Dragon is available for use more quickly than when you start in normal mode. The microphone icon appears in the system tray.

Recognition Modes (definition)

By default, Dragon functions in Normal Mode, distinguishing dictation from words, numbers, and commands, and analyzing what it hears between pauses. Dragon also offers restricted recognition modes for dictating only commands (Command Mode), numbers (Numbers Mode), characters (Spell Mode), or words (Dictation Mode). You can also use Hidden Mode to have Dragon hide the DictationBox as you dictate into it.

Roaming User (definition)

Enables you to dictate with Dragon from different network locations and on different computers without having to create and train individual User Profiles at each location. User Profiles are stored in a network location available to all computers on the network, so that the information Dragon learns from a user dictating on one computer is also available to the same user when they log in on other computers.

Spell Mode (definition)

A restricted recognition mode that causes Dragon to recognize only letters, numbers, commands, and punctuation. Spell mode is useful for dictating unpronounceable alphanumeric strings, such as part numbers and license plate numbers, and other terms you anticipate Dragon may not recognize, such as Web addresses, words in a foreign language, or unusual product names. Say "Start Spell Mode" or "Spell Mode On". You can still use commands while in Spell Mode.

User Profile (definition)

A set of files created the first time you use Dragon, which is subsequently used to reflect your characteristics and adapt to your usage. Each person who uses Dragon must have a User Profile, which the software stores in a set of files containing, among other things, acoustic and lexical data. These data contain information about how you sound, and the words you use, and how often you use them. When you add a word to your Dragon Vocabulary, make corrections, read a training text, or change a setting in the Options dialog, Dragon can save these refinements in your User Profile. If your edition of Dragon supports custom commands, these are also saved in the User Profile.